BLACK PANTONE185C

23mm (0.08)

ISUZU

TFR/TFS **OWNER'S AND**

DRIVER'S MANUAL E

PICTORIAL INDEX

VEHICLE INFORMATION

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Trucks for life ISUZU

OWNER'S AND DRIVER'S MANUAL E

ISUZU MOTORS LIMITED

∅ No.TF-IE-1331E5 Printed in Thailand

2013

TF-IE-1331E5_4306960_Cover.indd 1 2013/01/24 9:01:39

MAIN DATA

INDEX

Keep this Owner's Manual in the vehicle for handy reference whenever needed.

- We recommend that you also read the separate instructions for the equipment on your vehicle that was installed by your Isuzu Dealer.
- Your Isuzu Dealer will be glad to answer any questions you may have about the information in this manual.
- Please leave this manual in the vehicle when you resell it the next owner will need it.

Notes on Reading This Manual

- Please read this manual carefully, especially the information in the "IMPORTANT INFORMATION" section and the instructions and information identified by the following symbol/letter combinations:

 ADANGER
 WARNING
 CAUTION
 ADVICE and NOTE

 Among them, ADANGER
 WARNING and ACAUTION are reminders to be especially careful. Failure to follow or wrongly following the associated instructions could result in personal injury or accidents. Please read them thoroughly.
- Throughout this manual, illustrations are primarily based on right-hand drive models.
- Due to differences in vehicle specifications, the illustration used for description may not match your vehicle.
- The contents of this manual are current at the date of issue, but may differ slightly from your vehicle due to specification changes or other modifications made thereafter.
- The equipment that is mentioned in this manual may not be equipped depending on the vehicle specifications. Please check your vehicle specifications and read this manual.
- This manual is applicable for vehicle in all countries except the USA and Canada.
- All rights reserved. This manual may not be reproduced in whole or in part, without the permission in writing of ISUZU MOTORS LIMITED.

Published: Apr., 2013 Printed: Apr., 2013 First Edition

All rights reserved.

ISUZU
TFR/TFS
OWNER'S AND DRIVER'S MANUAL

Issued by ISUZU MOTORS LIMITED
E-Solutions & Service Marketing Dept.
Shinagawa-ku, Tokyo, 140-8722 Japan

131304-01K-x

TF-IE-1331E5_4306960_Cover.indd 2 2013/01/24 9:01:43

Symbols Used in This Manual



Failure to follow these instructions identified by this symbol could result in death or serious injury to you and/or other people.

MARNING

Failure to follow these instructions identified by this symbol could result in a fire inside your vehicle in addition to death or serious injury to you and/or other people.

A CAUTION

Failure to follow these instructions identified by this symbol could result in injuries or an accident.

⊗ ADVICE

Failure to follow these instructions identified by this symbol could cause malfunction or damage to your vehicle.

NOTE

This symbol identifies information that you need to know.

Abbreviations

This manual uses the following abbreviations, as interpreted below.

Abbreviations	Description
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
ACEA	Association des Constructeurs Européens d'Automobiles (Association of European Automobile Constructors)
API	American Petroleum Institute
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	British Standards
CRS	Child Restraint System
DIN	Deutsche Industrie Normen
DPD	Diesel Particulate Defuser
EBD	Electronic Braking force Distribution
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
FMVSS	Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards
GAW	Gross Axle Weight
GCW	Gross Combined Weight
GVW	Gross Vehicle Weight
JASO	Japanese Automobile Standards Organization
JIS	Japanese Industrial Standards
LLC	Long Life Coolant
MID	Multi-Information Display
MIL	Malfunction Indicator Light
PM	Particulate Matter
r/min	revolutions per minute
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
SVS	Service Vehicle Soon
TCS	Traction Control System
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
2WD	Two Wheel Drive
4WD	Four Wheel Drive

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL AND HOW TO FIND A SPECIFIC TOPIC

O

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL	0-2
HOW TO FIND A SPECIFIC TOPIC	0-3
CHAPTER DESCRIPTION	0-4
PICTORIAL INDEX	0-0
WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHT INDEX	0-14
WARNING/CAUTION LABELS	0-2

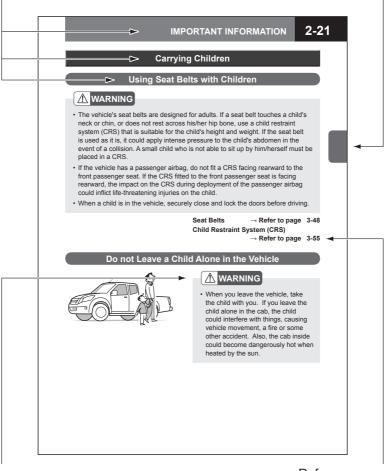
0-2 HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Chapter/section titles

These titles are useful for getting the gist of the content at a glance.

Chapter index tab

Use this for quick access to your desired chapter.



WARNING ACAUTION ADVICE NOTE

Symbols

⚠ DANGER

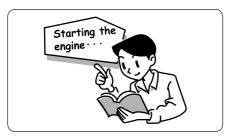
See the preceding page for the meanings of these symbols.

Reference page

Refers you to a page (or pages) of this manual that concerns the present topic and that you should also read.

All values in this manual are indicated primarily according to the International System of Units (or in SI units) with the conventional metric values and American units indicated in parentheses.

Note: This page is shown only as an example. It is not intended to give you information on your particular vehicle.



Use chapter/section titles as keys ⇒ Page 0-5

Search for the page describing the specific topic by using the general table of contents under CHAPTER DESCRIPTION, the CHAPTER INDEX, and/or the TABLE OF CONTENTS on the first page of each chapter.



Use the pictorial indexes → Pages 0-6 to 0-13

If you do not know the name of the switch or other device for which you need information, locate the page describing it by using the pictorial indexes.



Use device names as keys → Pages 9-1 to 9-3

If you know the name of the switch or other device for which you need information, locate the page describing it by using the index at the end of this manual.



Use the Warning/Indicator Light Index

→ Pages 0-14 to 0-20

If a warning or indicator light is illuminated, you can use the WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHT INDEX to find the page that provides information on the light.



If you have a problem with your vehicle

→ Pages 7-2 to 7-56

Refer to IN CASE OF EMERGENCY to find measures to take.

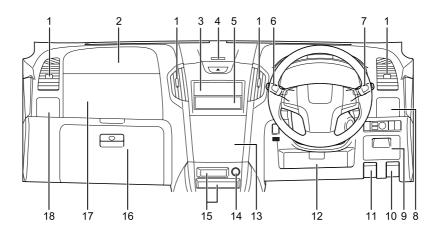
PICTORIAL INDEX ······ 0-6
VEHICLE INFORMATION 1
IMPORTANT INFORMATION
PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS - 3 Shows the proper way to open/close the doors, windows and fuel tank filler cap. Also explains how to adjust the mirrors, seats and steering including how to correctly fasten the seat belts.
CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS 4 Explains how to start and stop the engine. Also describes various controls and instruments.
COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE
SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE 6 Describes daily and periodic inspections and other vehicle care and maintenance information necessary to keep your vehicle in good condition.
IN CASE OF EMERGENCY
MAIN DATA 8
INDEX9



0-6 PICTORIAL INDEX

Interior

Right-hand Drive



No.	Equipment	Page
1	Air flow direction control tab	5-3
2	Passenger's SRS airbag	3-67
3	Audio system	_
4	Small article storage pocket (upper side of dashboard)	5-37
	Dashboard tray	5-37
5	Small article storage pocket (center of instrument panel)	5-34
6	Combination light control switch	4-66

No.	Equipment	Page
7	Windshield wiper and windshield washer switch	4-71
8	Cup holder and small article storage pocket (driver's side)	5-41
9	Small article storage pocket (driver's side)	5-38
	Fuse box	7-43
10	Fuel lid opener	3-35
11	Engine hood release lever	6-10
12	Small article storage pocket (lower part of driver's side)	5-34

0-7

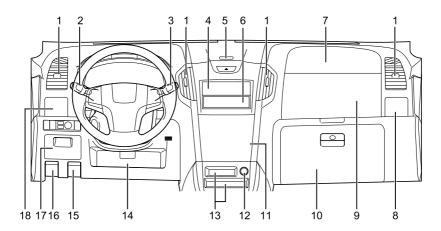
PICTORIAL INDEX

No.	Equipment	Page
13	Heater/manual air conditioner	5-4
13	Automatic air conditioner	5-15
14	Cigarette lighter	5-30
15	Small article storage pocket (lower part of center of instrument panel)	5-34
16	Glove compartment	5-36

No.	Equipment	Page
17	Small article storage pocket (passenger's side)	5-35
	Accessory socket	5-32
18	Cup holder and small article storage pocket (passenger's side)	5-41

0-8 PICTORIAL INDEX

Left-hand Drive



No.	Equipment	Page
1	Air flow direction control tab	5-3
2	Combination light control switch	4-66
3	Windshield wiper and windshield washer switch	4-71
4	Audio system	_
5	Small article storage pocket (upper side of dashboard)	5-37
	Dashboard tray	5-37
6	Small article storage pocket (center of instrument panel)	5-34

No.	Equipment	Page
7	Passenger's SRS airbag	3-67
8	Cup holder and small article storage pocket (passenger's side)	5-41
9	Small article storage pocket (passenger's side)	5-35
	Accessory socket	5-32
10	Glove compartment	5-36
11	Heater/manual air conditioner	5-4
	Automatic air conditioner	5-15
12	Cigarette lighter	5-30

0-9

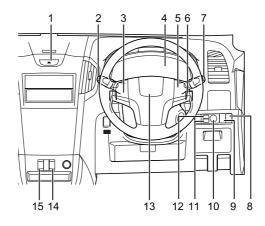
PICTORIAL INDEX

No.	Equipment	Page
13	Small article storage pocket (lower part of center of instrument panel)	5-34
14	Small article storage pocket (lower part of driver's side)	5-34
15	Engine hood release lever	6-10
16	Fuel lid opener	3-35

No.	Equipment	Page
17	Small article storage pocket (driver's side)	5-38
	Fuse box	7-43
18	Cup holder and small article storage pocket (driver's side)	5-41

0-10 PICTORIAL INDEX

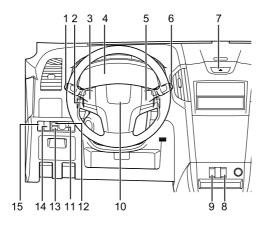
Right-hand Drive



No.	Equipment	Page
1	Hazard warning flasher switch	4-70
2	MID illumination control switch	4-23
3	Steering wheel remote control	5-47
4	Instruments, warning lights and indicator lights	4-10 4-17
	Cruise control resume switch	4-97
5	Cruise control set switch	4-96
	Cruise control main switch	4-96
	Cruise control cancel switch	4-98
6	ESC OFF switch	4-106
7	MID switch	4-21
8	Headlight leveling switch	4-68

No.	Equipment	Page
9	Illumination control switch	4-75
10	Remote control mirror switch (angle adjustment switch)	4-73
11	Retractable power mirror switch	4-74
12	Remote control mirror switch (left/right selector switch)	4-73
13	Horn button	4-73
13	Driver's SRS airbag	3-67
14	Heated seat switch (right front seat)	4-76
15	Heated seat switch (left front seat)	4-76

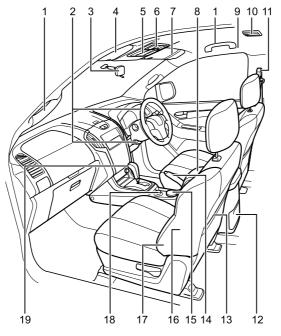
Left-hand Drive



No.	Equipment	Page
1	MID illumination control switch	4-23
2	ESC OFF switch	4-106
3	Steering wheel remote control	5-47
4	Instruments, warning lights and indicator lights	4-10 4-17
	Cruise control resume switch	4-97
5	Cruise control set switch	4-96
5	Cruise control main switch	4-96
	Cruise control cancel switch	4-98
6	MID switch	4-21
7	Hazard warning flasher switch	4-70

No.	Equipment	Page
8	Heated seat switch (right front seat)	4-76
9	Heated seat switch (left front seat)	4-76
10	Horn button	4-73
10	Driver's SRS airbag	3-67
11	Remote control mirror switch (angle adjustment switch)	4-73
12	Remote control mirror switch (left/right selector switch)	4-73
13	Retractable power mirror switch	4-74
14	Illumination control switch	4-75
15	Headlight leveling switch	4-68

0-12 PICTORIAL INDEX

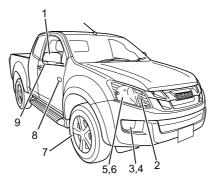


No.	Equipment	Page
1	Grips	3-26 5-43
2	Tilt steering	3-45
3	Inside rearview mirror	3-46
4	Sun visor	5-29
5	Overhead console	5-28
6	Map lights	5-27
7	Ticket holder	5-29
8	Center console box	5-39
9	Curtain airbag	3-67
10	Dome light	5-26
11	Seat Belts	3-48

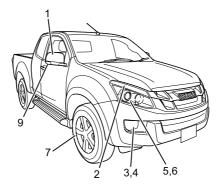
No.	Equipment	Page
12	Cup holder	5-40
13	Small article storage pocket	5-34
14	Parking brake lever	4-81
15	Ashtray	5-33
15	Cup holder	5-40
16	Side airbag	3-67
17	Seats	3-36
18	4WD switch	4-113
19	Gearshift lever (manual transmission model)	4-82
	Selector lever (automatic transmission model)	4-83

Exterior

Except Projector Headlight Model



Projector Headlight Model



No.	Equipment	Page
1	Outside rearview mirrors	3-47
2	Turn signal light	7-29
3	Front fog light	7-29
4	Daytime running light	7-29
5	Headlight	7-29
6	Clearance light	7-29

No.	Equipment	Page
7	Tires	6-51
8	Turn signal light (front door mounted type)	7-29
9	Turn signal light (outside rearview mirror mounted type)	7-29

0-14 WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHT INDEX

Warning/Indicator Light Index

Multi-Information Display (MID)

Warning Lights

Message	Display indication	Page
Low fuel (Displays when the "RANGE" screen is selected)	RANGE LOW FUEL	4-55
Parking brake release	RELEASE PARK BRAKE	4-43
Light control OFF	-D 0- LIGHT OFF	4-56
Key remain	KEY REMAIN	4-56

Indicator Lights

Message	Unit	Display indication	Page
Odometer and trip meter	Kilometer	TRIP 987.0	4-11
Cuometer and trip meter	Mile	TRIP 613.0	4-11
Fuel economy (numerical display)	Kilometer	INST. 9 ,9 aug. 8,8 km/l	4-26
	Mile	INST. 6. 0 AUG. 20.0 mpg	4-26
	Kilometer	NST. 	4-26
Fuel economy (graphical display)	Mile	NST. 	4-26
Fuel economy (average fuel economy)	Kilometer	аив. 9 .9 кт/I	4-26
Fuel economy (average ruel economy)	Mile	23. ³	4-26
Range (possible driving range)	Kilometer	RANGE 200 km	4-27
	Mile	120 m	4-27

0-16 WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHT INDEX

Message	Unit	Display indication	Page
Driving distance and average vehicle	Kilometer	DISTANCE 99 km AVG. 20 SPEED 20	4-27
speed	Mile	DISTANCE 61 ave. 12 speed 12 mph	4-27
Elapse time	_	ELAPSE TIME 999:59 min	4-28
Select mode	_	SELECT MODE	4-29
Engine oil	Kilometer	ENGINE OIL DISTANCE TO CHANGE 1000km	4-47
Lingille oii	Mile	ENGINE OIL DISTANCE TO CHANGE 600ml	4-47
Air cleaner element	Kilometer	AIR CLEANER- ELEMENT DISTANCE TO REPLACE 1000km	4-48
All cleaner element	Mile	AIR CLEANER— ELEMENT DISTANCE TO REPLACE 600ml	4-48
Distance to maintenance	Kilometer	SERVICE DISTANCE TO MAINTENANCE 1000km	4-49
Distance to maintenance	Mile	SERVICE DISTANCE TO MAINTENANCE 600ml	4-49

0-17

WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHT INDEX

Message	Unit	Display indication	Page
Service reminder OFF	-	SERVICE REMINDER OFF	4-31 4-32 4-33
DPD PM level	_	FM LEVEL	4-37
Progress of DPD regeneration	_	REGEN.	4-38

0-18

WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHT INDEX

Instrument Panel

Warning Lights

Name	Symbol	Color	Page
Malfunction indicator light (MIL)	(Amber	4-51
SVS indicator light	ଧ୍ୟ ର	Amber	4-52
Engine oil pressure warning light	9 - 5-	Red	4-46
Engine overheat warning light	_ <u>_</u>	Red	4-46
Fuel filter warning light		Amber	4-53
Water separator warning light	7	Red	4-52
Low fuel warning light		Amber	4-55
Generator warning light	=	Red	4-50
Brake system/parking brake warning light		Red	4-42
ABS warning light	(ABS)	Amber	4-44
ESC warning light	*	Amber	4-45
SRS airbag warning light	≯	Red	4-41
Seat belt warning light (driver seat)	Ä	Red	4-39

Name	Symbol	Color	Page
Seat belt warning light (front passenger seat)	3	Red	4-40
Door open warning light		Red	4-56
Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light	(1)	Red	4-54
Check 4WD warning light	CHECK 4WD	Red	4-54
Check trans warning light	0	Amber	4-53
Icy road warning light (model with MID)	A	_	4-55

Indicator Lights

Name	Symbol	Color	Page
Glow plug indicator light	<u></u>	Amber	4-58
DPD operator regeneration indicator light	= <u>=</u> =3	Amber	4-61
High beam indicator light		Blue	4-57
Light position indicator light	- 0 0 -	Green	4-57
Turn signal indicator light – left	(+	Green	4-57
Turn signal indicator light – right	→	Green	4-57
Front fog light indicator light	\$0	Green	4-57

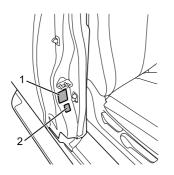
0-20 WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHT INDEX

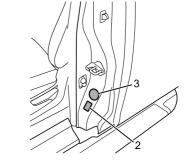
Name	Symbol	Color	Page
Rear fog light indicator light	() ‡	Amber	4-58
TCS OFF indicator light	TCS OFF	Amber	4-58
ESC OFF indicator light	OFF	Amber	4-59
4WD indicator light	101	_	4-61
4WD low indicator light	4L	_	4-61
Cruise control main indicator light		_	4-60
Cruise control set indicator light	SET	_	4-60

Warning/Caution Labels in Your Vehicle

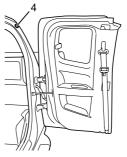
- The warning/caution labels in your vehicle indicate very important instructions and information that you should respect to ensure safe and proper use of the vehicle. Be sure to read them before using the vehicle.
- If any of these labels are peeling or illegible due to wear or scratches, please contact your Isuzu Dealer for a replacement.
- Some examples of warning/caution labels are indicated on the following pages, but there are many others not shown. Also, the contents of these labels may vary from model to model.
- The warning/caution labels indicated may be located differently in your vehicle.

Warning/Caution Labels – Cab Interior



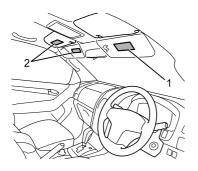


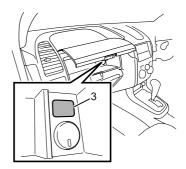


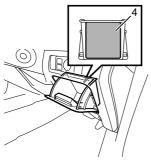


No.	Description	
1	Tire air pressure (Driver's side)	
2	Side airbag	
3	Passenger's SRS airbag (Passenger's side)	
4	Warning to avoid trapped hands in side access panel (Extended cab model)	

0-22 WARNING/CAUTION LABELS

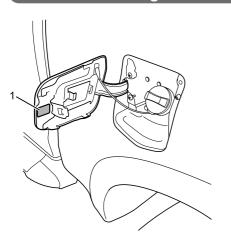






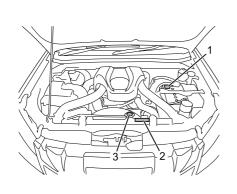
No.	Description
1	2WD - 4WD selection
2	Passenger's SRS airbag
3	Accessory socket
4	Fuse

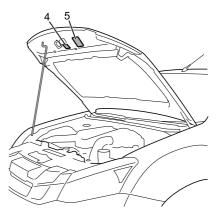
Warning/Caution Label – Cab Exterior



No.		Description
1	Fuel type	

Warning/Caution Labels - Engine Compartment





No.	Description
1	Battery
2	Engine coolant
3	Radiator cap
4	Exhaust emission
5	Engine maintenance

VEHICLE INFORMATION

• Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and Engine Number

1-2

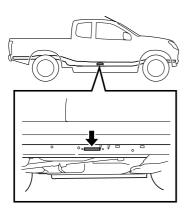
1-2 VEH

VEHICLE INFORMATION

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and Engine Number

The VIN and engine number are necessary for registering your vehicle. They are also necessary when your vehicle undergoes official inspections. Provide your Isuzu Dealer with these numbers when you are having the vehicle repaired or are ordering replacement parts. The Dealer will be able to do the requested jobs more competently and quickly.

VIN



VIN Location on Frame

The VIN is stamped on the right side center part of the frame.



VIN Plate (Engine Compartment)

The VIN plate at the upper surface of the radiator sill in the engine compartment indicates information such as the VIN.





VIN Plate (Front Left Side of Windshield)

The VIN plate is located in the front left side of the windshield.



ADVICE

• This VIN plate is equipped only on models for the European market.

ID Plate

The ID plate at the left side of engine compartment indicates the VIN together with other information such as option codes.

1-4 VEHICLE INFORMATION

The VIN contains multiple pieces of information including the vehicle and engine model codes as shown below.



Section	Description
1	World Manufacturer Identifier (WMI)
2	Model code TFR86J: 4 × 2, Long wheel base, 4JK1 engine model TFS86J: 4 × 4, Long wheel base, 4JK1 engine model
3	Model year code E: 2014 model F: 2015 model G: 2016 model H: 2017 model J: 2018 model K: 2019 model
4	Plant code
5	Production sequential number

ADVICE

• Interpretation of the VIN may differ depending on the market. For further details, please ask your Isuzu Dealer.

Option Codes

The ID plate also indicates option codes. These codes are three-digit, alphanumeric codes, each assigned to a particular component of the vehicle.

You will be able to use these codes to identify the model or type of engine, transmission or other components when your vehicle needs inspection and other services.

Option Codes	Engine
RDX	4JK1-TCY Hi-Power

Option Codes	Automatic air conditioner
C61	Air conditioner (cooler and heater)

Option Codes	Heater/manual air conditioner
C42	Heater (without cooler)
C60	Air conditioner (cooler and heater)

Option Codes	Transmission
RNU	AY6
MA1	TB-50LS

Option Codes	Suspension
7YC	2WD High-Ride
G50	Rear, heavy duty

Option Codes	Other components
UGQ	Radio and CD/USB player with Bluetooth®
NW9	Traction control
K30	Cruise control

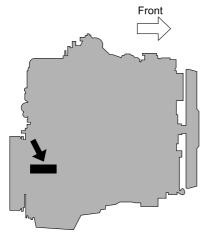


ADVICE

 There are more option codes than those indicated above. Depending on the market, an option code may not be shown. For detailed specifications of your vehicle, please ask your Isuzu Dealer.

1-6 VEHICLE INFORMATION

Engine Number



The engine number is stamped on the right side rear part of the engine block.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Before Driving	
Carrying Children	2-21
• Driving	2-23
Off-road Driving	2-41
Automatic Transmission Model	2-42
Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Model	2-46
Stopping and Parking	2-49
Cautions for Driving in Hot Regions	2-57
Cautions for Driving in Cold Regions	2-58
Staying Safe	2-62
Preventing Breakdowns	2-66
When to Visit Your Isuzu Dealer	2-69
Using Tire Chains	2-72
Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD)	2-73
Speed Limit Device	2-76
Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and SRS Airbag System	2-77
Vehicle Data Collection	2-82
Turbocharger	2-82

This chapter contains information and cautions that you should observe for safe and comfortable vehicle operation. Be sure to read it before using the vehicle.

Before Driving

Proper care and driving is important not only in extended service life of your vehicle, but also in improved fuel and oil economy. Drive carefully and defensively.

Perform Daily (Pre-operation) Inspections





ADVICE

• For safe and comfortable driving, keep record of the distances driven and the condition of the vehicle during operation. Perform inspections at appropriate intervals, and perform maintenance in accordance with the findings of the inspections. If an inspection reveals an abnormality or there was an abnormality the previous time the vehicle was driven, have the vehicle repaired by the nearest Isuzu Dealer before it is driven again.

[1. Checking components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation]

Check item	Reference page
Checking components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation	6-16

[2. Checks performed with the engine hood opened]

<u>. </u>	
Check item	Reference page
Fan belt looseness and damage	6-36
Engine oil level	6-20
Engine coolant level and radiator cap looseness	6-30
Power steering fluid level	6-79
Brake fluid level (For a manual transmission model, brake fluid doubles as clutch fluid.)	6-46, 6-76
Windshield washer fluid level	6-82
Battery fluid level	6-87

[3. Checks performed in the driver's seat]

Check item	Reference page
Brake pedal free play	6-48
Operation of meters, gauges and warning/indicator lights	4-10, 4-17
Engine startability, abnormal noise and color of exhaust gases	6-18
Parking brake lever stroke	6-51
Windshield washer fluid spray condition and windshield wiper effectiveness	6-82, 6-83
Rearview mirror condition	3-46
Steering wheel free play and mounting condition	3-45, 6-78
Operation of horn and turn signal lights	4-67, 4-73
Fuel level	4-15
Operation of door locks	3-7, 3-15

[4. Checks performed during a walk around the vehicle]

in enecke perfermed during a mant areand the vernere		
Check item	Reference page	
Illumination, flashing or for stained or damaged lights	6-86	
Suspension springs damage	_	
Leakage of oil, engine coolant, fuel, brake fluid, and power steering fluid	_	

[5. Checking wheels and tires]

Check item	Reference page
Air pressure	6-52
Cracks and other damage	6-54
Abnormal wear	6-54
Tread depth	6-54
Disc wheel mounting condition	6-55

[6. Checks performed while driving the vehicle]

Check item	Reference page
Brake effectiveness	6-50
Driving condition at low speeds and during acceleration	6-19



2-4

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Use the Specified Fuel



 Open the fuel tank filler cap slowly. If you open it quickly, the fuel tank pressure may cause fuel to spurt out.

A CAUTION

- Always use only an extra-low-sulfur diesel fuel (10 ppm or lower sulfur content).
- The use of a poor-quality diesel fuel, mixing such an additive as water remover to the fuel in the tank, or filling the tank with gasoline, kerosene or an alcohol-based fuel or its mixture with a diesel fuel will badly affect the fuel filter and result in lubrication problems in fuel-lubricated components of the injectors. In addition, this practice can also impair the operation of the engine and the diesel particulate defuser (DPD), the exhaust emission cleaning system, possibly leading to breakdown of the engine-related systems. If an incorrect fuel should accidentally be added, drain all fuel from the system. Failure to observe this precaution can result in a fire or permanent damage when the engine is started.
- The use of any fuel other than an extra-low-sulfur diesel fuel may violate the relevant regulations enforced in certain countries or regions.



Fuel Tank Filler Cap

→ Refer to page 3-33

Fuel → Refer to page 2-59

Using Self-service Filling Stations



[Be sure to obey the following instructions when refueling the vehicle]

- · Stop the engine and close the vehicle's doors and windows.
- · Keep cigarettes and other flames away from the vehicle.
- Before opening the fuel tank filler cap, touch a metallic object to discharge static electricity from your body. If you have a static charge buildup on your body while refueling the vehicle, a spark caused by its discharge could ignite the fuel, resulting in burns.
- When filling, insert the nozzle deeply into the fuel filler neck. If you try to fill more fuel by pulling out the nozzle from the fuel filler neck, fuel may spill out, causing danger.
- All parts of the refueling procedure (from opening the fuel tank filler cap to completing the refueling and closing the fuel tank filler cap) must be performed by the same person.

Other people may be carrying static electricity. Do not allow them to approach the fuel filler

The person performing the refueling procedure must not return to the seat in the cab part-way through the procedure. He/she could pick up another charge of static electricity by doing so.

- Obey all cautions posted in filling stations.
- · Be sure to wipe off the fuel that is spilled at refueling.

A CAUTION

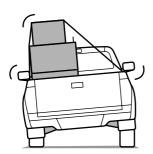
[Caution when refueling the vehicle]

Be careful not to inhale fuel vapor when refueling the vehicle.

Fuel Tank Filler Cap

→ Refer to page 3-33

Load Cargo Correctly





 Overloading can result in an accident because it places too much strain on the wheel bolts with the result that they break and the wheels come off.

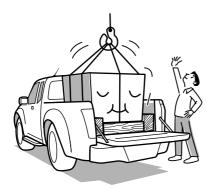
A CAUTION

- The weight of the payload must be limited within the gross vehicle weight (GVW) rating and distributed over the front and rear axles so as not to exceed the axle capacities.
- It is extremely dangerous to overload the vehicle or to load the vehicle with the cargo positioned on one side. Load the vehicle correctly, observing the maximum loading capacity.
- Incorrect loading can make the cargo unstable. It can also cause an overload condition confined to a small area, resulting in damage to the cargo bed and frame.
- Overloading places undue strain on vehicle parts. It can shorten the vehicle's service life and cause an accident.

Cargo loading caution	Incorrect	Correct
Place cargo at the center of the cargo bed, not at the front or rear.		
When using supports under cargo, position them uniformly along the cargo.		
Do not allow long cargo to protrude beyond the rear edge of the cargo bed when transporting loads with a length longer than that of the vehicle bed. Rather, use supports to raise it at an angle. Avoid loading cargo using only 2 support points.		
Use ropes and tarpaulins to secure the cargo so it does not fall off the cargo bed. Use rubber bands or bungee cords to prevent the tarpaulins from flapping in the wind.		
Avoid loading cargo too high. It can cause the vehicle to tip sideways when it catches sidewinds and when turning the vehicle.		

Gross Axle Weight (GAW) and Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) Ratings → Refer to page 8-5

Loading Heavy Cargo





 When the cargo is heavy, take steps to prevent it from slipping and secure it with wire cables.

Do not Secure Cargo Too Tightly





ADVICE

 To prevent cargo from falling off the cargo bed, it is essential to secure it with ropes and tarpaulins. However, securing it too tightly can damage the tailgate and cargo bed.

Do not Load Heavy Cargo on the Roof Rails

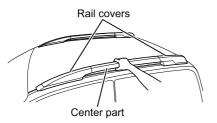




- For vehicles equipped with roof rails, adhere to the following cautionary notes and use the roof rails correctly.
 - When loading cargo on the roof rails, use the roof carrier.
 - When using the roof carrier, follow the roof carrier installation manual to properly secure cargo.
 - When loading cargo onto the roof carrier, make sure that it is firmly secured. Occasionally inspect the cargo to make sure it has not come loose during driving.
 - Do not load cargo that exceeds the total vehicle length, total vehicle width, and the total pay load.
 - The roof rail maximum loading capacity is 60 kg (132.3 lb). Do not load cargo that exceeds the maximum loading capacity. If the roof carrier maximum loading capacity is less than 60 kg (132.3 lb), do not load cargo that exceeds this maximum loading capacity.
 - When cargo is loaded onto the roof rail and roof carrier, the vehicle's center of gravity will become higher, so be careful to drive the vehicle because there is a possibility that you may lose control of the vehicle and/or it may tip over during high speeds, sidewinds, acceleration, deceleration, sudden braking, cornering, lane changing, etc.

2-10

IMPORTANT INFORMATION





- Make sure to grab the center part of the roof rails during operations such as washing of the vehicle. If the front or rear roof rail covers are forcefully pulled, the covers may come off and cause injury to the person pulling them.
- Do not forcefully pull the roof rails up or to the sides.

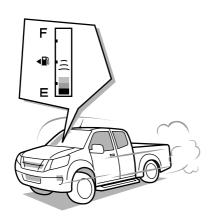
Make Sure There is No Flammable Material between the Cab and Cargo Bed



MARNING

Be careful not to allow the ends of ropes or the edges of tarpaulins to come lower than between the cab and cargo bed. During vehicle operation, the engine's heat could set them on fire. Carefully secure the ends of ropes and edges of tarpaulins.

Economical Driving



Avoid Unnecessary Engine Idling and Revving the Engine

Idling the engine for longer than necessary is a waste of fuel. The engine is sufficiently warmed up when level of the engine coolant temperature gauge is indicated. Stop the engine when waiting for people or unloading cargo, etc., even if the vehicle is only parked for a short period of time. Revving the engine will not only waste fuel, but people nearby will also be inconvenienced due to noise and exhaust gases. Do not rev the engine.

Avoid Sudden Starts and Sudden Acceleration

Sudden starting and acceleration cause the fuel consumption to increase significantly. Try to use smooth acceleration without depressing the accelerator pedal excessively.

Drive at an Economical Speed

Driving too fast causes increased fuel consumption. Be sure to drive within the legal speed limit. In addition, repeated starting and stopping, acceleration and deceleration will significantly increase fuel consumption. Aim to drive at a constant speed as much as possible.

Drive in the Appropriate Gear

Over-revving the engine when accelerating and driving at a low speed in a high gear will increase fuel consumption. Select the appropriate gear according to the traffic conditions and the load being carried.

Avoid Traffic Jams and Plan Your Journey in Advance

Driving on traffic jams will increase fuel consumption. Avoid traffic jams and plan your journey in advance as much as possible.

Unload Any Unnecessary Cargo Before Driving

The heavier the load being carried, the more that fuel consumption will increase. Unload any unnecessary cargo before driving. Mud and snow adhering to the vehicle body will also increase fuel consumption. Remove any mud or snow before driving.

Make Sure the Tire Air Pressure is Correct

Frequently inspect the tire air pressure and make sure it is always correct. Using the correct tire air pressure will help reduce fuel consumption.

2-12 IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Use the Air Conditioner in Moderation

Use of the air conditioner will impact fuel consumption. Try to keep the air conditioner at a suitable temperature and avoid setting the temperature too low. Also, turn the air conditioner OFF when it is not necessary.

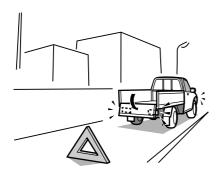
Avoid Rough Roads

Driving on rough roads will lead to a greater loss of driving power transmission and increased fuel consumption.

Be Sure to Perform Proper Maintenance

Clogging up of the air cleaner element, deterioration of the engine oil and failure to adjust the engine etc. will reduce the performance of the engine and increase fuel consumption. Perform the necessary inspections, adjustments and replacements according to the Maintenance Schedule.

Unloading Cargo





CAUTION

- When you load or unload cargo at the roadside and the tailgate or other body parts obscure the taillights, stop lights, hazard warning flashers, turn signal lights and/or reflectors, be sure to warn other drivers and passersby by placing signs or emergency warning triangles where they are easy to
 see
- When you load or unload cargo at the roadside, select a place where stopping and parking are allowed and other drivers and passersby will not be inconvenienced.

Do not Load Too Much Cargo onto the Passenger Seat and/or Rear Seat



MARNING

- Load cargo so that it is flat. Do not load cargo so that it is higher than the seatback. Sudden braking or collisions could cause the cargo to fly forward, leading to an accident that results in damage and/or injury.
- Do no place cargo onto a reclined seatback. Sudden braking could cause the cargo to fly forward, leading to an accident.

Do not Carry Fuel and Spray Cans in the Cab





 It is extremely dangerous to carry fuel and spray cans in the cab.
 If such a container were to ignite or rupture, it could cause a fire or explosion.

Do not Place Objects on the Instrument Panel or Dashboard



MARNING

 Placing objects on the instrument panel or dashboard could obscure the driver's view and interfere with driving, leading to an accident. Also, vehicle acceleration or turning could cause objects to move and injure passengers.

Keep the Floor around the Driver's Seat Clean and Tidy

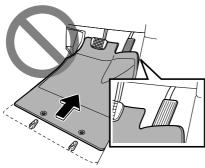


MARNING

- It is extremely dangerous to have empty cans, empty bottles or other items rolling around on the floor because they could get trapped under the brake pedal and prevent brake application. For proper pedal operation, it is also essential to lay floor mats properly. Incorrectly installed floor mats would hinder free movement of the pedals.
- Do not use the top of the dashboard as a place to put items that could roll, which could interfere with your driving.

Making Sure the Floor Mats Laid Out Correctly





Make sure that floor mats designated for the vehicle model and model year are securely fastened on top of the floor carpet before use. When securing, make sure the clips included with the floor mats are properly installed.

MARNING

- Use the clips included with the floor mats to make sure the floor mats are kept securely fastened. Otherwise the floor mats may become misaligned and interfere with the pedals during driving, preventing accurate operation and causing a serious accident.
- Do not use floor mats that are meant for another vehicle model or model year, even if they are Isuzu genuine floor mats.
- When laying out a floor mat on the floor of the driver's seat, use the floor mat designated for the floor of the driver's seat.
- Do not use floor mats that are stacked, backwards, or flipped over.
- At regular intervals, check that the floor mats are securely fastened with the included clips. In particular, always check after the floor mats have been removed for washing of the vehicle, etc.
- Before driving and with the engine stopped, depress each pedal all the way to the floor to make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Choose Your Footwear Suitable for Driving





 Choose footwear that ensures proper operation of pedals when driving the vehicle. Use of footwear unsuitable for driving may cause an accident.

Sit in the Seat Correctly



MARNING

 Do not use the seatback as a seat when it is in a folded down position.
 If passengers are not sitting correctly in their seats during hard braking or a collision, it may result in fatal injuries or death.

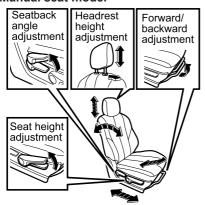
Correct Driving Posture



Before driving, be sure to adjust the seat, headrest, steering wheel and mirrors
to positions that give you a correct driving posture. Make sure the seat is
securely retained by trying to rock it forward and backward, and put on the seat
belt. All other passengers must wear seat belts.

Seats \rightarrow Refer to page3-36Headrest \rightarrow Refer to page3-44Seat Belts \rightarrow Refer to page3-48Mirrors \rightarrow Refer to page3-46

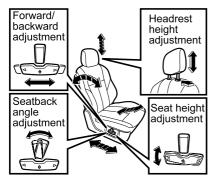
Manual seat model



Seat Adjustment

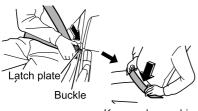
Adjusting the seat for a correct driving posture is a fundamental part of safe driving.

Power seat model



2-18

IMPORTANT INFORMATION



Keep as low on hip bone as possible

Fastening Your Seat Belt

Be sure to wear your seat belt. Sit up straight with your lower back pressed against the seat and the lap belt as low on your hip bone as possible.



	Seat adjustment recommendations
а	Make adjustments that align the center of your head to the center of the headrest.
b	Make adjustments that allow you to easily turn the steering wheel with your elbows slightly bent.
С	Position the seatback so it is always touching your shoulders.
d	Make sure you can adequately press each pedal.

	Seat belt fastening cautions	Why?
А	Position the lap belt as low on your hip bone as possible.	The pressure applied by the seat belt in a collision would
В	Position the shoulder belt so it is on your shoulder (not touching your neck, chin or face).	be dangerous if the belt is positioned incorrectly.
С	Make sure the seat belt is not twisted when you put it on.	To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective.

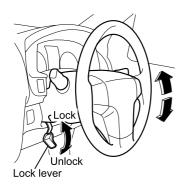
Passengers and Seat Belts

Only one person at a time should use each seat belt.



- Be sure to adjust the seat before driving. Achieve the correct driving posture, gently rock the seat to make sure it is locked in place, and put on your seat belt before you start driving. All passengers must wear seat belts.
- For a child who is so small that the seat belt touches his/her face or does
 not rest across his/her hip bone, use an appropriate commercially available
 child restraint system (CRS), not the seat belt. Using the seat belt could be
 dangerous.





Adjusting the Position of the Steering Wheel

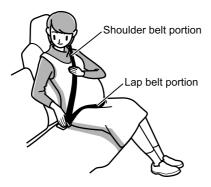
You can adjust the position of the steering wheel in the up-down direction. After making an adjustment, make sure the steering wheel and lock lever are securely locked.

MARNING

- When you have adjusted the steering wheel, try pulling the steering wheel up and down to check that it is securely locked in position before driving.
- Adjust the position of the steering wheel before you start driving. Adjusting
 the position of the steering wheel while driving would be extremely dangerous
 because the steering wheel would rattle up and down, preventing precise
 steering.

Tilt Steering → Refer to page 3-45

Carrying an Expecting Mother or a Person Who is ill



MARNING

- An expecting mother or a person
 who is ill riding in the vehicle must
 also wear a seat belt. In light of
 the risk that the seat belt will apply
 pressure to the abdomen, chest and
 shoulders in the event of a collision,
 however, an expecting mother or
 person who is ill should get advice
 from a physician beforehand.
 - An expecting mother should use a three-point seat belt.
 - An expecting mother should position the lap belt snugly as low as possible on the hip bone (not across the abdomen). Also, she should fasten the shoulder belt so it rests on her chest, not on her abdomen.
 - Unless the seat belt is correctly worn, it may dig into the abdomen in the event of hard braking or a collision, harming not only the expecting mother but also the unborn child, putting them both in danger of serious injuries or death.

Seat Belts → Refer to page 3-48

Carrying Children

Using Seat Belts with Children



- The vehicle's seat belts are designed for adults. If a seat belt touches a child's neck or chin, or does not rest across his/her hip bone, use a child restraint system (CRS) that is suitable for the child's height and weight. If the seat belt is used as it is, it could apply intense pressure to the child's abdomen in the event of a collision. A small child who is not able to sit up by him/herself must be placed in a CRS.
- If the vehicle has a passenger airbag, do not fit a CRS facing rearward to the front passenger seat. If the CRS fitted to the front passenger seat is facing rearward, the impact on the CRS during deployment of the passenger airbag could inflict life-threatening injuries on the child.
- When a child is in the vehicle, securely close and lock the doors before driving.

Seat Belts → Refer to page 3-48
Child Restraint System (CRS)

→ Refer to page 3-55

Do not Leave a Child Alone in the Vehicle





 When you leave the vehicle, take the child with you. If you leave the child alone in the cab, the child could interfere with things, causing vehicle movement, a fire or some other accident. Also, the cab inside could become dangerously hot when heated by the sun.

Do not Allow a Child to Put His/Her Head or Hands Out of the Window



MARNING

 Regardless of whether the vehicle is moving or stationary, you must never allow a child to put his/her head, hands, or other body parts out of the window. Allowing such behavior would be dangerous because the child could hit an obstacle.

An Adult must Open, Close and Lock the Door for a Child



MARNING

 To protect the child from the danger of getting his/her hands and head trapped, an adult must open, close and lock the door for the child.
 Be careful that the child does not interfere with the power window switches and get his/her hands or head trapped in the window. While a child is in the cab, be sure to control the power windows using the power window switches beside the driver's seat.

Opening and Closing Doors

→ Refer to page 3-15

Power Windows → Refer to page 3-27

Driving

Proper care and operation will not only extend the service life of your vehicle but also improve oil and fuel economy.

Operation of New Vehicle

The subsequent performance and the service life of your vehicle are under the direct influence of the care and treatment that your vehicle will receive during the initial break-in period. It is therefore always recommended that during the initial 1,000 km (621 miles) break-in period, the following few simple precautions are carefully observed.

- 1. It is recommended that the engine speed is restricted to less than 3,000 r/min.
- 2. Avoid engine racing, abrupt starting and needless hard stops.
- 3. Always let the engine idle until it becomes thoroughly warmed up.

Check around the Vehicle before Starting the Engine



Before pulling away, perform a thorough safety check, making sure there are no children or obstructions around the vehicle.

MARNING

 Before starting the engine, make sure there is no flammable material under or around the vehicle. The presence of any such material could lead to a fire. If there is any wood within 50 cm (approximately 20 in) from the vehicle's heat source, it would represent a severe hazard as the wood could deform or discolor from the heat or it could catch fire.

Starting the Engine

→ Refer to page 4-4

Be Careful about Exhaust Emissions

MARNING

- Exhaust emissions contain carbon monoxide, which is colorless, odorless and poisonous. If you inhale exhaust emissions, you may suffer carbon monoxide poisoning, resulting in death.
- Do not keep the engine running for any length of time in a place that is poorly ventilated. It is particularly dangerous to run the engine in a garage or other indoor place that could easily fill with exhaust gases because you could suffer carbon monoxide poisoning, resulting in death.
- Inspect the exhaust pipe from time to time. If you notice any defect (for example, a damaged joint, or a hole or crack caused by corrosion), have checks and maintenance performed by the nearest Isuzu Dealer. Continuing to use the vehicle without having the defect repaired would be dangerous because exhaust gases could get into the cab and cause carbon monoxide poisoning, resulting in death.
- If leaves, snow, etc. are on the air inlet grille of the vehicle's ventilation system, the ventilation system will not function properly. Remove any obstructions such as leaves or snow. Continuing to use the vehicle without removing obstructions would be dangerous because exhaust gases could get into the cab, resulting in carbon monoxide poisoning or death.
- If exhaust gases enter the cab through the vehicle's quarter window or doors when driving, resulting in carbon monoxide poisoning or death.
- If exhaust gases get into the cab, completely open all of the windows, and
 place the inside/outside air selector of the heater or air conditioner to outside
 air. Promptly have checks and maintenance performed by the nearest Isuzu
 Dealer. Continuing to use the vehicle without having the defect repaired would
 be dangerous because exhaust gases could get into the cab and cause carbon
 monoxide poisoning, resulting in death.

Starting the Engine

Manual transmission model



Automatic transmission model



A CAUTION

- Make sure that the parking brake lever is securely pulled. On a manual transmission model, make sure the gearshift lever is in the "N" position and then hold the clutch pedal and brake pedal down fully before starting the engine. On an automatic transmission model, make sure the selector lever is in the "P" position and then hold the brake pedal down fully before starting the engine.
- Be sure to sit in the driver's seat to start the engine. If you are not sitting in the driver's seat (if, for example, you reach through the window or through the door opening), you cannot confirm the "N" position. If you start the engine of a manual transmission model with the gearshift lever in a position other than "N", the vehicle could move.

Starting the Engine

→ Refer to page 4-4

If the Vehicle Has not Been Used for a Long Period



ADVICE

- Before using a vehicle that has not been driven for a long period, check the
 engine, transmission and transfer case for oil leakage, and make sure the oil is
 at the required levels. If there is insufficient oil, it will not adequately reach and
 lubricate components, and a breakdown will result.
- Start the engine and allow it to idle for at least 5 minutes. Check for abnormal noises.
- For instructions on warming up the engine, refer to "Starting the Engine" on page 4-4.

Do not Run the Engine in a Garage





 Running the engine in a poorly ventilated place can lead to carbon monoxide poisoning, resulting in death. Choose a well ventilated place when starting, warming-up or idling the engine.

Do not Forget to Release the Parking Brake



ADVICE

- Pulling away with the parking brake still applied can damage the brake system.
- Before pulling away, make sure the parking brake is not set by checking that the brake system/parking brake warning light is not on.

Brake System/Parking Brake Warning
Light → Refer to page 4-42

Parking Brake Lever

→ Refer to page 4-81

Pulling Away in a Manual Transmission Model

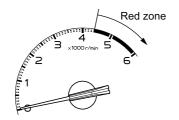


ADVICE

• Pull away gently in 1st gear. Pulling away in a high gear, pulling away rapidly or slipping the clutch for a long time while pulling away would damage the clutch.

Appropriate Gearshifts





Red zone (r/min)

4,400 and above

ADVICE

- Downshifts are performed for two main purposes:
 - For engine braking on a steep and/or long downward slope
 - For responsiveness and economy on an uphill slope

[Cautions for downshifts]

- Allowing the engine to overrun can result in engine damage. Do not allow the engine to overrun when downshifting.
- Driving uphill
 Downshift early to avoid heavy engine load.
- Driving downhill
 In principle, you should use the same gear(s) that you used to drive up the hill. Drive at a speed that does not cause the engine to overrun (exceed its r/min limit) and the tachometer pointer to enter the red zone.

Drive at a speed that does not cause the tachometer pointer to enter the red zone.

The graduation and the red zone of tachometer are various depending on the models fitted.

Tachometer

→ Refer to page 4-13

Gearshift Lever

→ Refer to page 4-82

Selector Lever

→ Refer to page 4-83

Never Stop the Engine While Driving





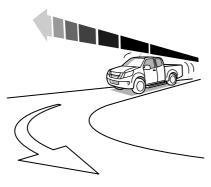
- Do not move the starter switch away from the "ON" position while the vehicle is being driven.
 If the engine stops while the vehicle is moving, the brakes would not work properly, and the steering wheel will become extremely stiff and hard to operate. The engine could also be damaged.
- Stopping the engine while driving would be extremely dangerous because the power steering would stop working, making the steering wheel extremely hard to turn.
- Stopping the engine while driving would be extremely dangerous because the warning lights, indicator lights and other electrical circuitry would completely stop working.
- Placing the starter switch in the "LOCK" position while driving would be extremely dangerous because the key could come out, causing the steering wheel to lock so that you could not turn it.

Starter Switch → Refer to page 4-64

Cautions for Driving







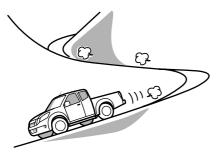
- Concentrate on driving safely, obeying all legally designated speed limits, road signs and traffic signals.
- Do not place the starter switch to any position other than the "ON" position while driving. The power steering would stop working, making steering extremely difficult. Also, the brakes would not work well, putting you in extreme danger.
- If you notice any abnormal noise, abnormal smell or abnormal vibration from any part of the vehicle, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and perform checks.
- If a warning light comes on while you are driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and perform checks.
- On a manual transmission model, do not put your foot on the clutch pedal except when using the gearshift lever. Doing so would cause premature clutch wear.
- Slow down sufficiently when approaching a curve. Applying the brakes or sharply turning the steering wheel while turning the curve could cause the cargo to shift, the tires to slip and the vehicle to tip onto its side.
- While driving, do not place your hand on the gearshift lever/selector lever except when changing gears. Doing so could cause the transmission to fail.
- Avoid scraping the tire sidewalls against curbstones or driving over dips and protrusions in the road surface.

You could damage the wheels or tires, resulting in a blowout or flat tire.

- When going down on a steep slope, avoid driving the vehicle backward as much as possible. Drive it forward slowly on the down slope.
- Compared with forward movement, the braking distance of backward movement is longer, and the steering response of that is worse.
- If you must drive the vehicle backward, drive it very carefully and gradually by moving and stopping repeatedly in order to stop it any time.
- The brakes give strong braking force with only light pressure on the pedal. Do not press the brake pedal hard except in the event of an emergency.
- Nighttime driving is more dangerous than daytime driving because the field of view is narrower. Keep your speed down, and maintain an ample headway distance.
- When driving in fog, turn on the front fog lights (if equipped), rear fog light (if equipped) and drive slowly, using the road's center line as a guide. It is dangerous only to follow the lights of the preceding vehicle because they can cause optical illusions. Drive with caution.
- Speeds on highways are higher than those on regular roads, so there is more danger. Also, a breakdown on a highway represents a hazard to other vehicles and can cause an accident. Concentrate on safe driving. Remember to perform daily pre-operation inspections and use highway driving techniques.
- Your sense of how fast you are traveling becomes distorted on long highway drives. Constantly keep an eye on the speedometer, and maintain a suitable headway distance.
- During high-speed driving, even a little turn of the steering wheel causes a big movement of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel slowly.



Driving Down a Long Slope



When driving down a long slope, use engine brake together with the foot brakes. Using the low-gear engine brake reduces the work load on the foot brakes and yields greater braking force. In automatic transmission models, do not use the auto mode, as it does not provide engine efficiency. Use only the manual mode for engine braking.



- Frequent use of the foot brakes can cause vapor lock and brake fade, resulting in reduced brake effectiveness.
- Be very careful when using engine braking in a low gear because the engine is likely to over-rev.



NOTE

[What is vapor lock?]

• If the brakes overheat due to frequent use, the heat can cause the brake fluid to boil so that air bubbles are created in the brake fluid.

Pressing the brake pedal simply compresses the air bubbles; pressure is not transmitted to the wheel cylinders, so the brakes' effectiveness sharply deteriorates. This phenomenon is called vapor lock.

[What is brake fade?]

• Frequent use of the brakes can cause the brakes to overheat so that the frictional force of the friction surface decreases and the brakes become less effective than normal. This phenomenon is called brake fade.

Driving in Bad Weather (Rain, Icy Roads, Snowy Roads, etc.)

CAUTION

 In bad weather, visibility is reduced and slippery road surfaces increase stopping distances. Drive more slowly than you would in good weather. Also, avoid sharp turns of the steering wheel and hard braking. Use engine brakes together with the foot brakes to decelerate.



ADVICE

- There is a risk of hydroplaning, particularly where water tends to collect on the road surface. Drive at speeds that allow you to stay in complete control.
- If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, first check the depth of the water and then drive through the water at a slow, constant speed. There is a risk that water will get into the engine's cylinders and cause engine damage (water hammering). Keep your speed down, and drive with great care.



NOTE

[What is hydroplaning?]

If a vehicle is driven at high speed on a road that is covered with water, a layer
of water can form between the tires and road surface, causing the tires to lose
their grip and slide across the water. This phenomenon is called hydroplaning. It
is dangerous because it makes the steering wheel and brakes useless.

Driving on Snowy or Icy Roads



Caution on Slippery Roads



CAUTION

- On slippery roads, never accelerate rapidly, brake hard, decelerate rapidly or make sharp turns of the steering wheel.
- There is a risk of reduced grip between the tires and road surface and of increased braking distances.
 The danger of icy road surfaces is particularly great on bridges, in shady places and where there are puddles. Keep your speed down and be sure to use tire chains or winter tires on snowy or icy road surfaces.
- Use lower gears to overcome the retardation effect of the engine.
 Apply the foot brakes lightly.



NOTE

- On a snowy or icy road with an automatic transmission model, by depressing the brake pedal you can make a standing start in the manual mode 2nd gear and move the selector lever to the "+" (upshift) position.
- When you want to free the vehicle from snow where the tires may slip slightly by increasing the engine speed, you can press the ESC OFF switch to disable just the traction control system (TCS).

Using Tire Chains → Refer to page 2-72

Model with Automatic Transmission

→ Refer to page 4-85

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

→ Refer to page 4-104



Pay Attention to the Way the **Steering Wheel Turns and Feels**



CAUTION

 On snowy roads, water and snow splashed up by the tires can freeze and accumulate inside the fenders. making the steering wheel hard to turn. From time to time, get out of the vehicle and remove any accumulated snow. Do not use a sharp implement to remove the snow. Sharp edges could damage rubber parts.



Check the Brakes from Time to Time

CAUTION

- · When the vehicle is driven or parked on a snowy surface, ice can form on the brakes, decreasing their effectiveness. From time to time while you are driving, press the brake pedal lightly and check the brake's effectiveness. Pay attention to vehicles both ahead and behind you when checking the brakes in this way.
- Also, check the brake's effectiveness as soon as possible when starting to drive the vehicle after it has been parked. If the brakes do not work well, drive slowly and gently press the brake pedal several times until the brakes dry out and start working normally.

2-36

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Removing Snow from the Underbody

Look under the vehicle and remove any lumps of ice that are stuck to the underbody. Be careful not to damage components.



ADVICE

 Do not use a sharp implement to remove snow. Sharp edges could damage rubber parts.

Driving on Poor Road Surfaces (Sand or Mud)



When you cannot avoid driving through deep mud, using tire chains is an effective way to avoid getting stuck.



When the vehicle is stuck and people or objects are nearby, do not drive the
vehicle forward and backward. When driving the vehicle forward and backward,
the vehicle may suddenly become unstuck and injure nearby people or cause
damage to objects.

ADVICE

- When driving in sand or mud, avoid hard braking, sudden acceleration and sharp turns of the steering wheel. Such actions could get the vehicle stuck and make it impossible to extricate.
- After driving through deep mud, any mud stuck to the vehicle can harm the steering, brakes and powertrain. Wash the vehicle and remove all mud and other incrustation.
- In models with automatic transmission, shift the transmission to the "2" or "1"
 position to avoid overheating the transmission when towing or when driving
 slowly in mud, sand, on snowy roads or steep inclines.
- The vehicle speed sensors are fitted on the wheels. When removing mud and other incrustation, take great care not to damage the components.
- Do not use a sharp implement to remove mud. Sharp edges could damage rubber parts.



NOTE

- On a muddy road with an automatic transmission model, by depressing the brake pedal you can make a standing start in the manual mode 2nd gear and move the selector lever to the "+" (upshift) position. This provides better traction and safer vehicle operation.
- When you want to free the vehicle from mud where the tires may slip slightly by increasing the engine speed, you can press the ESC OFF switch to disable just the traction control system (TCS).

Exterior Maintenance

→ Refer to page 6-98

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

→ Refer to page 4-100

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

 \rightarrow Refer to page 4-104

When the Vehicle Has Been Driven on a Flooded Road or Washed





 If the vehicle must be driven on a flooded road, is washed, or is parked in an area that becomes flooded, water can get into the brakes and reduce their effectiveness. If the brakes do not work well afterward, drive slowly and gently press the brake pedal several times until the brakes dry out and start working normally.



ADVICE

- If the vehicle must be driven on a flooded road or is parked in an area that becomes flooded, promptly have your Isuzu Dealer perform a check for the following points:
 - Effectiveness of the brakes
 - Water-ingress or damage to drum brakes, or disc brakes
 - Engine damage due to wateringress
 - Shorting of electrical components
 - Oil level and degradation (cloudiness) of the engine, transmission, differential and transfer case
 - Greasing of each components (lubrication)

Sidewinds



ADVICE

- If the vehicle catches a sidewind and drifts sideways, firmly grip the steering wheel, decelerate to a speed that allows you to stay completely in control and make a directional correction. The vehicle may catch strong sidewinds in the following situations:
 - Emerging from a tunnel; Driving over a bridge, driving on an embankment or driving through a cutting
 - Being overtaken by a large truck or bus
 - Overtaking a large truck or bus

Dealing with a Blowout or Flat Tire while Driving





WARNING

 If you feel any abnormality in a tire while driving, immediately stop in a safe place. If you continue to drive on a flat tire, undue force would be applied to the wheel bolts, possibly causing the bolts to break and the wheel to come off.



ADVICE

If a blowout or flat tire occurs while you are driving, calmly grip the steering
wheel and gradually apply the brakes to decelerate. (Hard braking would be
dangerous because it could cause the steering wheel to be pulled to one
side.) Stop the vehicle in a safe place, and change the tire if the vehicle is the
model equipped with the spare tire, or repair the tire if the vehicle is the model
equipped with the emergency flat tire repair kit.

Tools → Refer to page 6-7

Spare Tire → Refer to page 6-58

How to Use the Emergency Flat Tire

Repair Kit (4WD Crew Cab Model)

→ Refer to page 7-8

Handling the Jack \rightarrow Refer to page 6-62 Changing Tires \rightarrow Refer to page 6-67

2-40

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

If the Underside of the Vehicle Receives a Hard Bump



ADVICE

If the underside of the vehicle receives a hard bump, stop in a safe place
where the vehicle will not obstruct traffic and check for brake fluid leakage,
fuel leakage and component damage. If any part of the vehicle is damaged or
broken, promptly have the vehicle inspected and repaired by the nearest Isuzu
Dealer.

If a Warning Light Comes On or Flashes



ADVICE

If a warning light comes on or flashes, do not ignore it, and do not keep driving.
 Be sure to take corrective action referring to the explanation of the meters and warning lights.

How to Read the Instruments
(Instruments Layout)

→ Refer to page 4-10
Warning and Indicator Lights Layout

→ Refer to page 4-17

Off-road Driving



During off-road driving, carefully confirm the road condition, incline and other factors, and drive at a reduced speed.

MARNING

- When driving off-road or on extremely uneven road surfaces, drive at a reduced speed. Avoid making jumps, making sharp turns, and striking objects with the vehicle. Failure to observe these cautions may result in loss of control or overturning of the vehicle. In addition, damage to the vehicle may also result.
- Do not place your hands in the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. If the vehicle's wheels suddenly change direction, the steering wheel may turn, resulting in injury to your hands. Do not place your thumbs inside the rim when gripping the steering wheel.
- On inclined surfaces, drive straight, at right angles to the incline. Driving parallel to the incline (as with other, similar vehicles) may result in overturning of the vehicle.
- After driving in mud, sand or flooded roads, be sure to confirm that the brakes function correctly.

Automatic Transmission Model

On an automatic transmission model, there is no need to use a clutch pedal; you can pull away, change gears and stop the vehicle by only using the selector lever, accelerator pedal, and brake pedal. Be sure to learn the characteristics of the automatic transmission model and how to correctly operate it. When the vehicle is stationary, remember to keep the brake pedal firmly pressed and, if necessary, place the selector lever in "P" or "N" position and apply the parking brake.

Immediately after engine startup, while the air conditioner is running in models with the air conditioning system, the engine speed automatically rises. As this makes creep stronger than it is at other times, be sure to keep the brake pedal firmly pressed.

Model with Automatic Transmission

→ Refer to page 4-85



NOTE

[Creep]

With the engine running and the selector lever in a position other than "P" or
"N" selected, power reaches the wheels even when the accelerator pedal is
not pressed, causing the vehicle to tend to move. This phenomenon is called
creep. The higher the engine speed, the stronger the creep and the greater the
vehicle's tendency to move.



Operate the Brakes with Your Right Foot





ADVICE

- Sit in the correct driving position, and use your right foot to operate the brake and accelerator pedals.
 To avoid accidentally pressing the wrong pedal, check the pedal positions and practice putting your foot on the desired pedal.
- To ensure reliable brake application, be sure to use your right foot to press the brake pedal.

Pulling Away



- Sitting in the correct driving position, firmly depress the brake pedal with your right foot and place the selector lever in the "D" position (auto mode or manual mode) for forward movement or the "R" position for backward movement.
- Check to be sure that the area around the vehicle is clear and check the selector lever position and shift indicator, and then release the parking brake lever.
- 3. Take your foot off the brake pedal, then gradually press the accelerator pedal to pull away.

2-44

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

MARNING

- When you move the selector lever to a position other than "P" or "N", creep will
 cause the vehicle to move. When pulling away, be sure to keep the brake pedal
 pressed as you operate the selector lever.
- When pulling away, be sure to visually check the selector lever position and the shift indicator for safety reasons. If you always operate the selector lever while pressing the push button, it is possible to accidentally shift the lever to the "P" or "R" position in some cases. Get in the habit of shifting the selector lever from the "N" to "D" or "D" to "N" position without pressing the push button.
- Do not operate the selector lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. Doing so is dangerous because the vehicle will suddenly move.
- Immediately after engine startup, while the air conditioner is running in models with an air conditioning system, the engine speed automatically rises, making creep stronger than it is at other times. Keep the brake pedal firmly pressed.



ADVICE

[Essential points for safety]

- Even if you plan to drive only a short distance, adopt the correct driving position and make sure you can firmly press the brake and accelerator pedals.
- When backing up the vehicle, you twist to look rearward so pedal operation becomes difficult. Firmly press the brake pedal while twisting your body. Also, get in the habit of immediately returning the selector lever to the "N" position after backing up. When pulling away, visually check the selector lever position and the shift indicator.
- When repeatedly shifting the selector lever between forward and reverse gears
 for a multiple point turn or a K-turn, firmly press the brake pedal and confirm
 that the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting the selector lever.



NOTE

After the vehicle has been left for a week or more it may not start at once, even
when the accelerator pedal is pressed. In such cases, shift the selector lever to
the "P" position and wait for several seconds with the engine idling.

 $\begin{array}{c} \text{Model with Automatic Transmission} \\ \rightarrow \text{Refer to page} \quad \text{4-85} \end{array}$

Actions that Can Lead to a Breakdown with an Automatic Transmission Vehicle

Action that can lead to a breakdown	Breakdown symptom
 Stopping the vehicle on an uphill road with the selector lever in a position other than "P" or "N", with the engine gunned, and the brakes not applied. Pressing the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time. 	Automatic transmission fluid overheats.
Operating the selector lever with the engine gunned and the engine speed high.	The automatic transmission gears or clutch are overloaded.
Operating the selector lever to the "P" position before the wheels are completely stopped.	The parking mechanism is damaged.
 Placing the starter switch in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position while driving. Keeping the selector lever in the "N" position on a long downward slope. (This is dangerous due to the lack of engine brake.) 	The automatic transmission is not properly lubricated.



Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Model

Four-wheel drive does not make it possible to drive a vehicle absolutely everywhere. Exercise caution when using the accelerator pedal, steering wheel and brake pedal. Concentrate on driving safely, paying attention to the condition and slope angle of the road surface.

Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Model

→ Refer to page 4-112

Driving on Snow-covered or Icy Roads



On a snow-covered or icy road, drive at a constant speed and keep your speed low enough to stay completely in control.

When applying the brakes, lightly push the pedal several times rather than giving it one hard push. A single hard push of the pedal would be dangerous because it could cause the vehicle to slip, making the steering wheel useless.



ADVICE

 Use tire chains and winter tires on snow-covered or icy roads.

Winter Tires \rightarrow Refer to page 2-60 Using Tire Chains \rightarrow Refer to page 2-72

Driving in Sand or Mud



When driving in sand or mud, go as slowly as possible, avoiding hard braking, sudden acceleration and sharp turns of the steering wheel.

It is difficult to ascertain the condition of the road surface when you are driving on sand or mud, so there is a risk of getting stuck. When necessary, get out of the vehicle and check the condition of the road surface.

Driving through Water



The vehicle is not completely impervious to water. Avoid driving through water.



ADVICE

- If you cannot avoid driving through water, first check the depth of the water and then drive through the water at a slow, constant speed. There is a risk that water will get into the engine's cylinders and cause engine damage (water hammering).
- If the vehicle must be driven through water, promptly have your Isuzu Dealer perform a check for the following points:
 - Effectiveness of the brakes
 - Water-ingress or damage to drum brakes, or disc brakes
 - Engine damage due to water-ingress
 - Shorting of electrical components
 - Oil level and degradation (cloudiness) of the engine, transmission, differential and transfer case
 - Greasing of each components (lubrication)

U-turn on Sharp Slopes



When making a U-turn on a sharp slope, the vehicle is in danger of turning over the moment it crosses the slope. Drive carefully selecting the road surfaces so that the tires on the higher side of the slope may not run on any convex part of the slope surface.

Guidelines for Switching between 2WD (Rear-Wheel Drive) and 4WD (Four-Wheel Drive)

Drive type	2WD	4WD	
	2H	4H (4WD high)	4L (4WD low)
4WD switch	4H 3 A	4H R	4H
Indicator light	OFF	101	1 4L
Model with MID*	2H	4H	4L
Driving conditions	During normal driving on an ordinary road or highway.	Wet roads, snow- covered roads, icy roads, and other roads where the vehicle needs more traction than 2WD.	Steep slopes, rough roads, sand, mud or deep snow, and other roads where the vehicle needs significant traction.

^{*:} When the 4WD switch has been operated in each position, it will be displayed on the MID for approximately 3 seconds.

ADVICE

• Do not set the 4WD switch midway between the "2H" and "4H" positions or the "4H" and "4L" positions. Doing so could cause a malfunction.

Stopping and Parking

Parking



ADVICE

- Choose a flat place where stopping and parking are permitted and where the vehicle will not obstruct traffic. Firmly apply the parking brake and make sure the vehicle does not move.
- · Avoid parking for long periods with cargo on the vehicle.
- Remove all dirt from the vehicle's light lenses and reflectors to ensure that the vehicle can be seen from other vehicles.

Applying the Parking Brake



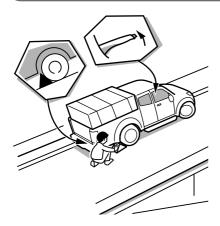
ADVICE

• Except in an emergency, do not apply the parking brake until the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Applying the parking brake before the vehicle has stopped can cause a breakdown.

Parking Brake Lever

→ Refer to page 4-81

Parking Safely on a Slope



A CAUTION

- Avoid parking your vehicle on a slope as much as possible and choose a level and flat place. If it is unavoidable to park your vehicle on a slope, be sure to set the parking brake fully, make sure that the vehicle does not move, and block the wheels with chocks for added safety. For a manual transmission model, also leave the vehicle in gear to further ensure that it will not move
- Leave the steering wheel turned such that the vehicle will be stopped by an obstruction (for example, the curb) in the unlikely event that it moves.

Parking in Cold Regions



When snow collects around the wheels and lights, try to remove it before night falls. Do not apply the parking brake in cold regions. If you leave the parking brake applied, the wires and brake shoes could freeze up, making it impossible for you to release the parking brake. Be sure to park the vehicle in gear.

For manual transmission models, be sure to park the vehicle by shifting the gearshift lever into the "1 (1st gear)" or "R (reverse)" position when in a flat location. For automatic transmission models, shift the selector lever into the "P" position, check whether "P" is indicated on the shift indicator, park the vehicle in a flat location and then stop the engine.

Be sure to put chocks against the tires.



 If you park in a place where there is a lot of snowfall, snow accumulating around the vehicle could limit ventilation. Running the engine with the vehicle in these conditions could cause exhaust gases to enter the cabin, resulting in carbonmonoxide poisoning. Take preventive action by, for example, clearing the snow around the vehicle.

Napping in the Vehicle





Before taking a nap in the vehicle, be sure to stop the engine and place the starter switch in the "LOCK" position. Otherwise, any unintended contact with the gearshift lever/selector lever or accelerator pedal while you are asleep could cause the vehicle to move, resulting in an accident.

- If you leave the engine running and unintentionally keep the accelerator pedal pressed while asleep, the engine and exhaust pipe could become abnormally hot, resulting in a fire.
- If you leave the engine running while taking a nap with the vehicle parked in a place where exhaust gases could get into the cab (for example, a place that is poorly ventilated), you could suffer carbon monoxide poisoning, resulting in death.

Keep Flammable Material Away from the Vehicle



MARNING

- After driving through tall grass, mud, rocks, sand, water, etc., check that there is no grass, branches, paper, rags, stones, sand, etc., adhering to or trapped under the vehicle body.
 If the vehicle is operated with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a failure or fire could occur. Clear off any such matter from the underbody.
- The diesel particulate defuser (DPD), muffler, and exhaust pipe are extremely hot while the engine is idling, or immediately after vehicle operation. In order to prevent fires, make sure the surrounding area is free of flammable material (for example, grass, waste paper, oil or old tires). Take particular care when parking in a garage.
- Use caution concerning hot exhaust gases while the engine is idling, or immediately after the engine has been stopped. Otherwise, you could be burned.

Stopping and Parking with the Engine Running

MARNING

When stopping and parking with the engine running: If your vehicle is the
manual transmission model, be sure to place the gearshift lever in the "N"
position to select neutral. If your vehicle is the automatic transmission model, be
sure to place the selector lever in the "P" position and check that "P" is indicated
in the shift indicator. Then, firmly apply the parking brake. Unless you take
these steps, any unintended pressure on the accelerator pedal could cause an
accident.

2-54

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Do not Touch the Gearshift Lever/Selector Lever while the Vehicle is Stationary with the Engine Idling

MARNING

Do not touch the gearshift lever/selector lever while the vehicle is stationary
with the engine idling. If you touch the gearshift lever/selector lever at this time,
a gear could be selected and the vehicle could move even with the parking
brake applied. The risk of knocking against the gearshift lever/selector lever and
causing an accident is particularly great when you move in or out of your seat.

Be Sure to Have the Engine Running when the Vehicle is Moving

$\overline{\mathbb{A}}$

CAUTION

 When the engine is not running, the power steering system does not work so the steering wheel is hard to turn. Also, the brake booster does not work so there is little braking ability. If you coast down a slope without the engine running, you would not be able to properly control the vehicle and could have an accident.

Look Around before Opening a Door





CAUTION

 Before opening a door, check the area around the vehicle by looking forward, rearward and to the sides.
 If you suddenly open a door without checking the surrounding area, the door could be hit by a vehicle behind you or a pedestrian.

Leaving the Vehicle



- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to apply the parking brake, stop the engine and lock the doors. Do not leave valuables where they can be seen from outside the vehicle.
- If you are traveling with a child, do not leave the child alone in the vehicle. If the
 child touches the controls or equipment, an accident could occur. (For example,
 the vehicle could move or a fire could start.) Also, the cab inside could become
 dangerously hot in hot weather.
- Do not leave eyeglasses or a lighter in the vehicle. If the cab inside becomes hot, a lighter left there could explode and plastic eyeglass lenses or frames could deform or crack.
- Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running. If the engine should overheat, you would not be there to react to the engine overheat warning light or engine coolant temperature gauge. This could result in costly damage to your vehicle and its contents.

Starting to Drive When the Vehicle Has Been Parked



Before pulling away, perform a thorough safety check, making sure there are no children or obstructions around the vehicle.

Reversing



If you cannot see the area behind your vehicle well enough to confirm it is safe to back up, get out of the vehicle and check behind it.

Pulling Away after a Temporary Stop





 Make it a habit to look around and confirm that it is safe to pull away after a temporary stop (at traffic lights, for example).

Cautions for Driving in Hot Regions



The engine will be prone to overheating in an environment where the ambient temperature is high. To prevent the engine from overheating, pay attention to the following points:



CAUTION

 Do not put well water, river water or other hard water in the engine cooling system. It would hasten the formation of rust and scale.

If foreign matter (insects, mud, etc.) gets stuck in the radiator's air passages, the cooling system's performance will deteriorate. Check the air passages for clogging, and remove any foreign matter using tap water.

Handling the Radiator and Intercooler

→ Refer to page 6-35



ADVICE

 When the ambient temperature is high, evaporation of battery fluid will become quicker. Frequently check the battery fluid level and, when necessary, add more fluid.

Checking the Battery Fluid Level

→ Refer to page 6-94

Cautions for Driving in Cold Regions



The following cautions apply to snowbound regions and to mountainous regions, ski resorts and other areas of extreme cold and/or snowfall. Please use them also for reference in winter in other regions.

For the sake of your vehicle, have your Isuzu Dealer make the winter preparations described hereafter. Also have these preparations made before driving to a cold region.

Engine Coolant → Refer to page 6-30 Windshield Washer Fluid

→ Refer to page 6-82

Handling the Battery

→ Refer to page 6-87

Engine Oil → Refer to page 6-20 Using Tire Chains → Refer to page 2-72

Winter Tires \rightarrow Refer to page 2-60



• Snow or obstructions surrounding the vehicle could limit ventilation. Running the engine with the vehicle in such a situation could cause exhaust gases to enter the cab, resulting in carbon monoxide poisoning or death. Take preventive action, for example, by clearing any snow or obstructions around the vehicle.

A CAUTION

- Do not cover the front of the radiator with newspapers, cardboard or any other flammable material to raise the engine coolant temperature.
- If you allow the engine to warm up but the engine coolant temperature does not rise, have the nearest Isuzu Dealer inspect the thermostat.

Fuel → Refer to page 2-59

Protection of Engine against Overcooling

Overcooling of the engine not only accelerates wear of the vital engine parts but also deteriorates fuel economy.

Engine Coolant



To prevent the engine damage due to freezing of the engine coolant and to protect the cooling system from corrosion, mix the coolant and water to be an appropriate concentration.

Replace damaged rubber hoses as the engine coolant becomes liable to leak even past minor cracks when the engine coolant solution is used.

Preparing Engine Coolant

→ Refer to page 6-31

Engine Oil

The engine oil tends to harden with lowering temperatures. Use engine oil with a viscosity suited to ambient temperature.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Diesel Fuels → Refer to page 6-111 Engine Oil and Gear Oil Viscosity

Charts → Refer to page 6-114

Fuel

If you drive to a cold region in winter while using diesel fuel for warmer regions that freezes at a relatively high temperature, the fuel may freeze. As the ambient temperature decreases, the fuel in the fuel tank and pipes may freeze like slush, making the engine hard to start.



NOTE

• The specifications of diesel fuel differ according to the season and region.

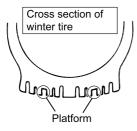
When Ice Prevents You from Putting the Key in the Door or Opening the Door



If you try to force the key into the door, you could bend it. And if you try to pull the door open with undue force, the rubber seal around the door could come unstuck or become damaged. Use warm water to melt the ice, then quickly wipe it away and open the door.

If the wipers, electric door mirrors, or power windows freeze up, also use warm water to melt the ice and then operate the system. Otherwise, you could damage the mechanism and drain the battery. After that, wipe the water away.

Winter Tires



Use winter tires of the same sizes as the standard tires. Also, use wheels of the same size as those with the standard tires. A winter tire has reached its wear limit when the tread grooves have worn to half of the depth of the new tire. At this time, platforms indicating that the tire can no longer give adequate performance on snow become visible in the grooves. Replace the tire with a new one.

CAUTION

- Avoid sharp turns of the steering wheel and hard braking. Use the engine brake
 to decelerate. When applying the brakes on snowy or icy road, lightly press the
 pedal several times rather than giving it one hard press. A single hard press of
 the pedal would be dangerous because it could cause the vehicle to slip or skid.
- Avoid driving at high speeds on a dry road with winter tires.
- Comply with local legal requirements when using winter tires.

Cleaning the Vehicle after Driving on Snowy Roads





- Remove snow that has stuck to the inside of the fenders and to the brake hoses. Otherwise, it may damage components. After driving on a salted road, wash the underside of the vehicle as soon as possible to prevent the salt from causing rust. Spraying water under high pressure is an effective way to get the salt off.
- After washing the vehicle, wipe the door openings dry.



ADVICE

- The vehicle speed sensors are fitted on the wheels. When removing snow, ice and other incrustation, take great care not to damage the components.
- Do not use a sharp implement to remove snow. Sharp edges could damage rubber parts.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) \rightarrow Refer to page 4-100

Staying Safe

When the Engine Coolant is Hot



MARNING

 Do not loosen or remove the radiator cap while the engine coolant is hot. Doing so would be dangerous because steam and hot air would shoot out.

When the Engine Overheats

→ Refer to page 7-26

When the Muffler and Exhaust Pipe are Hot

$\boxed{\Lambda}$

CAUTION

• The DPD, muffler, and exhaust pipe are extremely hot while the engine is running, during DPD regeneration, and immediately after vehicle operation. Be careful not to inadvertently touch them. Otherwise, you could be burned.

Do not Allow Your Hands to Become Trapped in the Side Access Panel (Extended Cab Model)



MARNING

 When riding in the cargo bed, do not place your hands near the side access panels since there is a risk of injury when the side access panels close.

After Using the Ashtray





- Be sure to close the ashtray lid after using the ashtray. Otherwise, any unextinguished cigarette butt could set fire to other cigarette butts, resulting in a fire.
- Do not allow the ashtray to become overly full of cigarette butts. Also, do not put flammable material in the ashtray.
- Never throw lit cigarette butts out the window. They not only litter the road and around but also can cause a roadside fire.

Ashtray → Refer to page 5-33

Do not Attach Accessories to the Windshield or Windows





 Do not attach ornaments, films or other accessories to the windshield or windows. They would impair visibility. Also, any plastic suction cups used to attach accessories could cause a fire or other accident by acting as lenses.

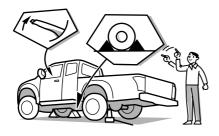
Do not Use a Mobile Telephone while Driving



CAUTION

- Drivers should never use mobile telephones or car phones in any mode other than Hands Free while driving. Doing so is dangerous.
- Using a mobile telephone while driving could result in an accident because you would not be paying full attention to your surroundings.
- If you are driving and you wish to use a mobile telephone, first stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Using the Jack



MARNING

- Jacking up a vehicle on slope or soft ground is extremely dangerous. Be sure to jack up the vehicle on a firm, level surface.
- Set the jack in the correct position.
 Do not forget to first apply the
 parking brake and place chocks
 around the wheels.
- When a rear wheel is jacked up, the parking brake has no effect. Failing to first put chocks in the correct places would be dangerous because the vehicle could move.
- It might start moving when the engine power is transmitted to the rear axle even when one of the wheels on the axle is raised clear of the ground. Do not start the engine with any rear wheel in contact with the ground.

WARNING (Continued)

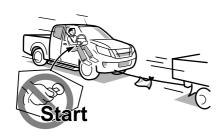


WARNING (Continued)

 Do not get under a vehicle and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that supported by a jack. Failure to observe this precaution could lead to an accident if the jack were to slip.

Tools \rightarrow Refer to page 6-7 Handling the Jack \rightarrow Refer to page 6-62

If the Battery Goes Flat





CAUTION

 Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle. You could damage the engine.

When the Battery Goes Flat

→ Refer to page 7-20

Preventing Breakdowns

For Manual Transmission Model, Do not Rest Your Foot on the Clutch Pedal while Driving





ADVICE

 If you rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving, the clutch could partially disengage without you realizing it, causing the clutch plates to wear and the clutch to slip. Also, do not slip the clutch as a way to hold the vehicle in position (instead of using the brakes) on, for example, an uphill road.

Do not Ride on the Side Steps while the Vehicle is in Motion





WARNING

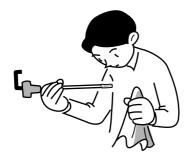
• Do not ride on the side steps while the vehicle is in motion.



ADVICE

 Do not jump up and down on the side steps. Doing so may place unnecessary force onto the side steps, resulting in damage.

Is the Engine Oil Dirty?





ADVICE

- The engine oil performs the following important functions:
 - It prevents engine parts from becoming worn.
 - It cools engine parts.
 - It cleans engine parts.
 - It seals the combustion chambers and prevents rust.
 Replace the engine oil at regular intervals.

Daily Checks (Preoperational Checks)

→ Refer to page 6-14

Engine Oil → Refer to page 6-20 Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

Do not Leave the Steering Wheel Fully Turned for a Long Time

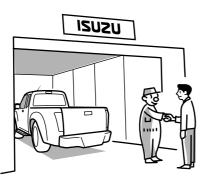




WARNING

• If you leave the steering wheel fully turned for a long time, the oil in the power steering oil pump would become extremely hot. This would cause poor lubrication, oil tank damage and seal deterioration, leading to power steering oil pump damage, power steering unit damage and power steering hose damage. As a result the steering wheel could become extremely hard to turn and a fire or other accident could occur.

Make Sure the Vehicle is Inspected at Regular Intervals





ADVICE

 Inspections and maintenance enable you to use the vehicle with peace of mind. They also extend the vehicle's service life.

Daily Checks (Preoperational Checks)

→ Refer to page 6-14

Engine Oil \rightarrow Refer to page 6-20 Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

When to Visit Your Isuzu Dealer

Do not Modify the Vehicle



 Modification of the suspension/chassis with lift kits, spacers, springs, etc. can cause interference with the steering wheel operation and/or vehicle performance, leading to an accident.

A CAUTION

- Attaching parts that are not suitable for the vehicle's performance and functions could lead to a breakdown or accident. For adjustments (for example, engine adjustments) and equipment installation, consult your Isuzu Dealer.
- If you wish to attach accessories to the vehicle, consult your Isuzu Dealer.





Have Engine Adjustments Made by Your Isuzu Dealer





 Do not make engine adjustments yourself.

Be sure to consult your Isuzu Dealer.

Electric Welding



ADVICE

· Careless electric welding of vehicle parts can cause welding current to flow back through the vehicle's ground circuit and damage electrical and electronic parts so that they do not function normally. Whenever electric welding is necessary, consult your Isuzu Dealer.

Replacing Tires and Wheels





CAUTION

· Consult your Isuzu Dealer before replacing tires or wheels. Never use wheels that are not designed for the vehicle, tires of different types at the same time or tires that are not the specified size. Doing so would impede safe vehicle operation.

Wheels and Tires → Refer to page 6-51 Changing Tires → Refer to page 6-67

Installing Electrical Equipment





 Inappropriate installation or removal of audio, radio or other electrical equipment can adversely affect other electrical equipment and cause a breakdown or fire. It can also cause unexpected, dangerous airbag deployment. Be sure to have electrical equipment installed or removed by your Isuzu Dealer.



ADVICE

[Installation of radio equipment]

Do not install any unauthorized radio set, or any radio set or antenna that
does not comply with relevant standards. Noise from the radio set could cause
electromagnetic interference with the vehicle's electronic equipment and other
systems, resulting in a vehicle breakdown or in a malfunction of electronic
equipment. Consult your Isuzu Dealer if you wish to install radio equipment.

2-72

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Using Tire Chains

When handling, installing and uninstalling tire chains, refer to the instruction manual that is supplied with the tire chains and perform (un)installation following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

Handling the Jack → Refer to page 6-62

<u></u> CA

CAUTION

- Fit the tire chains securely without looseness. If the vehicle is driven with the loosened tire chains, they may interfere with other components or come off, leading to an unexpected accident.
- Do not exceed 30 km/h (19 MPH) or exceed the tire chain manufacturer's suggested speed limit if it is lower than 30 km/h (19 MPH).
- If an abnormal sound is heard, it may indicate a possibility that a tire chain was cut or came off partially. Immediately pull off to a safe place, and check the fitting condition of the tire chains.
- The exhaust pipe and muffler are extremely hot when the engine is running or immediately after the vehicle is driven, so be careful not to touch them.
- Be careful not to hurt yourself on the edges of the vehicle while working with the tire chains.

ADVICE

- Do not install tire chains on the front tires. Make sure to fit the tire chains suitable for the tire size on the rear wheels.
- If your vehicle has 255/65R17 size tires, do not use tire chains. They can damage your vehicle because there is not enough clearance.
- Use tire chains that conform to the following specifications:
 - Radial thickness 13 mm (0.5 in) Max
 - Axial thickness 13 mm (0.5 in) Max
- When purchasing tire chains, fit them on the tires once and, if they are too long, adjust them to suit the tires.
- Retighten chains after driving 0.4 to 0.8 km (0.25 to 0.5 miles).

Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD)

The DPD purifies diesel exhaust gases of particulate matter (PM). PM is filtered from the exhaust gas and accumulated in the DPD. When PM accumulates to a level predetermined by the engine control module, the DPD automatically burns the PM in a process called regeneration. Regeneration may not be completed under certain driving conditions. If this occurs, the DPD operator regeneration indicator light will flash to prompt for the completion of DPD regeneration.

MARNING

- The DPD, muffler, and exhaust pipe are extremely hot while the engine is running, during DPD regeneration, and immediately after vehicle operation. Be careful not to inadvertently touch them. Otherwise, you could be burned.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rocks, sand, water, etc., check that there
 is no grass, branches, paper, rags, stones, sand, etc., adhering to or trapped
 under the vehicle body. If the vehicle is operated with these materials trapped or
 adhering to the underbody, a failure or fire could occur. Clear off any such matter
 from the underbody.
- Before doing maintenance work on the vehicle, shut down the engine and allow it to cool down. Otherwise, you could be burned.

ADVICE

- Always use low ash content engine oil. Also, do not use engine oil additives.
 Failing to do so could result in DPD failure.
- Be sure to use extra-low-sulfur diesel fuel (containing sulfur of 10 ppm or lower).
- If you fill the vehicle with poor-quality fuel, water-removing additive or other additive, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol-based fuel, it could harm the fuel filter, prevent proper movement of fuel-lubricated parts in the injectors and adversely affect engine components, possibly resulting in a breakdown.
- Do not modify the DPD, muffler, and exhaust pipe. Changing the alignment, length or diameter of the exhaust pipe would adversely affect the exhaust system's exhaust emission reduction function. If any modification is necessary to install a component to the rear of the vehicle, consult your Isuzu Dealer.

ADVICE (Continued)

2-74

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

ADVICE (Continued)

- The DPD performs regeneration automatically when a certain amount of PM accumulates in the DPD. Regeneration occurs during driving and the DPD operator regeneration indicator light does not come on during regeneration. Depending upon driving conditions, however, the regeneration may sometimes not be completed. In this case, the DPD operator regeneration indicator light will flash, so perform operator regeneration as soon as possible according to the "Operator Regeneration Procedure". This operation recovers the function of the DPD. It does not mean that a failure has occurred.
- If the engine idles continuously over an extended period of time, the DPD operator regeneration indicator light may flash. In this case, perform operator regeneration as soon as possible according to the "Operator Regeneration Procedure".



NOTE

- During regeneration, white smoke may be temporarily produced from the exhaust pipe. This results from combustion of PM and does not indicate a failure.
- Owing to the exhaust emission reduction function, the exhaust gases emitted by the exhaust pipe smell different from those emitted by the exhaust pipes of earlier diesel vehicles.
- A long continuous idling can cause white smoke to be briefly emitted from the exhaust pipe. The white smoke does not indicate a failure.

Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD)

→ Refer to page 4-120

Engine Oil \rightarrow Refer to page 6-20

Inspection and Maintenance

Performing regular inspections and maintenance prevents damage. Be sure to perform inspections and maintenance at regular intervals. Also, quickly rectify any fault in the vehicle (even a small fault) to prevent it from becoming more serious.

If a symptom shown in the following table occurs, perform inspections and take corrective action in accordance with the table.

If you are unable to perform a repair, the corrective action shown in the table does not eliminate a symptom or you cannot locate a fault, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Symptom	Cause	Corrective action	Reference page
	Engine not sufficiently warming up	Allow the engine to warm up.	_
	Too much engine oil	Correct the oil level.	6-20
	Engine control system faulty	0	_
White	Fuel system faulty	0	_
exhaust smoke	Continuous idling for a long period (more than 2 hours)	With the vehicle stationary in a place where it will not obstruct traffic, hold down the accelerator pedal and check that white smoke is not emitted.	_
	Engine control system faulty	0	
Black exhaust smoke	The air cleaner clogged	Clean or replace the element.	6-38 6-40
	Fuel system faulty	0	_
	Exhaust system clogged	0	
	DPD faulty	0	_

⊘ ADVICE

• Any item for which there is a \odot in the "Corrective action" column requires repairs and adjustments. Contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

2-76 IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Speed Limit Device

Characteristics of the Speed Limit Device

The speed limit device restricts excessive speed to prevent a serious accident.

Set speed

180 km/h (112 MPH)



• The speed limit device does not control braking, so it is possible for the vehicle to exceed the set speed on downhill slopes.

NOTE

• The speed limit device restricts the vehicle's speed by controlling the fuel injection volume. It prevents the speed from exceeding a certain, predetermined level regardless of the pressure on the accelerator pedal.

Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and SRS Airbag System



The front seat belt with pretensioner and supplemental restraint system (SRS) airbag system is activated in the event of a frontal collision when the impact energy exceeds a certain level to help mitigate the shock to the driver and the passenger by firmly restraining the body of the occupant in the seat with the front seat belt with pretensioner and front airbag. In addition, in models with side airbag and curtain airbag, the front seat belt with pretensioner, side airbag and curtain airbag are activated in the event of a lateral collision when the impact energy exceeds a certain level to help mitigate the shock on the head and chest of the driver and the passenger by firmly restraining the body of the occupant in the seat, and the curtain airbag is activated to mitigate the shock on the head of the occupant sitting in the outboard seats of the models with the rear seat. Be sure to observe the following instructions to prevent you and your passenger from suffering a serious or fatal injury due to impacts resulting from the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag operation.

2-78

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

MARNING

- Before driving the vehicle, properly adjust your seat for proper driving position and wear the seat belt correctly. Do not sit closer than necessary to the steering wheel and do not lean over it. (Leave a space of 25 cm (10 in) or more between your chest and the center of the steering wheel.) Do not allow the passenger to put his/her hands or feet on the instrument panel and to sit with his/her face or chest close to it. When the airbags are activated, you or the passenger may suffer a burn on or serious injury to the arm or face.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, do not lean against the door and roof side. When the airbags are activated, you may suffer a burn on or serious injury to the arm or face.
- Do not drive the vehicle with something placed between you and airbag or held on your lap. If the airbag inflates, the objects may be thrown and hit your face. Doing so also hinders normal activation of the airbag, which is dangerous.
- Be sure to observe the following precautions when carrying a child in the vehicle. Otherwise the child may be fatally injured by the impact from an inflating airbag.
 - Do not drive with a child standing in front of any of the airbags, or sitting on your lap. Doing so is dangerous as the child would receive a very strong impact due to an inflating airbag.
 - Do not install a rear-facing infant or child restraint system (CRS) on the passenger seat. An inflating passenger's airbag could cause the child to be fatally injured.

Seats → Refer to page 3-36
Seat Belts → Refer to page 3-48
Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and SRS Airbag System

→ Refer to page 3-67











MARNING

- If you make unauthorized modifications to the vehicle or install an unauthorized accessory, the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag may not operate correctly.
- If the steering wheel is changed to a non-standard one or a sticker is attached to the steering wheel pad, there could be a danger of system malfunction or the sticker flying off in the event of system activation. Attaching stickers or placing such things as accessories or air fresheners on the top surface of the instrument panel is also dangerous. They may prevent normal operation of the airbag or could fly off in the event of system activation.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, do not attach seat covers under any circumstances. If a seat cover is attached or objects are placed in the area in which the side airbag inflates, the side airbag will not function correctly. Also, there could be a danger of objects flying off in the event of the system activation. In addition, if hard objects such as hangers or accessories are attached to the grip or coat hook, they may prevent normal operation of the curtain airbag and could fly off in the event of system activation.

WARNING (Continued)



WARNING (Continued)

- Do not apply excessive force to nor strongly hit the airbag installation area or the base of the b-pillar. Doing so may result in erroneous activation of the airbag or the front seat belt with pretensioner.
- Doing any of the following may require special precautions. Be sure to consult your Isuzu Dealer before doing any of the following. Failure to do so may cause the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag to be unduly activated, causing the seat belt to be unexpectedly retracted or the airbag to be suddenly inflated, causing an injury to the occupant. Doing any of them improperly will adversely affect the operation of the system, causing a malfunction or failure.
 - Repair or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, center console, parts around the accelerator pedal, front seat (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag), parts around the roof side (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag), and parts around the base of the b-pillar.
 - Repair, replacement or disposal of the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag, or scrapping of a model that has front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag.
 - When audio equipment and accessories are installed or modification such as body mounting is carried out.

WARNING (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Making modifications to the front of the vehicle (bumper, frame, etc.), installing equipment (snow plows, etc.), making modifications to the frame, or making changes to the vehicle's height using unauthorized methods and/or materials.
- Repairing or painting of panels at the front of the vehicle or panels on the cab.

2-82 IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Vehicle Data Collection

Your vehicle, like other modern motor vehicles, has a number of sophisticated computer systems that monitor and control several aspects of the vehicle's performance. Your vehicle uses on-board vehicle computers to monitor emission control components to optimize fuel economy, to monitor conditions for airbag deployment, to provide anti-lock braking and to help the driver control the vehicle in difficult driving situations. Some information may be stored during regular operations to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions.

Isuzu may download and retrieve stored information for the purpose of diagnosing, servicing, or repairing your motor vehicle or improvement to future Isuzu motor vehicles.

Turbocharger

Engine Starting in General

The turbocharged engine should be started in a way which ensures the bearings supporting the rotating parts of the turbocharger are sufficiently lubricated. Do not race a cold engine.

Engine Shut-off in General



ADVICE

After driving for an extended period of time with a heavy load, it is
recommended that you idle the engine for a few minutes to cool it down, and
then turn off the engine. This allows the turbocharger to return to idle speed.
Engine oil pressure is available for lubrication at this time and will prolong the
life of the turbocharger bearings.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

3

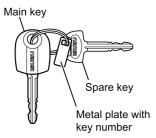
• Key	3-2
Key with Immobilizer Transponder Chip	3-4
Keyless Entry System (Radio Remote Control Units for Door-lock)	3-7
Anti-theft System	3-12
Opening and Closing Doors	3-1
Child-proof Door Locks (Crew Cab Model)	3-22
Tailgate	3-23
Getting In and Out of the Vehicle	3-26
Power Windows	3-27
Manually Operated Windows	3-32
Fuel Tank Filler Cap	3-33
• Seats	3-36
Tilt Steering	3-4
• Mirrors	3-46
Seat Belts	3-48
Child Restraint System (CRS)	3-5
Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and SRS Airbag System	3-67

3-2

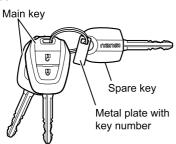
PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

Key

Type 1



Type 2



Both sides of the key are identical, so you

can insert the key in the starter switch without worrying about which way you insert it.

The key number is indicated on a separate metal plate in order to prevent it from being acquired by an unauthorized person.

NOTE

 The number of keys and their combinations depend on the model of vehicle.

Where Is the Key Used?

Where	For what	
Starter switch	Starting and stopping the engine	
Front door	Locking and unlocking the doors	
Tailgate (with key lock)	Locking and unlocking the tailgate	
Fuel tank filler cap (with key lock)	Locking and unlocking the filler cap	
Glove compartment	Locking and unlocking the glove compartment	
Rear door (crew cab model)	Locking and unlocking the child-proof door locks	
Rear center seat belt (crew cab model)	Disconnect the anchor buckle and anchor latch plate	



ADVICE

· Wipe off the key to remove any dirt or dust, etc. before using it.



NOTE

- To prevent theft, store the metal plate with key number in a safe place other than the vehicle.
- Should you lose the key, please give the key number and all remaining keys supplied with the vehicle to the nearest Isuzu Dealer. The Isuzu Dealer will be able to duplicate your key.
- If you resell the vehicle, be sure to hand over the plate with key number to the new owner together with the vehicle.

3-4

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

Key with Immobilizer Transponder Chip

The immobilizer key contains an immobilizer transponder chip.

The immobilizer anti-theft system allows the engine to be started only when it receives signals from the transponder of the pre-registered key.

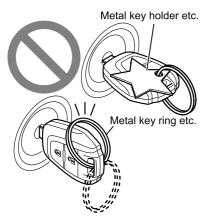


NOTE

 When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, verification of the transponder chip will be performed. If the verification is successful, it will become possible to start the engine. Also, after the starter switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position and a maximum of approximately 30 seconds has passed, it will be necessary to perform verification again in order to start the engine.

Starter Switch \rightarrow Refer to page 4-64

However, even when using the pre-registered key, you might not be able to start the engine in the cases listed below. If the engine fails to start due to a metal key holder, remove the key holder and then try again.



- There is a facility nearby that is emitting strong radio waves.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the handle of the key.
- Placing items which interfere with the immobilizer signal onto the key grip.
 (Ex. key ring, key number plate, metal items, magnetic items)



 Another vehicle's transponder key is near your key (Includes an Isuzu spare key and other keys).

3-6

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS





ADVICE

- Should you lose your transponder key, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.
- Do not leave the transponder key on the dashboard or any other surface where the key might be exposed to high temperatures (exceeding 60°C /140°F).
- Do not place a magnetic object close to the transponder key.
- No alterations or additions should be made to the immobilizer system, as such alteration or additions would automatically invalidate the certificate of installation.
- For starting the engine, use only the Isuzu immobilizer keys which are registered to the immobilizer system in your vehicle. Do not use copied keys or any other keys.
- · Do not break the key.
- Do not try to open the key grip. (Except replacing the battery in remote control unit.)
- Do not dip the key into water or any other liquid.
- · Do not wash the key with ultrasonic.



NOTE

- The immobilizer system does not lock the doors so please do not forget to lock the doors when you get out of the vehicle.
- If the starter will not turn even though key usage is correct and the condition of the battery is normal, there may be a failure of the immobilizer system. If this occurs, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Keyless Entry System (Radio Remote Control Units for Door-lock)



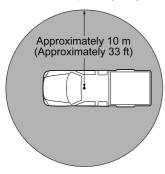
 No alterations or additions should be made to the keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock), as such alterations or additions would automatically invalidate the certificate of installation.



NOTE

 Keyless entry system (EMU370001/radio remote control units for door-lock) consists of TX (EMU370101), RF unit (EMU370501), and BCM (EMU370851).

Remote control operating range

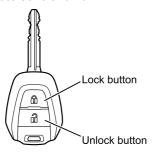


The keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) allows you to lock/unlock the doors by simply pressing the remote control button rather than inserting the key into the lock.

The remote control unit works within approximately 10 m (approximately 33 ft) radius of the vehicle center as indicated in the figure.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Remote control unit



Locking

Press the lock button on the remote control unit for 0.4 seconds or longer. When the vehicle receives the signal, the hazard warning flasher will flash once and all the doors will lock. If the dome light or map light is on with the switch in the door position, the dome light or map light goes out.

Unlocking

Press the unlock button on the remote control unit for 0.4 seconds or longer. When the vehicle receives the signal, the hazard warning flasher will flash twice and all the doors will unlock. If the doors are unlocked with the dome light or map light switch in the door position, the dome light or map light comes on for about 30 seconds.



ADVICE

- Should you lose the remote control unit, please contact your Isuzu Dealer.
- After locking the doors using the remote control unit, be sure to check that they
 are locked by pulling the door handles.
- Avoid getting water on the remote control unit, dropping it, hitting it against another object, or stepping on it; otherwise, the remote control unit could malfunction.
- The remote control unit is comprised of precision components. Do not disassemble or subject the remote control unit to electrical shock.
- Do not leave the remote control unit on the dashboard or any other surface where the unit might be exposed to high temperatures (exceeding 60°C/140°F).
 Doing so may result in shorter battery life or malfunction of the remote control unit
- Repeatedly locking and unlocking the doors using the remote control unit in succession may trigger the protection circuit in the system, preventing the unit from working. If this happens, wait for a while. The system will then work normally.
- If the keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) fails to operate normally, lock and unlock the doors using the key and have the system inspected by your Isuzu Dealer.

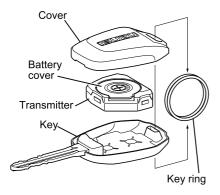


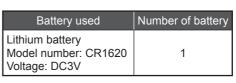
NOTE

- After unlocking the doors using the remote control unit, the door will automatically relock in the following cases:
 - The door is not opened within 30 seconds.
 - The key is not inserted into the starter switch within 30 seconds.
- In areas near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, etc. or under any
 conditions involving strong electrical disturbances, the remote control unit
 operating range might change or the keyless entry system (radio remote control
 units for door-lock) might not work.
- The keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) does not operate in the following cases:
 - The starter switch is in a position other than "LOCK".
 - The key is inserted in the starter switch.
 - One of the doors is open.

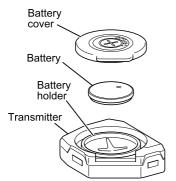
Replacing the Battery in the Remote Control Unit

Replace the battery as soon as the range of the remote control starts to become reduced.





 Remove the key ring and pry open the cover by inserting a flat-head screwdriver. Wrap a piece of cloth or tape around the tip of the screwdriver so as not to damage the cover. Remove the transmitter.



- 2. Open the battery cover and remove the battery.
- 3. Insert a new battery and close the battery cover.



ADVICE

- Be careful not to bend the electrode when placing a new battery.
- When closing the battery cover and key cover, check that there is no dust, hair or anything else caught underneath it. A poorly sealed remote control unit could become deteriorated.
- 4. Place the transmitter in the key and close the cover.

\triangle

CAUTION

- When changing the battery, use only a battery of the same type as the original battery, or an equivalent. Otherwise, there is a risk of explosion.
- Do not place the battery in direct sunlight, or near a fire or other sources of heat.
- Be sure to install the battery with the "+" side and the "-" sides correctly oriented. Incorrect installation will result in leakage of chemicals from inside the battery or other operational problems.

NOTE

- The battery life varies depending on how the remote control unit is used.
- The battery has reached its end of life when the remote control unit works intermittently or does not work at all. Replace the battery as soon as this happens.
- Please comply with the collection system available in your country for the disposal of old batteries. In addition, take special care to prevent any danger to children.

This symbol [crossed-out wheeled bin] provided in Directive 2006/66/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council indicates separate collection of waste batteries in the European Union countries.



Anti-theft System



 No alterations or additions should be made to the anti-theft system, as such alterations or additions would automatically invalidate the certificate of installation.

When the vehicle doors and engine hood are locked, the anti-theft system is designed to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft.

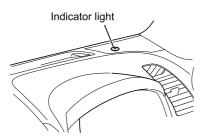
Any attempt to forcibly open any door, the engine hood without using the keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) will cause the hazard warning flasher to flash on and off and the horn to sound intermittently. After the system activates, the hazard warning flasher will shut off automatically after 5 minutes, and the horn will shut off after 30 minutes.

Please lock the door with the keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) after closing all the doors and engine hood to arm the alarm system.

Activating the Anti-theft System

- 1. Turn the starter switch to "LOCK" position and remove the key.
- 2. Closing all the doors and the engine hood then locking all the doors with the keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) will cause the indicator light to come on.
- 3. After approximately 10 seconds, the indicator light will flash. The anti-theft system is now in operation. (In models with super lock, the super lock system will be activated immediately after it is initiated.)

Super Lock (Mechanical Anti-theft Locking System) → Refer to page 3-14



Indicator Light

During the first 10 seconds			
Lights up	System in preparation		
Flashes	Door, engine hood open or system fault		

After approximately 10 seconds		
Flashes	System on	
Goes off	System off	



If a door is not closed completely, the map light or dome light will remain on.
 The anti-theft system is not engaged at this time.

Anti-theft System Alarm Operating Conditions

When the anti-theft system is engaged, the alarm will operate under the following conditions:

- 1. When someone forcibly attempts to open the door or engine hood without using the keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock).
- When a key or other tool is inserted into the door key cylinder and a door is unlocked.
- 3. When someone unlocks a door with the door lock button or power door lock (central door lock) switch.
- 4. When the engine hood release lever is operated.



NOTE

 A person sitting in the vehicle or reaching into the vehicle through an open window can cause the alarm to sound by inadvertently operating one of the controls (Items 3 and 4 in "Anti-theft System Alarm Operating Conditions").

Deactivating the Anti-theft System and Alarm

When the door is unlocked using the keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock), the anti-theft system and alarm will be deactivated.



CAUTION

 If the indicator light is not functioning, have Isuzu Dealer correct the problem as soon as possible.



NOTE

- If the key is inserted into the key cylinder and the doors are unlocked, the horn will sound and the hazard warning flasher will flash on and off. To stop the horn and hazard warning flasher, perform either of the following operations:
 - Insert the key into the starter switch and turn it to the "ON" position.
 - Operate the remote control unit.

3-14

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

Super Lock (Mechanical Anti-theft Locking System)



Locking

All doors must be closed; press the lock button on the remote control unit again within 10 seconds after locking. The hazard warning lights flash twice only when the super lock is activated by pressing the lock button on the remote control unit twice. Lock buttons on all doors are positioned such that doors cannot be opened.



WARNING

 Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked from inside.



Unlocking

Press unlock button on remote control unit. The hazard warning lights flash.



CAUTION

 Unlocking is not possible in any other way, so keep remote control to hand in a safe place.



NOTE

 If you use the key to open the vehicle door, the horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will flash on and off.

To stop the horn and hazard warning lights, inserting the key in the starter switch and turning it to the "ON" position or pressing unlock button on remote control will deactivate the anti-theft system and alarm.

Opening and Closing Doors



CAUTION

- Be sure to do the following whenever you leave the vehicle: 1) Fully engage the parking brake. 2) Stop the engine. 3) Lock the doors.
- When you close the door after sitting behind the steering wheel, check that the door is fully closed. If the door is not properly closed, it may open while the vehicle is in motion.
- Before opening the door when climbing into or out of the cab, carefully check
 all areas around the vehicle for safety, especially the area at the rear of the
 vehicle. If you abruptly open the door, it may be struck by a vehicle, etc. coming
 from behind.
- · Never leave the key in the vehicle.

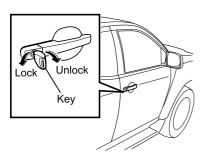


NOTE

[Impact sensing auto door-unlocking function]

- Models with a keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock)
 also feature an impact sensing auto door-unlocking function that automatically
 unlocks all the doors when the vehicle is subjected to a strong impact from the
 front, left, or right side with the starter switch in the "ON" position.
- When the impact-sensing auto door-unlocking function activates, the hazard warning flasher will flash to alert the driver of an abnormality at the same time.
 In order to stop the hazard warning flasher, turn the starter switch to the "LOCK" position once before turning the starter switch back to the "ON" position.
- However, depending on the manner in which the impact is applied, this function may not activate.

Locking and Unlocking the Front Doors



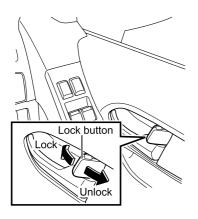
Locking and Unlocking the Door from Outside Using the Key

Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to lock the door and turn it toward the front of the vehicle to unlock it.



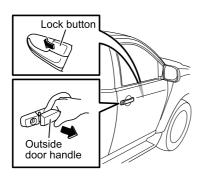
NOTE

- In models with a power door lock (central door lock) system, all the doors will lock/unlock when the key is used to lock/unlock the doors. However, even in models with a power door lock (central door lock) system, only the driver side door will lock/unlock in the case of models with a keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock).
- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to check that the doors are locked.



Locking and Unlocking the Door from Inside

Push the lock button forward until the red mark can no longer be seen for lock and pull the lock button backward for unlock.



Locking the Door from Outside without Using the Key

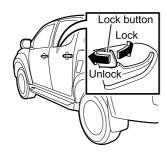
First, push the lock button forward until the red mark can no longer be seen, then close the door while keeping the outside door handle raised.



NOTE

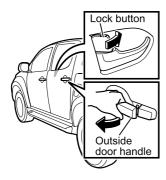
 Before closing the door, be sure to check that you have the key with you.

Locking and Unlocking the Rear Doors (Crew Cab Model)



Locking and Unlocking the Door from Inside

Push the lock button forward until the red mark can no longer be seen for lock and pull the lock button backward for unlock.



Locking the Door from Outside

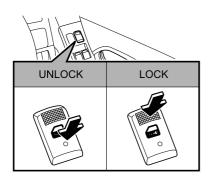
First, push the lock button forward until the red mark can no longer be seen, then close the door while keeping the outside door handle raised.

Key Reminder Buzzer

If the driver's door is opened when the starter switch is in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, a buzzer will sound to warn that the key has not been removed. When the key is removed, the warning buzzer will stop sounding.

Warning Buzzer → Refer to page 4-62

Power Door Lock (Central Door Lock)



How the Power Door Lock System Operates

When the switch on the driver's door is operated, the power door lock system will automatically lock or unlock all doors simultaneously.

Key Linked Door Unlocking

Model with Keyless Entry System (Radio Remote Control Units for Doorlock)

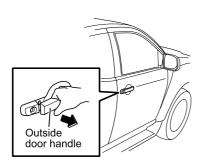
When the key is removed from the starter switch, all doors will be unlocked.



NOTE

 The key linked door unlocking setting can also be changed so that all doors are unlocked when the starter switch is turned from the "ON" to "LOCK" position. To change the setting, please contact your Isuzu Dealer.

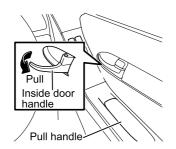
Opening and Closing the Front Doors



From Outside the Vehicle

To open the door, pull the outside door handle.

To close the door, push the outside door handle.



From Inside the Vehicle

To open the door, pull the inside door handle.

To close the door, pull the pull handle.



ADVICE

 Before leaving the vehicle, be sure to stop the engine and lock the doors. Never leave the key behind the door.

Opening and Closing the Side Access Panel (Extended Cab Model)

\triangle

CAUTION

- Before opening the side access panel, check that the passenger in the front seat has removed his/her seat belt. If the side access panel is opened while the seat belt is worn, the seat belt will lock and it will not be possible to pull it out. The passenger in the front seat may become trapped and could be injured.
- Because it will not be possible to close the front door securely when the side access panel is half-open, it may open while the vehicle is in motion.



ADVICE

- Do not open or close the side access panel while the front door is not completely open. Otherwise, the side access panel may contact the front door and could be damaged.
- Do not open or close the front door and side access panel at the same time.
 Otherwise, the side access panel may contact the front door and could be damaged.
- After closing the front door, do not close the side access panel. Otherwise, the side access panel may contact the front door and could be damaged. Always close the front door after first closing the side access panel.



NOTE

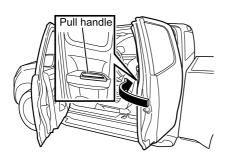
The side access panel cannot be opened when the front door is closed.



From Outside the Vehicle

To open the door, after first opening the front door, pull the inside door handle and open the side access panel.

To close the door, after closing the side access panel, push the outside door handle of the front door and close the door.



From Inside the Vehicle

To open the door, push the inside door handle while the front door is open.

To close the door, pull the pull handle while the front door is open.

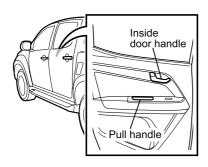
Opening and Closing the Rear Doors (Crew Cab Model)



From Outside the Vehicle

To open the door, pull the outside door handle.

To close the door, push the outside door handle.

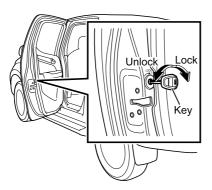


From Inside the Vehicle

To open the door, pull the inside door handle.

To close the door, pull the pull handle.

Child-proof Door Locks (Crew Cab Model)



Use the locks if you are traveling with a child in the vehicle. Use the key for the child-proof function of the opening of the rear door, place it in the "LOCK" position and close the door. Regardless of the position of the lock button, it will no longer be possible to open the rear door from inside the vehicle.

When opening the rear door, check that the lock button is in the lock release position and use the outside door handle to open the door.

Tailgate

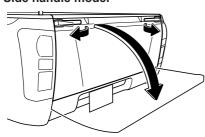


CAUTION

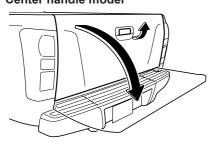
• Do not drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.

Tailgate Latch

Side handle model



Center handle model



To Open

Pull the handle on both sides of the tailgate and release the lock. Open the tailgate slowly.



NOTE

• The support stays will hold the tailgate open level.

Pull the handle in the center of the tailgate and release the lock. Open the tailgate slowly.



NOTE

• The support stays will hold the tailgate open level.

3-24

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

Side handle model



To Close

To close the tailgate, use the opening procedure in reverse.

Check that the lock is applied securely.

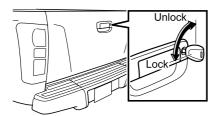
Center handle model



Close the tailgate.

Move the tailgate back and forth to check that it is securely locked.

Tailgate Lock (with Key Lock)



Firmly insert the key.

Turn it to the left to lock the tailgate. Turn it to the right to unlock the tailgate.

Rear Step Bumper

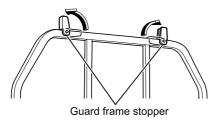


In models with a rear step bumper, use the rear step bumper for easy loading and unloading of cargo.

MARNING

- Do not allow more than one person at a time to step on the rear step bumper. The rear step bumper may be damaged.
- Do not move the vehicle when there is a person on the rear step bumper.
- Do not stand on the rear step bumper when the vehicle is moving.

Guard Frame Stopper

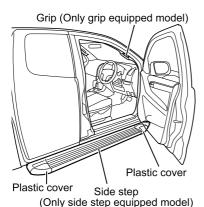


When securing cargo to the guard frame, use the guard frame stopper to prevent these cargo from shifting. When using the guard frame stopper, lift it up to the outside of the vehicle.

A CAUTION

 When securing cargo using the guard frame, do not apply excessive force

Getting In and Out of the Vehicle



Carefully check that the area around the vehicle is safe, hold the grip if the vehicle model is equipped with grips, and when getting in or out of a side step equipped model, place your foot on the side step.

A CAUTION

- When getting in or out of the vehicle, make sure you use the grip and step, etc.
 to always support yourself from at least 3 points. Furthermore, do not try to
 jump in or out of the vehicle, as doing so could cause unexpected accidents or
 injuries.
- In models with a side step, to avoid slipping over, do not step on the cover area (plastic cover).
- Getting in or out of the vehicle with oily or greasy hands or shoes could cause you to slip. Always thoroughly clean grease etc. from your hands and shoes before getting in or out of the vehicle.
- In a model with side step, rain and snow can cause the side step to become
 very slippery. Therefore, always remove snow and ice from your shoes and the
 side step, and be careful not to slip when getting in and out of the vehicle.
- Exercise caution when opening or closing doors, as strong winds or steep slopes may cause doors to open or close suddenly.

ADVICE

• Do not hold parts other than the grip when getting in or out of the vehicle. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle or injuries to yourself or others.

Power Windows

The power windows operate only when the starter switch is in the "ON" position. Open each door window by pressing the power window switch; close each one by raising the switch.



- Before closing the windows, make sure that there is no risk of a hand, head or anything else being trapped in the moving window. Failure to do so could result in serious injury. This is especially true when a child is with you.
- Do not allow children to operate the power window. A child may become trapped or stuck in the window and this could result in serious injury.

A CAUTION

- When opening or closing the window, do not operate the driver side window switch and the window switch of another door in the opposite direction at the same time.
- After the window is fully open or closed, do not continue to operate the window switch in the same direction.

NOTE

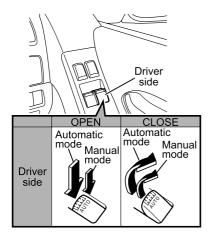
- When the battery has been reconnected, perform the following initialization settings in order to operate the driver's power window properly.
 - Open the driver's window halfway. Pull up the driver's window switch to fully close the driver's window and then keep the switch in this position for 2 seconds.

Window Switches on Driver's Door



NOTE

 In models with a keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock), for approximately 40 seconds after the starter switch is turned to a position other than the "ON" position, the driver's window can be opened or closed using the window switches on the driver's door. However, if the driver's door or passenger's door is opened, the window cannot be opened or closed, even within this 40-second period.



To Open the Driver's Window

Lightly pressing the driver side window switch will lower the driver's window until the switch is released (manual mode). When the switch is firmly pressed, the window will lower completely without the need to press the switch continuously (automatic mode). If you want to stop the automatic movement of the window before it lowers completely, raise the switch lightly.

To Close the Driver's Window

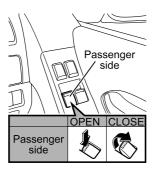


NOTE

 When a window is closed with automatic mode, if any foreign object is inserted between the window frame and the window, a jam protection function is equipped that will stop operation and open the window slightly to prevent objects becoming trapped. Lightly raising the driver side window switch will cause the driver's window to move up until the switch is released (manual mode). When the switch is fully raised, the window will automatically rise to the completely closed position without the need to keep the switch continuously raised (automatic mode). If you want to stop the automatic movement of the window before it moves up completely, press the switch lightly.

MARNING

- Do not attempt to insert hand or place your head between the window and the window frame in order to ensure that the jam protection function operates properly. Failure to do so could result in serious injury.
- This function may not operate if an object becomes trapped just before the window fully closes. Also, the function will not operate if the window switch is continuously raised. Pay attention that your fingers do not become trapped.
 Failure to do so could result in serious injury.



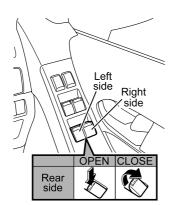
To Open the Passenger's Window

The passenger's window continues to lower while the passenger side switch on the driver's door is being pressed.

To Close the Passenger's Window

The passenger's window continues to move up while the passenger side switch on the driver's door is being raised.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

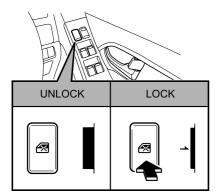


To Open a Rear Window (Crew Cab Model)

The rear window continues to lower while the rear side switch on the driver's door is being pressed.

To Close a Rear Window (Crew Cab Model)

The rear window continues to move up while the rear side switch on the driver's door is being raised.



To Lock Passenger's Window and Rear Power Windows

If you push the power window lock switch, only the driver's window will be openable. To cancel the passenger's window and rear power windows (crew cab model) lock, push the switch again.

A CAUTION

 Use the power window lock switch to lock the passenger's window and rear power windows (crew cab model) when carrying a child in the vehicle. By doing so, you can prevent the child from operating the passenger's window and rear power windows (crew cab model) and causing an accident.

Window Switches on Passenger's Door and Rear Doors

Passenger side



Window switch on rear doors (Crew cab model)

Rear door switch



CAUTION

· Be sure to warn passengers, especially in the case of a child, not to let any part of the body become trapped or caught in a moving window.

The window continues to lower while the window switch is being pressed and continues to rise while the switch is being raised. It will stop moving at any position when the switch is released.



NOTE

 When the power window lock switch is in the "LOCK" position, it is not possible to open and close the passenger's window and rear windows.

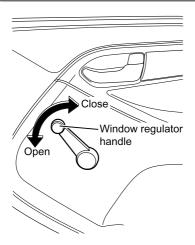
Manually Operated Windows



CAUTION

• Be sure that you and the passenger are at no risk of having any part of the body become trapped in the window. You should be especially careful if a child is with you.

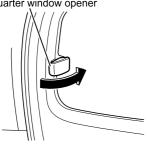
Window Regulator Handle



Turn the window regulator handle to open or close the window.

Quarter Window Opener (Extended Cab Model)





The quarter window on each side can be opened and closed by operating the quarter window opener.

Fuel Tank Filler Cap

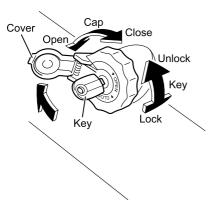


- Be sure to place the starter switch in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position to shut down the engine before refueling the vehicle. Refueling while the engine is running could cause a fire in your vehicle.
- Open the fuel tank filler cap slowly. If you open it quickly, the fuel tank pressure may cause fuel to spurt out.
- When refueling, never smoke or place any ignition source nearby. There is a risk
 of fire.
- After refueling, make sure that the fuel tank filler cap is tightly closed.
- Do not use any fuel tank filler cap that is not an Isuzu genuine part.
 The use of an improper fuel tank filler cap could cause fuel spillage in the event of an accident. The use of an improper fuel tank filler cap could also affect the fuel system and the emission control system.
- Be sure to wipe off the fuel that is spilled at refueling.

A CAUTION

- Always use only an extra-low-sulfur diesel fuel (10 ppm or lower sulfur content).
- The use of a poor-quality diesel fuel, mixing such an additive as water remover to the fuel in the tank, or filling the tank with gasoline, kerosene or an alcohol-based fuel or its mixture with a diesel fuel will badly affect the fuel filter and result in lubrication problems in fuel-lubricated components of the injectors. In addition, this practice can also impair the operation of the engine and the diesel particulate defuser (DPD), the exhaust emission cleaning system, possibly leading to breakdown of the engine-related systems. If an incorrect fuel should accidentally be added, drain all fuel from the system. Failure to observe this precaution can result in a fire or permanent damage when the engine is started.
- The use of any fuel other than an extra-low-sulfur diesel fuel may violate the relevant regulations enforced in certain countries or regions.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



Opening and Closing the Fuel Tank Filler Cap (with Key Lock)

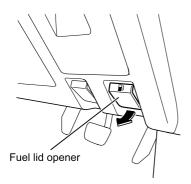
- Eliminate static electricity from your body before opening the fuel tank filler cap.
- 2. Open the cover, then firmly insert the key and turn it to the "OPEN" position.
- 3. Slowly turn the cap counterclockwise to open it.
- 4. Refuel the tank.
- 5. Securely screw the fuel tank filler cap onto the fuel filler neck.
- 6. Turn the key to the "CLOSE" position to lock the fuel tank filler cap.
- 7. Pull the key out, then make sure the fuel tank filler cap is securely closed.

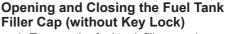
MARNING

 If the fuel tank filler cap is not tightly closed, leaking fuel could start a fire while driving.

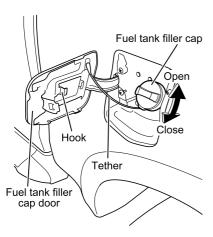
ADVICE

- When opening or closing the fuel tank filler cap, be sure to grasp the fuel tank filler cap itself, not the key. If you try to turn the fuel tank filler cap using the key, you could damage the key.
- Wipe off the key to remove any dirt or dust, etc. after pulling it out.





- To open the fuel tank filler cap door on the cargo side, pull the fuel lid opener toward you.
- Eliminate static electricity from your body before opening the fuel tank filler cap.



- 3. Slowly turn the cap counterclockwise to open it.
- 4. After removing the fuel tank filler cap, hang it on the hook.
- Refuel the tank.
- 6. Turn the fuel tank filler cap clockwise until it clicks more than 3 times to install it securely.
- 7. Close the fuel tank filler cap door on the cargo side.



ADVICE

- If the fuel tank filler cap is not hung on the hook, the fuel tank filler cap may hit the body panel and the remaining fuel on the fuel tank filler cap may damage the body paint.
- Closing the fuel tank filler cap door while the tether is twisted abnormally may cause the tether to be damaged.

Seats

The driver's seat must be adjusted so that when you sit well back in the seat, you can fully depress the pedals without moving your back from the seatback, and you can operate the steering wheel easily and freely. After making adjustments, check that the seat is completely locked.

Adjusting the seat for a correct driving posture is a fundamental part of safe driving.

Make sure you can turn the steering wheel easily.



Make sure you can adequately press the pedals.

MARNING

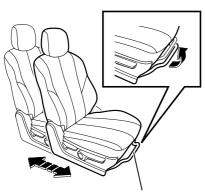
- Use caution when adjusting the seat, as failure to do so could cause injury.
- Never allow children to adjust their seats themselves; an adult should adjust the seat for occupants who are children.
- Adjust the seat only before you start driving. Adjusting the seat while the vehicle
 is in motion must be avoided not only because the unlocked seat will move back
 and forth unstably, preventing you from taking the correct position, but might
 also cause you to lose control of the vehicle, possibly resulting in an accident.
- Try to move the seat without unlatching it after making adjustments to check that
 it is completely locked. A loosely locked seat may move unexpectedly and your
 position might then become unstable; this could lead to an accident. Take the
 vehicle to your Isuzu Dealer for service if you find that your seat adjusters do
 not latch. In addition, the seat belt will not operate properly if the seatback is not
 completely locked.
- Driving with the seat excessively reclined could be very dangerous in a collision or sudden stop. Raise the seatback, and wear the seat belt correctly while sitting well back and straight up in the seat.
- Do not place a cushion or similar object between your back and the seatback.
 Doing so not only affects the stability of your driving position but also prevents the seat belt from working effectively in the event of a collision.

WARNING (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not place any objects under the seat. If there are any objects under the seat, the seat could be locked in an improper position.
- Before making adjustments, check that the seat rails are free of anything that could obstruct the locking of the seat. Be careful that hands and feet do not become trapped in the seat or rails when adjusting the seat and that the seat does not hit any objects or passengers while it is being adjusted.
- When you adjust the seat, be careful that the seat does not hit passengers or objects. Doing so could cause injury to passengers, or damage objects.
- Make sure not to hit a passenger or luggage with the seat when adjusting your seat.

Driver's Seat



Fore-aft position adjustment lever

Forward/backward Adjustment (Manual Seat Model)

While raising the lever, move the seat forward or backward. Release the lever when the seat is in the desired position. After making adjustments, try to move the seat back and forth to check that it is fully locked.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



Fore-aft position and height adjustment lever

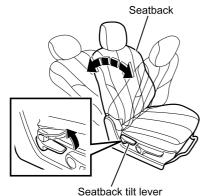
Forward/backward Adjustment (Power Seat Model)

When the lever is pushed forward, the seat will move forward. When it is pushed backward, the seat will move backward.



ADVICE

 The seat can be adjusted regardless of the position of the starter switch.
 However, adjusting it consumes a lot of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.



Reclining Adjustment (Manual Seat Model)

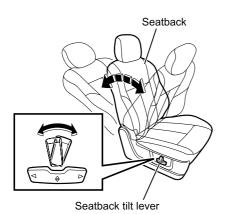


WARNING

 When reclining the seatback, hold the seatback with your hand while raising the seatback tilt lever. The seatback may suddenly move forward if it is not held with your hand, causing an injury. Once the seatback has returned to its original position, check that the seatback is fully locked by trying to rock it forward and backward.

To recline the seatback, raise the seatback tilt lever and gently lean back to the desired position.

To move the seatback forward, lean forward with your back slightly clear of the seatback and raise the lever. After making adjustments, check that the seatback is fully locked.



Reclining Adjustment (Power Seat Model)

When the seatback tilt lever is pushed forward, the seatback will tilt forward. When it is pushed backward, the seatback will tilt backward.



ADVICE

 The seat can be adjusted regardless of the position of the starter switch.
 However, adjusting it consumes a lot of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.



Height Adjustment (Manual Seat Model)

When the height adjustment lever is repeatedly pulled up, the seat will move up diagonally forward. When it is repeatedly pushed down, the seat will move down diagonally backward. After making adjustments, check that the seat is fully locked.



Height Adjustment (Power Seat Model)

When the rear side of the lever is pulled up, the seat will move up diagonally forward. When it is pushed down, the seat will move down diagonally backward.



ADVICE

 The seat can be adjusted regardless of the position of the starter switch.
 However, adjusting it consumes a lot of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.

Passenger Seat



Foré-aft position adjustment lever

Forward/backward Adjustment

While raising the lever, move the seat forward or backward. Release the lever when the seat is in the desired position. After making adjustments, try to move the seat back and forth to check that it is fully locked.

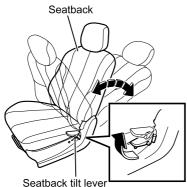
Reclining Adjustment



 When reclining the seatback, hold the seatback with your hand while raising the seatback tilt lever. The seatback may suddenly move forward if it is not held with your hand, causing an injury. Once the seatback has returned to its original position, check that the seatback is fully locked by trying to rock it forward and backward.

To recline the seatback, raise the seatback tilt lever and gently lean back to the desired position.

To move the seatback forward, lean forward with your back slightly clear of the seatback and raise the lever. After making adjustments, check that the seatback is fully locked.



Rear Seat

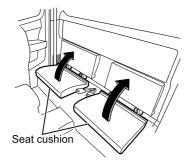


• Do not place cargo higher than the seatback. Doing so may block the rear view and cargo may fly forward when suddenly applying the brakes.

Extended Cab Model



- · Do not tip up the seat cushion while driving.
- When you tip up the seat cushion, tip up the seat cushion slowly.
- When you tip up the seat cushion or return it to the original position, be careful not to trap a hand or foot.



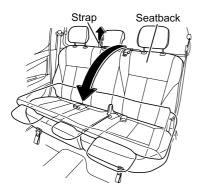
It is possible to tip up the seat cushion.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

Crew Cab Model



- · Do not move the seatback forward while driving.
- Do not sit on a folded seatback or place objects on it while driving.
- When folding the seatback forward, hold the seatback with your hand while pulling the strap up. The seatback may suddenly move forward if it is not held with your hand, causing an injury.
- When you fold the seatback forward, fold the seatback slowly while holding the seatback.
- When you fold the seatback forward, be careful that the seatback does not hit passengers or objects.
- When you return the seatback to the original position, try to move the seatback to check that it is completely locked. In addition, the seat belt will not operate properly if the seatback is not completely locked.
- When you fold the seatback forward or return it to the original position, be careful not to trap a hand or foot.



It is possible to fold the seatback forward by pulling the strap.

Before folding the seatback forward, retract the rear center seat belt.

After returning the seatback to the original position, connect the rear center seat belt.

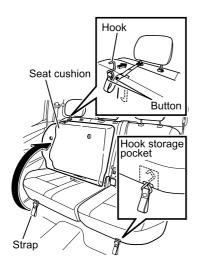


ADVICE

 When you return the seatback to the original position, be careful not to trap the latch plate of the rear center seat belt between the rear seat and the panel behind the rear seats.

Rear Center Seat Belt

→ Refer to page 3-53



Pull the strap forward to raise the seat cushion. Remove the hook of the strap edge from the strap button and secure the hook to the headrest stay.

MARNING

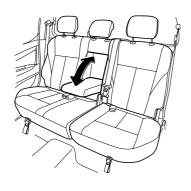
- Do not raise the seat cushion while driving.
- When raising the seat cushion, the hook of seat cushion strap must be secured to the headrest stay to keep the seat cushion locked safely in the storage position.
- When returning the seat cushion to its original position, hold the seat cushion and slowly lay it down.
 Finally, try to move the seat cushion to check that it is completely locked.
- After returning the seat cushion to its original position, do not forget to return the hook to the hook storage pocket.
- When returning the seat cushion to its original position, make sure the seat belt does not get trapped. In addition, make sure the seat belt lays on top of the seat cushion after returning the seat cushion to its original position.

Center Armrest In models with a ce

In models with a center armrest, pull the armrest out from the seatback, then push it forward to use.



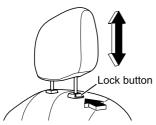
- Before using the center armrest, fasten your seat belt.
- Do not sit on the center armrest or place heavy objects on it.

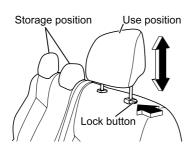


Headrest



- Do not drive with a headrest removed. There is a chance that impacts to the head area would not be prevented and this could result in serious injury.
- · Be sure to adjust the headrest before driving. If you adjust the headrest while the vehicle is in motion, you will be unable to maintain the correct driving posture. This may cause an accident.
- · After making adjustments, try to move the headrest to check that it is completely locked.
- · Use the appropriate headrest for each seat.





Driver and Passenger Seat

The driver and passenger seats have 4 adjustment levels. Make adjustments that align the center of your head to the center of the headrest. When raising it, lift it up in this position. When lowering it, push the lock button while pushing the headrest down.

Rear Seat (Crew Cab Model)

The rear seat can only be changed between the use position and storage position. Always select the use position when riding in the vehicle. When selecting the use position, move the headrest to the securely locked position in which a clicking sound can be heard. When selecting the storage position, push the lock button while pushing the headrest down.

Installation and Removal

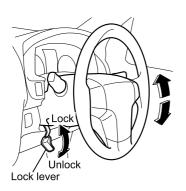
When pulling out or inserting a headrest, press the lock button.

Tilt Steering

The steering wheel is adjustable up and down.



- When you have adjusted the steering wheel, try pulling the steering wheel up and down to check that it is securely locked in position before driving.
- Adjust the position of the steering wheel before you start driving. Adjusting
 the position of the steering wheel while driving would be extremely dangerous
 because the steering wheel would rattle up and down, preventing precise
 steering.



Adjustment

- 1. Lower the lock lever downward to unlock the steering column.
- Sit in the correct driving position, and then move the steering wheel up and down to select the optimum steering wheel position.
- 3. Firmly lock the steering wheel at the selected position by moving the lock lever to the lock position.

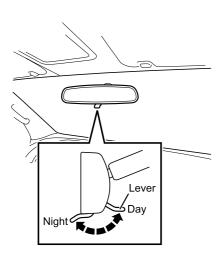
Mirrors

Sit in the correct driving position on the properly adjusted seat, and then check each mirror to ensure that it provides a proper view of the rear, the sides, the area just in front of the vehicle, and the area directly opposite to the driver's seat. Make adjustments if necessary and clean any dirty mirrors.

Inside Rearview Mirror



 Adjust the mirror when the vehicle is stationary, not while the vehicle is in motion.



Inside Rearview Mirror

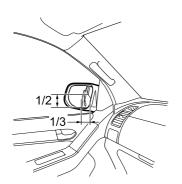
Normally, with the lever pushed toward the front of the vehicle, move the mirror to adjust to a position where it provides a proper rear view. When the headlights of vehicles behind you are reflected brightly when driving at night, pull the lever toward you. By doing this you can reduce the reflection.



 Do not clean the rearview mirror glass with a cleaner containing ammonia or acetic acid. Doing so may result in damage to the mirror's coating.

Outside Rearview Mirrors

After properly adjusting your seat for proper driving position, adjust the mirrors indicated below so that they provide adequate views for checking the rear, the side and the areas just in front and immediately to the side of the vehicle by moving each of the mirrors.



Outside Rearview Mirror

Lateral-direction: Adjust the mirror so that you can see the vehicle's side including the inner one-third of the mirror.

Vertical-direction: Adjust the mirror so that you see the rear bottom corner of the vehicle halfway up the height of the mirror.



- Adjust the mirrors when the vehicle is stationary, not while the vehicle is in motion.
- · Do not drive with the mirrors folded.

A CAUTION

- When checking the rear of the vehicle with mirrors, be careful that this does not distract your attention from the traffic ahead.
- Rearview mirrors may make the vehicle behind you appear farther away than it really is. Use these mirrors very carefully until you are able to correctly determine distances from the images.
- Keep the mirrors in mind when passing another vehicle on a narrow road, moving the vehicle into a garage or driving near pedestrians.

Remote Control Mirror Switch

→ Refer to page 4-73

Seat Belts



The protection provided by seat belts might be significantly reduced if they are not fastened properly; in certain cases, improperly fastened seat belts can even play a role in causing injury to the wearer. Seat belts must be worn not only by the driver but also by the passenger(s) before the vehicle starts moving. You should be fully acquainted with the proper use of seat belts and important points to be respected as described in the following pages. Familiarizing yourself with the correct use of seat belts is essential for your safety.

⚠ WARNING

- · Seat belts must always be fastened before starting to drive.
- Seat belts provide full protection only when the driver and passenger(s) fasten them while sitting upright and fully back on the seat.
- Wearing a seat belt with the seatback excessively reclined could be very dangerous in a collision or sudden stop since the occupant may slide under the belt and be seriously injured. Seat belts work best only when the occupant is sitting well back and straight up in the seat.
- Be sure to insert the latch plate into the buckle until a click is heard. An
 incompletely inserted latch plate is dangerous in the event of a collision or
 sudden stop.
- Do not run the seat belt over your face, chin or neck.
- Wear the seat belt as low as possible around the hips, not around the waist. A
 seat belt running over the waist would press the abdomen with a strong force
 and could increase the likelihood of injuries in a collision or sudden stop.
- Do not use a seat belt for a small child if the belt is on or very close to the child's neck or chin. Also, do not use a seat belt if it does not fit snugly over the child's hips because restraining the child under those conditions could be dangerous in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Instead, use an appropriate child restraint system (CRS) available on the market. For further details, please contact your Isuzu Dealer.
- Use a CRS that fits the size of the infant or child. Install the system according to the manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Remove any twists in the seat belt before fastening it. A seat belt with twists will not provide full protection because it cannot disperse shocks efficiently in the event of a collision or sudden stop.
- Too much slack could increase the amount of injury because the belt would not be able to properly restrain you in an accident.
- Expecting mothers or people suffering from chest or abdominal conditions should check with their doctor for specific recommendations about wearing seat belts.
- Do not use one seat belt for more than one person. If worn by more than one person, the seat belt would not work effectively in a collision or sudden stop.
- Have seat belts inspected and, if necessary, replaced by the nearest Isuzu
 Dealer when the webbing becomes frayed or worn and/or when the buckle or
 other mechanical parts fail to work properly.
- Do not disassemble the seat belts or modify the system.
- If your vehicle has been involved in a collision, the seat belts worn at the time
 may have lost their original strength due to impact even if they appear intact.
 These seat belts must be inspected and, if necessary, replaced by the nearest
 Isuzu Dealer.
- Be careful to keep the buckles and retractors free of dust and foreign matter.
- Wearing seat belts is a legal requirement. The driver is responsible not only
 for wearing a seat belt himself/herself but also for prompting all passengers to
 wear their seat belts. It is necessary, however, to check with a doctor about the
 appropriateness of a seat belt for an expecting mother or a passenger with a
 chest/abdominal condition.
- Regularly inspect to see if the seat belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchors function properly.
- Do not place objects near the seat belts if the objects could damage the seat belts.

Seats → Refer to page 3-36

Seat Belt Warning Light (Driver Seat)

→ Refer to page 4-39

Seat Belt Warning Light (Front

Passenger Seat)

 \rightarrow Refer to page 4-40

Seat Belt Care → Refer to page 6-103

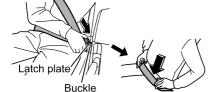
Three-Point Seat Belts (ELR)

The seat belt extends or retracts freely if the wearer moves slowly, but it locks and restrains the occupant during forward force caused by the occupant's body following a strong shock. Adjust the driver's and passenger's shoulder belts for proper position by means of the shoulder anchor.





 The shoulder belt should be adequately positioned on your shoulder but should not touch your neck and/or face. The shoulder belt could harm you in a collision or sudden stop if it is in contact with your neck and/or face.

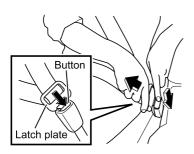


Keep as low on hip bone as possible

To Fasten

- Sit on the seat in the correct driving position.
- 2. Pull out the seat belt holding the latch plate. After checking that there are no twists in the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.
- To reduce the risk of sliding under the belt during a collision, position the belt across your lap as low on your hips as possible and adjust it to a snug fit by pulling the shoulder portion upward through the latch plate.

The lap-shoulder belt is designed to lock during a sudden stop or impact. At other times it should move freely.



To Unfasten

Push the button on the buckle. As the belt automatically retracts, let it be taken up slowly by holding on to the latch plate until the belt is fully retracted.

CAUTION

 If you repair any components around the steering wheel, instrument panel, center console and brake/clutch pedal or the driver's and passenger's seat belts, or if you install an audio system or other equipment, the seat belt system with pretensioner and airbag system may be adversely affected, possibly causing the seat belt to suddenly retract or the airbag to suddenly deploy, which could result in injury. Be sure to have any repair or installation done by your Isuzu Dealer.



ADVICE

- While being automatically retracted, the seat belt could damage a nearby window or interior trim unless the latch plate is properly held. Hold the latch plate to ensure that the belt is taken up slowly.
- Before closing the door, check that the retracted seat belt is taut. A slack belt could become trapped in the door or seat rail.
- When the seat belt is fully taken up (or not pulled out), check that the stopper is holding the belt in a fully taut state.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



NOTE

- For vehicles equipped with an airbag system, the driver's seat belt and the passenger's seat belt feature pretensioner and load limiter functions.
- The three-point seat belts are provided with an emergency locking retractor (ELR) function.

[ELR function]

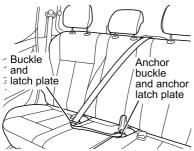
- The ELR normally allows the seat belt to move in and out freely as the occupant moves. However, it locks the seat belt to restrain the occupant when a forward force resulting from a collision or sudden stop acts on the occupant.
- The ELR also locks the seat belt when the belt is pulled out quickly. If this happens, allow it to retract once and then pull it out slowly.

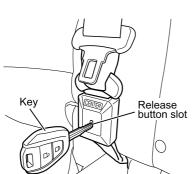
[Load limiter function]

• The load limiter allows the seat belt to extend while maintaining the load working on the belt at a constant level. This helps alleviate the shock applied on the occupant's chest.

Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and SRS Airbag System

→ Refer to page 3-67





Rear Center Seat Belt

When using the rear center seat belt, make sure that each latch plate and buckle are securely locked.

When not using the rear center seat belt, connect the anchor buckle and anchor latch plate. (Do not retract the seat belt.)

When you fold the seatback forward, retract the seat belt.

To retract the rear center seat belt, insert the key into the release button slot on the anchor buckle and disconnect the anchor buckle and anchor latch plate. As the belt automatically retracts, let it be taken up slowly by holding on to the anchor latch plate until the belt is fully retracted.



ADVICE

 While being automatically retracted, the seat belt could damage a nearby window or interior trim unless the latch plate is properly held. Hold the latch plate to ensure that the belt is taken up slowly.

To connect the rear center seat belt, pull out the seat belt holding the anchor latch plate. After checking that there are no twists in the belt, insert the anchor latch plate into the anchor buckle until it clicks.

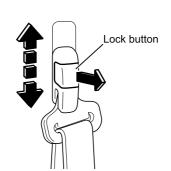


NOTE

[Rear center seat belt design to prevent incorrect fastening]

- The rear center seat belt is designed so that it cannot be connected with any of the window-side seat belts.
 - In addition, the buckle of the rear center seat belt is identified by a "CENTER" mark to prevent incorrect fastening of the rear center seat belt.

Shoulder Anchor (Front Seat Belt)



Adjustment

Adjust the height of the shoulder anchor on the driver's door side and passenger's door side according to your body size. There are 4 adjustment positions.

To adjust the anchor height, move the shoulder anchor up or down with the lock button pulled toward you. When the desired height is achieved, release the lock button to lock it.

A CAUTION

- Never adjust the shoulder anchor height while the vehicle is in motion. Doing this is very dangerous.
- The effectiveness of the seat belt will be reduced if it is not properly fastened.
 The shoulder anchor should be adjusted to a position as high as possible where the belt fits right on the shoulder but does not come in contact with your neck or face.
- · After making adjustments, check that the shoulder anchor is completely locked.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

If you are travelling with children in the vehicle, CRS are required.

Tips for Selecting a CRS

Children should be restrained at all times and fitted with a CRS appropriate to their size when travelling in a vehicle. Following are some guidelines about selecting the appropriate restraint for your child.



- Carefully follow the instructions in the CRS manufacturer's instruction manual to install the CRS.
- Make sure that installation is performed in compliance with all installation instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer and make sure that the system is secured properly. Improper installation may result in death or serious injuries to the child in event of sudden stopping or accidents.
- It is not recommended to use a CRS with tether strap for the vehicles without the top tether anchorage. When using the CRS with the tether strap, be sure to fix a tether strap to the top tether anchorage.



Infants

This type of CRS is designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



Young Children

This type of CRS is designed for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold his or her head upright. It is also possible to purchase convertible seats which can be used as a rear-facing infant restraint or converted to a front-facing CRS.



Use this type of restraint system when children outgrow a typical front-facing CRS but they are still too small for lap /sash seat belts. A booster seat raises the child so that the knees bend comfortably, the lap /sash seat belt is correctly positioned and the child can see out the window. A rigid booster seat with a back, side wings and sash guide gives the best protection. In assessing the range of children who would benefit from booster seats, height is a better indicator than age or weight.



Older Children

A child should use a normal lap /sash seat belt only when:

- He/she can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat,
- Lap belt rests low and snug across the hips - not across the stomach,
- Sash belt is centered on shoulder and chest,
- He/she is able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

MARNING

- Never insert coins, clips or other foreign objects into the buckle of your child's seat belt since this may cause improper latching of the latch plate and buckle.
- Do not use a defective seat belt. Immediately contact your Isuzu Dealer and repair the seat belt that does not function normally. You, your passengers and especially your child are at risk of death or serious injury when using a seat with a defective seat belt.
- Following the insertion of the latch plate into the buckle, make sure the latch plate and buckle are surely locked together, and that there is not twisting of the lap and shoulder portions of the seat belt.
- The seat belt cannot protect your child from death or serious injuries when it is defective. Immediately contact your Isuzu Dealer and repair the seat belt that does not function normally. Never use the CRS with the defective seat belt until it is fixed.
- For your child's safety, never place your child's armpit over the shoulder belt.

Children should be restrained at all times when travelling in a vehicle.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise the child by means of an ordinary cushion. The cushion will not stay in place in the event of a crash, and the child would slip out of the straps and become entangled. Ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the CRS.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

MARNING

- Do not use a rearward-facing CRS on a seat protected by an SRS airbag in front
 of it. The child could be seriously injured if the SRS airbag inflates, as the child's
 head would be very close to the inflating SRS airbag.
- CRS anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted CRS. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.
- If using an ISO-FIX anchorage (lower anchorage and top tether anchorage), check whether your ISO-FIX CRS is a product that has received UN R44 (ECE R44) certification. Carefully follow the instructions in the CRS manufacturer's instruction manual to install the CRS.
- Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing CRS in the front seat, but always move the passenger's seat as far back as it will go.
- Make sure that the CRS is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Install the system according to all installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.
- If the seat headrest interferes with the CRS, either remove the headrest or adjust it to a position where it does not interfere with the CRS.
- · When CRS is not in use:
 - Make sure that the CRS is properly secured to the seat when it is not in use. Do not simply place a CRS on the seat without it being secured to the seat.

Suitability for CRS

Regular Cab Model

		Seating position	
Mass group		Front passenger	
		With SRS airbag	
0	Up to 10 kg (22 lb)	X	
0+	Up to 13 kg (29 lb)	X	
1	9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb)	UF	
II	15 to 25 kg (33 to 55 lb)	UF	
Ш	22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb)	UF	

UF: Suitable for "Forward-facing universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

Extended Cab Model

Mass group		Seating position			
		Front passenger	Door outhoard		
		With SRS airbag	Rear outboard		
0	Up to 10 kg (22 lb)	X	X		
0+	Up to 13 kg (29 lb)	X	X		
I	9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb)	UF	X		
Ш	15 to 25 kg (33 to 55 lb)	UF	X		
III	22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb)	UF	X		

UF: Suitable for "Forward-facing universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.



PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

Crew Cab Model

Mass group		Seating position			
		Front passenger	Rear	Rear center	
		With SRS airbag	outboard		
0	Up to 10 kg (22 lb)	X	U	U	
0+	Up to 13 kg (29 lb)	X	U	U	
-1	9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb)	UF	U	U	
Ш	15 to 25 kg (33 to 55 lb)	UF	U	U	
Ш	22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb)	UF	U	U	

U: Suitable for "Universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for "Forward-facing universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

Suitability for ISO-FIX CRS

Body style	Mass group kg/lb	Size class	Fixture	ISO-FIX position Rear out board
	Carry-cot	F	ISO/L1	X
		G	ISO/L2	X
	0 - up to 10 kg / 22.1 lb	E	ISO/R1	IL
	0+ - up to 13 kg / 28.7 lb	E	ISO/R1	IL
		D	ISO/R2	IL
		С	ISO/R3	IL *1
Crew	I - 9 to 18 kg / 19.8 to 39.7 lb	D	ISO/R2	IL
cab		С	ISO/R3	IL *1
		В	ISO/F2	IUF
		B1	ISO/F2X	IUF
		Α	ISO/F3	IUF, IL *2
	II - 15 to 25 kg / 33.1 to 55.1 lb		(1)	Х
	III - 22 to 36 kg / 48.5 to 79.4 lb	_	(1)	Х

- (1): For the CRS which do not carry the size class identification (A to G), please contact to the CRS manufacturer or dealer for handling the ISO-FIX CRS.
- IUF: Suitable for ISO-FIX forward CRS of universal category approved for use in the mass group.
- IL: Suitable for particular ISO-FIX CRS given in the attached list. These ISO-FIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" categories.
- X: ISO-FIX position not suitable for ISO-FIX CRS in this mass group and / or this size class.
- *1: Fair G 0/1 S with ISO-FIX platform type D RWF (Rearward-facing)
- *2: Fair G 0/1 S with ISO-FIX platform type D FWF (Forward-facing)

CRS Lower and Top Tether Anchorages

Except front seat and rear center seat are equipped with anchorages for securing the ISO-FIX CRS.



 Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

NOTE

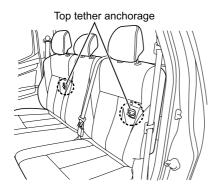
- When you buy an ISO-FIX CRS, contact your Isuzu Dealer and to get recommendation.
- Carefully follow the instructions in the CRS manufacturer's instruction manual to install the CRS.

To assist you in locating the lower anchorages for CRS, each seating position with the anchorage has a button on the seatback at each lower anchorage location.



CRS lower anchorages are installed to the outboard seating positions.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



Top tether anchorages are installed on the panel behind the rear seats.



NOTE

 Top tether anchorages are not equipped on models for the Hong Kong or Singapore markets.

Installation Procedure

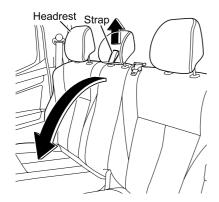
Top tether equipped CRS

Procedure No. 1) \rightarrow 8)

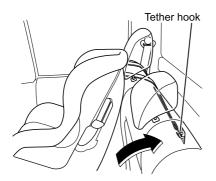
Top tether not equipped CRS

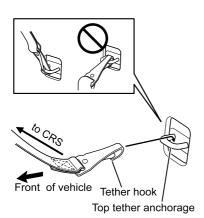
Procedure No. 7)

- 1. Retract the rear center seat belt.
- 2. Adjust the head restraint to the use position.
- Release the lock of seatback by pulling the strap and tilt the seatback forward.



PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS







4. Attach the tether hook to the top tether anchorage.

MARNING

 When installing the CRS, if the headrest interferes with the top tether, remove the headrest.

Headrest → Refer to page 3-44

5. Return the seatback to the original position.



NOTE

 The seatback must be locked firmly to the back panel. Keep the tether strap and hook in an upwards direction.

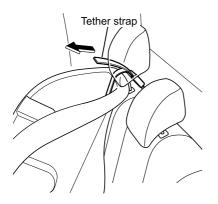
- 6. Connect the rear center seat belt.
- Attach the CRS to the seat belt or both the ISO-FIX anchorages.
 Refer to the instruction manual of the CRS.



NOTE

 CRS must firmly attached and locked with seat belt or ISO-FIX anchorages.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



8. Adjust the tether strap length until it attached tightly with the seat structure.

Uninstallation Procedure

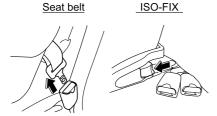
Top tether equipped CRS

Procedure No. 1) \rightarrow 8)

Top tether not equipped CRS

Procedure No. 1)

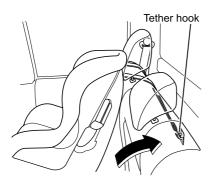
- 1. Release the CRS lock for the seat belt or the ISO-FIX anchorages.
- 2. Retract the rear center seat belt.





- 3. Release the lock of the seatback.
- 4. Tilt the seatback while moving the CRS forward.

3-66 PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



- 5. Loosen the CRS tether strap.
- 6. Remove the tether hook from the top tether anchorage.
- 7. Push and lock the seatback to the original position.
- 8. Connect the rear center seat belt.



NOTE

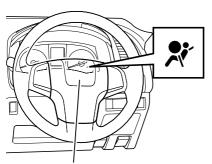
 The seatback must be locked firmly to the back panel.

Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and SRS Airbag System

The front seat belt with pretensioner and supplemental restraint system (SRS) airbag system is activated in the event of a frontal collision when the impact energy exceeds a certain level to help mitigate the shock on the head of the driver and the passenger by firmly restraining the body of the occupant in the seat with the front seat belt with pretensioner and front airbag. In addition, in models with side airbag and curtain airbag, the front seat belt with pretensioner, side airbag and curtain airbag are activated in the event of a lateral collision when the impact energy exceeds a certain level to help mitigate the shock on the head and chest of the driver and the passenger by firmly restraining the body of the occupant in the seat, and the curtain airbag is activated to mitigate the shock on the head of the occupant sitting in the outboard seats of the models with the rear seat.

Be sure to observe the following instructions to prevent you and your passenger from suffering a serious or fatal injury due to impacts resulting from the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag operation.

Operation Check



Airbag assembly for driver seat

The SRS airbag warning light checks and alerts the conditions of the SRS airbag system.

The SRS airbag warning light should flash seven times when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out.

If the SRS airbag warning light stays on, the airbag(s) may not function properly when needed. Drive the vehicle after the warning light goes out.

MARNING

 If you encounter any of the following conditions, errors have occurred. Have your vehicle inspected/serviced at your Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.

[System error]

- If the SRS airbag warning light does not flash seven times when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- If the SRS airbag warning light does not go out.
- If the SRS airbag warning light comes on while driving the vehicle.

WARNING (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- If you make unauthorized modifications to the vehicle or install an unauthorized accessory, the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag may not operate correctly.
- If the steering wheel is changed to a non-standard one or a sticker is attached
 to the steering wheel pad, there could be a danger of system malfunction or the
 sticker flying off in the event of system activation. Attaching stickers or placing
 such things as accessories or air fresheners on the top surface of the instrument
 panel is also dangerous. They may prevent normal operation of the airbag or
 could fly off in the event of system activation.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, do not attach seat covers under any circumstances. If a seat cover is attached or objects are placed in the area in which the side airbag inflates, the side airbag will not function correctly. Also, there could be a danger of objects flying off in the event of the system activation. In addition, if hard objects such as hangers or accessories are attached to the grip or coat hook, they may prevent normal operation of the curtain airbag and could fly off in the event of system activation.
- Do not apply excessive force to nor strongly hit the airbag installation area or the base of the b-pillar. Doing so may result in erroneous activation of the airbag or the front seat belt with pretensioner.
- Doing any of the following may require special precautions. Be sure to consult
 your Isuzu Dealer before doing any of the following. Failure to do so may cause
 the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag to be unduly activated, causing
 the seat belt to be unexpectedly retracted or the airbag to be suddenly inflated,
 causing an injury to the occupant. Doing any of them improperly will adversely
 affect the operation of the system, causing a malfunction or failure.
 - Repair or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, center console, parts around the accelerator pedal, front seat (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag), parts around the roof side (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag) and parts around the base of the b-pillar.
 - Repair, replacement or disposal of the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag, or scrapping of a model that has front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag.
 - When audio equipment and accessories are installed or modification such as body mounting is carried out.
 - Making modifications to the front of the vehicle (bumper, frame, etc.), installing equipment (snow plows, etc.), making modifications to the frame, or making changes to the vehicle's height using unauthorized methods and/or materials.
 - Repairing or painting of panels at the front of the vehicle or panels on the cab.

$\overline{\mathbb{A}}$

CAUTION

Have your vehicle inspected at the nearest Isuzu Dealer promptly if you encounter any of the following conditions.

- · The SRS airbag warning light shows an abnormality.
- The front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag are activated by an impact. (The SRS airbag warning light comes on.)
- Your vehicle has received a certain level of frontal impact, or lateral impact (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag), even when the impact has not activated the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag.
- · The seat belt is frayed or worn out.
- The steering pad surface and instrument panel surface is cracked or otherwise damaged, or it receives an impact.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, when the surface of the airbag storage of the front seat or surface of the airbag storage of the roof side is cracked or otherwise damaged, or it receives an impact.

SRS Airbag Warning Light

→ Refer to page 4-41

Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner



When the vehicle receives an impact exceeding a certain level during a frontal collision, or lateral collision (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag), the fastened seat belt is retracted instantly and removes the slack in the seat belt to securely restrain the driver and the passenger in the seat, thus enhancing the seat belt's restraining effect.

Seat Belts → Refer to page 3-48

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

MARNING

- The front seat belt with pretensioner helps reduce the risk of a serious injury
 to the driver and the passenger should the vehicle receive a frontal impact,
 or lateral impact (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag), exceeding a
 certain level. The maximum effect is achieved only if the seat belt is correctly
 worn.
- The front seat belt with pretensioner takes up the slack in the seat belt instantly
 to help reduce the risk of a serious injury. If the front seat belt with pretensioner
 activates, you may suffer scratches or a slight bruise or burn due to heat
 generated by rubbing.

A CAUTION

• Do not remove or disassemble the seat belt. Accidental activation of the system may cause parts to fly off, causing an injury to you; or causing malfunction.

ADVICE

 Once activated during a collision, the front seat belt with pretensioner cannot be reused. The seat belt must be replaced immediately at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

NOTE

- Even if the pretensioner function fails, the seat belt still operate as a regular seat belt (with ELR) and the seat belt function is ensured.
- The pretensioner generates a sound at the moment it retracts the seat belt.
- When the front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag system are activated by an impact, the SRS airbag warning light comes on.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Airbag

Front SRS Airbag

The front SRS airbag inflates in the event of a frontal collision with the impact exceeding a certain level and helps to disperse and reduce the impact on the body of the driver and the passenger as a supplement to the front seat belt with pretensioner.

MARNING

- The front airbag supplements the occupant protection effect of the seat belt
 by being activated together with the front seat belt with pretensioner to reduce
 severity of injury to the driver and the passenger should the vehicle receive a
 frontal impact exceeding a certain level. The maximum effect is achieved only if
 the seat belt is correctly worn.
- The front airbag does not replace the seat belt. Be sure to wear the seat belt.
- The front airbag is instantly inflated with considerable force to reduce serious injury. If the airbag inflates, you may suffer scratches or a slight bruise or burn due to heat generated by rubbing.
- When the vehicle receives an impact exceeding a certain level, resulting in front airbag deployment, deformation of the vehicle may cause the windshield to break.
- · Activation of the passenger SRS airbag may cause damage to the windshield.
- The front airbag cannot be reused once it is inflated. Immediately replace it at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

ADVICE

- When the front airbag is inflated, a sound and white smoke are produced but
 this is not the result of a fire. This white smoke is not detrimental your health.
 However, if residue (gas and so on) adheres to your eyes and skin, rinse them
 with water as soon as possible. Although it is rare, a person with delicate skin
 may suffer from irritation.
- Immediately after the front airbag is inflated, the metal portion that inflates the airbag gets hot. Do not touch it.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



NOTE

- The front airbag is quickly deflated after deployment and does not hinder visibility.
- When the front seat belt with pretensioner and front airbag are activated by an impact, the SRS airbag warning light comes on.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, the front airbag is activated independently from the side airbag and curtain airbag. When the front airbag is activated, the front seat belt with the pretensioner is also activated at the same time.

Side SRS Airbag and Curtain SRS Airbag

The side SRS airbag and curtain SRS airbag inflate in the event of a lateral collision with the impact exceeding a certain level and helps to disperse and reduce the impact on the body of the driver and the passenger (and the occupant sitting in the outboard rear seats of the models with the rear seat as a supplement) to the front seat belt with pretensioner.



- The side airbag and curtain airbag supplement the occupant protection effect of the seat belt by being activated together with the front seat belt with pretensioner to reduce severity of injury to the driver and the passenger and the occupant sitting in the outboard rear seats of the models with the rear seat should the vehicle receive a lateral impact exceeding a certain level. The maximum effect is achieved only if the seat belt is correctly worn.
- The side airbag and curtain airbag does not replace the seat belt. Be sure to wear the seat belt.
- The side airbag and curtain airbag are instantly inflated with considerable force to reduce serious injury. If the airbag inflates, you may suffer scratches or a slight bruise or burn due to heat generated by rubbing.
- When the vehicle receives an impact exceeding a certain level, resulting in side airbag and curtain airbag deployment, deformation of the vehicle may cause the windshield to break.
- The side airbag and curtain airbag cannot be reused once it is inflated. Immediately replace it at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



ADVICE

- When the side airbag and curtain airbag are inflated, a sound and white smoke are produced but this is not the result of a fire. This white smoke is not detrimental your health. However, if residue (gas and so on) adheres to your eyes and skin, rinse them with water as soon as possible. Although it is rare, a person with delicate skin may suffer from irritation.
- Immediately after the side airbag and curtain airbag are inflated, the metal portion that inflates the airbag gets hot. Do not touch it.



NOTE

- When the front seat belt with pretensioner, side airbag and curtain airbag are activated by an impact, the SRS airbag warning light comes on.
- The side airbag and curtain airbag are activated independently from the front airbag. When the side airbag and curtain airbag are activated, the front seat belt with the pretensioner is also activated at the same time.

When and How the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and SRS Airbag System Operates

The front seat belt with pretensioner and airbag system are activated when the vehicle receives an impact exceeding a certain level in the event of a frontal collision, or lateral collision (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag). Because the vehicle body absorbs part of impact energy, the system may not be activated due to reduction in the force of the impact or the intensity or direction of the impact received. However, even if the front of the vehicle is largely deformed by the collision, in some cases the impact on the seat is not severe. Therefore, the severity of deformation of and damage to the vehicle do not necessarily coincide with the activation of the airbag.

When are the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and Front SRS Airbag System Activated?

When the vehicle collides head-on against a parked/stopped vehicle or a moving vehicle with an impact of a certain level or higher

When the vehicle collides head-on against a solid wall with an impact of a certain level or higher





MARNING

 Immediately after the front airbag is inflated, the metal portion that inflates the airbag gets hot. Do not touch it. Doing so may cause a serious injury such as a burn.



NOTE

 The passenger side front SRS airbag may activate even if a passenger is not present. When the vehicle is hit from the side with an impact of a certain level or higher



When are the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner, Side SRS Airbag and Curtain SRS Airbag System Activated?



 Immediately after the side airbag and curtain airbag are inflated, the metal portion that inflates the airbag gets hot. Do not touch it. Doing so may cause a serious injury such as a burn.



NOTE

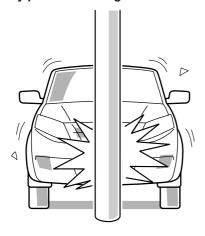
 The passenger side side SRS airbag and curtain SRS airbag may activate even if a passenger is not present.

When are the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and Front SRS Airbag System not Likely to Be Activated?

In the following cases, the front seat belt with pretensioner and front SRS airbag system are less likely to be activated even if they are working properly.

When the vehicle collides against a utility pole or standing tree

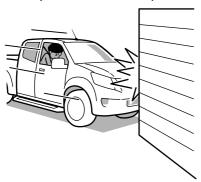
When the vehicle gets under a vehicle or obstacle





When the vehicle has an offset collision (one-sided collision)

When the vehicle has a frontal angle collision



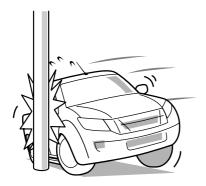


When are the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner, Side SRS Airbag and Curtain SRS Airbag System Not Likely to Be Activated?

In the following cases, the front seat belt with pretensioner, side SRS airbag and curtain SRS airbag system are less likely to be activated even if they are working properly.

When the vehicle collides against a utility pole or standing tree from the side

When the vehicle is hit at the engine compartment or cargo bed from the side





When the vehicle is hit to the side from a frontal angle

When the vehicle has a frontal angle collision





PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



When are the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and Front SRS Airbag System Activated Other than in a Collision?

- When the vehicle falls into a pothole or groove in the road
- When the vehicle strongly collides against an obstacle such as a protruding object on the road
- When the vehicle collides against a curb at high speed
- When the vehicle becomes airborne and hits the ground, receiving a strong impact on the bottom of the vehicle



• Immediately after the front airbag is inflated, the metal portion that inflates the airbag gets hot. Do not touch it. Doing so may cause a serious injury such as a burn.



When are the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner, Side SRS Airbag and Curtain SRS Airbag System Activated Other than in a Collision?

 When the vehicle skids and collides against a curb



Immediately after the side airbag and curtain airbag are inflated, the metal
portion that inflates the airbag gets hot. Do not touch it. Doing so may cause a
serious injury such as a burn.

When are the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and Front SRS Airbag System not Activated?

In the following cases, the front seat belt with pretensioner and front SRS airbag system are not activated even if they are working properly.

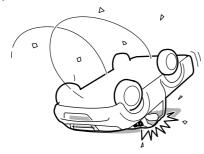
When the vehicle is hit from the rear



When the vehicle is hit from the side



When the vehicle rolls onto its side or upside down



When are the Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner, Side SRS Airbag and Curtain SRS Airbag System not Activated?

In the following cases, the front seat belt with pretensioner, side SRS airbag and curtain SRS airbag system are not activated even if they are working properly.

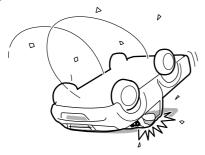
When the vehicle collides head-on against a parked/stopped vehicle or a moving vehicle with an impact of a certain level or higher

When the vehicle is hit from the rear





When the vehicle rolls onto its side or upside down



MARNING

- Repainting of the cab panels, repair around the side panel, steering wheel, instrument panel, center console, roof side (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag) and the front seat (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag), installation of accessories such as audio equipment and repair around the dashboard may adversely affect the SRS airbag system or cause a fatal or serious injury due to the impact of the airbag when it unexpectedly inflates.
 Never make these repairs by yourself, but be sure to consult your Isuzu Dealer.
- If you make modifications to the front of the vehicle (bumper, frame, etc.), install
 equipment (snow plow, for example), make modifications to the frame, or make
 a change to the vehicle's height using unauthorized methods and/or materials,
 the SRS airbag system may fail to operate normally. Be sure to consult your
 Isuzu Dealer.
- Special treatment is required when an airbag is disposed of. When discarding a vehicle equipped with an SRS airbag system, consult your Isuzu Dealer.

A CAUTION

Have your vehicle inspected at the nearest Isuzu Dealer at once in the following cases.

- When the SRS airbag warning light does not go out or comes on during driving.
- · When the airbag is inflated.
- When the front airbag was not inflated although the vehicle received a certain level of impact at the front.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, when the side airbag and curtain airbag were not inflated although the vehicle received a certain level of impact at the side.
- When the steering pad surface or instrument panel surface is cracked or otherwise damaged or it receives an impact.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, when the surface of the airbag storage of the front seat or surface of the airbag storage of the roof side is cracked or otherwise damaged, or it receives an impact.

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



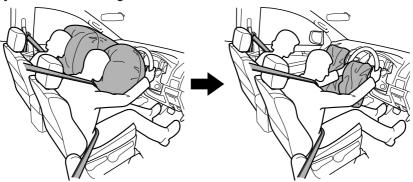
NOTE

- When the airbag is inflated, gases like white smoke are produced but this is not
 a fire. This white smoke is not detrimental to your health. However, if residue
 (gas and so on) adheres to your eyes and skin, rinse them with water as soon
 as possible. Although it is rare, a person with delicate skin may suffer from
 irritation.
- The airbag cannot be reused once it is inflated. Replace it at your Isuzu Dealer.

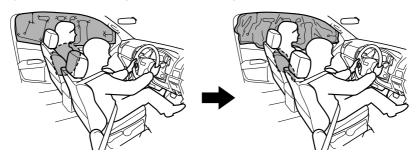
Deployment of SRS Airbag System

When the vehicle receives an impact exceeding a certain level during a frontal collision, or lateral collision (in models with side airbag and curtain airbag), the SRS airbag system is activated and airbag instantly inflates.

Deployment of front airbag

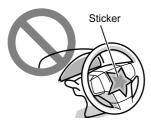


Deployment of side airbag and curtain airbag



When Does An SRS Airbag System Develop Its Full Effect?







MARNING

- · Before driving the vehicle, properly adjust your seat for proper driving position and wear the seat belt correctly. Do not sit closer than necessary to the steering wheel and do not lean over it. (Leave a space of 25 cm (10 in) or more between your chest and the center of the steering wheel.) Do not allow the passenger to put his/her hands or feet on the instrument panel and to sit with his/her face or chest close to it. When the airbags are activated, you or the passenger may suffer a burn on or serious injury to the arm or face.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, do not lean against the door and roof side. When the airbags are activated, you may suffer a burn on or serious injury to the arm or face.
- If the steering wheel is changed to a non-standard one or a sticker is attached to the steering wheel pad, there could be a danger of system malfunction or the sticker flying off in the event of system activation. Attaching stickers or placing such things as accessories or air fresheners on the top surface of the instrument panel is also dangerous. They may prevent normal operation of the airbag or could fly off in the event of system activation.

WARNING (Continued)

PRE-DRIVING OPERATIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS



WARNING (Continued)

 In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, do not attach seat covers under any circumstances. If a seat cover is attached or objects are placed in the area in which the side airbag inflates, the side airbag will not function correctly. Also, there could be a danger of objects flying off in the event of the system activation. In addition, if hard objects such as hangers or accessories are attached to the grip or coat hook, they may prevent normal operation of the curtain airbag and could fly off in the event of system activation.

When Carrying a Child in the Vehicle

MARNING

- Be sure to observe the following precautions when carrying a child in the vehicle. Otherwise the child may be fatally injured by the impact from an inflating airbag.
 - Do not drive with a child standing in front of any of the airbags, or sitting on your lap. Doing so is dangerous because the child would receive a very strong impact by an inflating airbag.
 - Do not install a rear-facing infant or child restraint system (CRS) on the passenger seat. An inflating passenger's airbag could cause the child to be fatally injured.
- · For safety, place children in the back seat.

Handling of SRS Airbag System

MARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble the airbag. Doing so may cause a malfunction or inadvertent activation.
- Do not place anything near the airbag. You may suffer an injury when an object is thrown by the inflation force of the airbag.
- Do not take a rest using the steering wheel as a pillow or with your arms or legs
 resting on it. If the vehicle is stopped with the starter switch in the "ON" position
 and an impact exceeding a certain level occurs to the front of the vehicle, the
 airbag will inflate and may injure you due to the strong impact.
- Do not drive the vehicle with something placed between you and airbag or held on your lap. If the airbag inflates, the objects may be thrown and hit your face.
 Doing so also hinders normal activation of the airbag, which is dangerous.
- Do not wet the airbag sensor with water or subject it to an impact. The system may malfunction; this is very dangerous.



CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

4

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE	4-3
INSTRUMENTS, WARNING LIGHTS AND INDICATOR LIGHTS	4-9
SWITCHES	4-63
DRIVING CONTROLS	4-79

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE

Starting the Engine	4-4
Warm-up System	4-6
Stopping the Engine	4-7



4-4 CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Starting the Engine

Make sure that the switches, including those for the windshield wiper, light control and air conditioner, are in the off position.

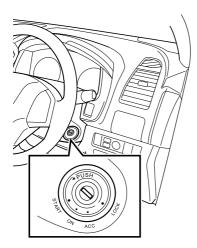
Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position to check that the warning and indicator lights turn on normally and the fuel level is proper.



ADVICE

- Using a key sticking with dirt or dust, etc. may possibly damage the starter switch. Make sure to wipe off any dirt or dust, etc. before inserting the key.
- Do not use starting aids such as ether in the air intake system. Such aids can cause immediate engine damage.
- When the engine does not start, wait for more than 1 minute and then turn the starter switch again.
- Do not rev the engine when it is still cold immediately after having been started.

Starting the Engine





WARNING

 Do not keep the starter switch in the "START" position for more than about 10 seconds. Operating the starter for too long might cause battery failure or might result in overheating and even a fire.

Starter Switch → Refer to page 4-64

\triangle

CAUTION

- In manual transmission models, firmly engage the parking brake when you sit
 in the driver's seat before starting the engine. Also, be sure to start the engine
 while pressing the clutch pedal and after making sure that the gearshift lever is
 in the "N" position.
- In automatic transmission models, firmly engage the parking brake when you sit
 in the driver's seat, check that the selector lever is in the "P" position, and firmly
 press the brake pedal before starting the engine.
- In manual transmission models, if you start the engine from outside the vehicle when the gearshift lever is in a position other than "N", the vehicle may start moving. This is very dangerous. Never start the engine from outside the vehicle.

Glow plug indicator light



- Make sure that the parking brake lever is fully pulled.
 If your vehicle is a manual transmission model, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal fully.
 In an automatic transmission model, make sure that the selector lever is in the "P" position and then depress the brake pedal fully.
- When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, the glow plug indicator light comes on and will then go out in approximately 0.5 seconds if the engine is warm. If the engine is cold, it will go out after remaining on for a maximum of approximately 7 seconds.



ADVICE

Do not depress the accelerator pedal before starting. When the accelerator
pedal is depressed before the starter switch is turned "ON", the start fuel enrich
system may not function correctly. Accordingly, starting becomes substantially
more difficult.

4-6 CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

After confirming that the glow plug indicator light has gone out, turn the starter switch to the "START" position to start the engine.



ADVICE

 At low ambient temperatures, a cold engine may emit more smoke (white smoke) than usual.



NOTE

[Preheating]

 Diesel engines are compression ignited, which makes them difficult to start when they are cold because the compression alone cannot create a temperature high enough for fuel to ignite. "Preheating" means warming the compressed air inside the combustion chambers to facilitate engine starting.
 Be sure to start the engine after the glow plug indicator light has gone out.

Warm-up System

This vehicle is equipped with a warm-up system. The warm-up system is a system that automatically increases the idling speed to warm the engine and improve heater operation when the engine is started in cold weather (outside temperature of approximately 5°C (41°F) or below). When the warm-up system is operated, the engine idle speed will increase to approximately 1,400 r/min. This does not indicate a failure. The warm-up system will automatically turn off when the outside air temperature increases (to approximately 10°C (50°F)) or when the engine is warmed. Also, the warm-up system will stop if any of the following occur during its operation.

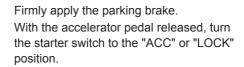
- The brake pedal is depressed
- The clutch pedal is depressed (manual transmission models)
- The gearshift lever is placed in any position other than "N" (manual transmission models)
- The selector lever is placed in any position other than "P" or "N" (automatic transmission models)



NOTE

- The engine idling speed is slowly decreased when the warm-up system is stopped by the operation of the brake pedal or clutch pedal.
- The engine idling speed is immediately decreased when the warm-up system is stopped by the operation of the gearshift lever or selector lever.

Stopping the Engine





ADVICE

 To prevent the battery from going dead, turn the starter switch to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position after stopping the engine. If you leave the vehicle for an extended period of time, place the starter switch in the "LOCK" position.

INSTRUMENTS, WARNING LIGHTS AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

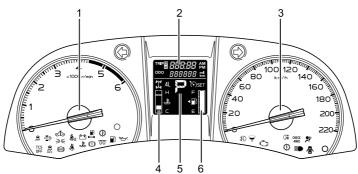
 Odometer and Trip Meter Tachometer Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge Fuel Gauge Clock Display Warning and Indicator Lights Layout Illumination of Center Display Multi-Information Display (MID) Warning and Indicator Lights 4- 	 How to Read the Instruments (Instruments Layout) 	
 Tachometer Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge Fuel Gauge Clock Display Warning and Indicator Lights Layout Illumination of Center Display Multi-Information Display (MID) Warning and Indicator Lights 4- 	Speedometer	4-11
 Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge Fuel Gauge Clock Display Warning and Indicator Lights Layout Illumination of Center Display Multi-Information Display (MID) Warning and Indicator Lights 4- 	Odometer and Trip Meter	4-11
 Fuel Gauge Clock Display Warning and Indicator Lights Layout Illumination of Center Display Multi-Information Display (MID) Warning and Indicator Lights 4- 	Tachometer	4-13
 Clock Display Warning and Indicator Lights Layout Illumination of Center Display Multi-Information Display (MID) Warning and Indicator Lights 	Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	4-14
 Warning and Indicator Lights Layout Illumination of Center Display Multi-Information Display (MID) Warning and Indicator Lights 	• Fuel Gauge	4-15
 Illumination of Center Display Multi-Information Display (MID) Warning and Indicator Lights 	Clock Display	4-16
Multi-Information Display (MID) Warning and Indicator Lights 4-	Warning and Indicator Lights Layout	4-17
Warning and Indicator Lights 4-	Illumination of Center Display	4-19
	Multi-Information Display (MID)	4-20
Warning Buzzer 4-	Warning and Indicator Lights	4-39
	Warning Buzzer	4-62



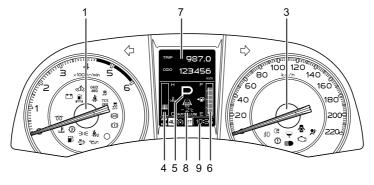
CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

How to Read the Instruments (Instruments Layout)

Model without MID



Model with MID



No.	Name	Reference page
1	Tachometer	4-13
2	Odometer, trip meter and clock*	4-11 4-16
3	Speedometer	4-11
4	Engine coolant temperature gauge	4-14
5	Shift indicator (automatic transmission model)	4-84

No.	Name	Reference page
6	Fuel gauge	4-15
7	Odometer and trip meter	4-11
	Multi-information display (MID)	4-20
8	Temperature display	4-38
9	Clock*	4-16

^{*:} Vehicles with a factory-equipped audio system do not have a clock display.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Speedometer

Model without MID



The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed in km/h or MPH.

Model with MID



Odometer and Trip Meter

Odometer

The total distance traveled by your vehicle is indicated in km if the speedometer is graduated in kilometer units. The total distance traveled by your vehicle is indicated in miles if the speedometer is graduated in both mile and kilometer units. The unit on the display cannot be switched.





Model without MID

When the starter switch is in the "ON" position, this will be indicated on the liquid crystal display.

Model with MID

If you select the odometer and trip meter display when the starter switch is in the "ON" position, this will be displayed on the MID.

Multi-Information Display (MID)

 \rightarrow Refer to page 4-20

Trip Meter

Use the trip meter to learn the distance between the specific points or the distance traveled during a specific period of time. In the case of a speedometer graduated in kilometers, the value to the right of the decimal point indicates 100-m units, whereas in the case of a speedometer graduated in both miles and kilometers, this value indicates 0.1-mile units.



-- : Reset knob-Press once

• • ▶: Reset knob-Press and hold

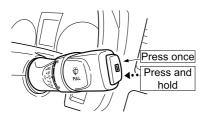


Model without MID

In addition, two separate distances can be associated with "TRIP A" and "TRIP B". Use the two trip meters by switching between "TRIP A" and "TRIP B" as appropriate.

When the starter switch is in the "ON" position, "ODO" and "TRIP A", or "TRIP B" are indicated on the LCD. Each time you press the reset knob lightly, the display toggles between "TRIP A" and "TRIP B". If you want to reset the trip meter, use the reset knob to select and display the trip meter that you want to reset. Then, press and hold the knob down for at least 1 second.





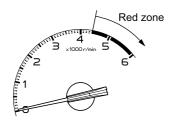
Model with MID

If you select the odometer and trip meter display when the starter switch is in the "ON" position, this will be displayed on the MID. When resetting, display odometer/trip meter and press and hold the MID switch.

Multi-Information Display (MID)

→ Refer to page 4-20

Tachometer



The tachometer indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (r/min). (Graduation "1" on the scale indicates 1,000 r/min.) The red zone indicates a range of dangerous engine speeds beyond permissible levels.

Do not drive your vehicle with the pointer of the tachometer in the red zone.

The graduation and the red zone of tachometer are various depending on the models fitted.



ADVICE

 Exercise extreme caution when shifting down on a steep downslope.
 The engine speed may easily exceed the critical speed, which can seriously damage the engine.

Appropriate Gearshifts

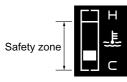
→ Refer to page 2-28

Gearshift Lever \rightarrow Refer to page 4-82

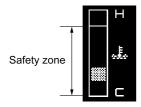
CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Model without MID



Model with MID



Engine overheat warning light



With the starter switch in the "ON" position, this gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant. "C" means cold while "H" means hot. If the engine overheats, the engine overheat warning light comes on. During operation, the gauge should normally indicate within the safety zone.

⊗ ADVICE

- If the gauge goes up above the upper limit of the safety zone and enters the "H" zone while you are driving, the engine is likely to overheat. Immediately pull safely off the road out of the way of any traffic and take necessary actions to deal with engine overheating.
- If the gauge is near the "H" zone but is still in the safety zone, this is not a malfunction. However, check the coolant level in the reserve tank. Add coolant as required.
- The engine can seize up if it is stopped immediately after driving.
 Take appropriate actions for engine overheating.

Engine Coolant \rightarrow Refer to page 6-30 When the Engine Overheats

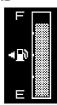
→ Refer to page 7-26

Fuel Gauge

Model without MID



Model with MID





Model with MID (Displays when the "RANGE" screen is selected)



With the starter switch in the "ON" position, this gauge indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. "F" means the tank is full while "E" means the tank is almost empty.



NOTE

- When the remaining fuel level has become low, the gauge will reach the bottom level and will flash.
- After filling up the fuel tank, it takes a while for the gauge to stabilize after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- If the fuel tank is filled while the engine is off but the starter switch is in the "ON" position, the fuel gauge takes a while to show the correct reading. If so, turn the starter switch to the "LOCK" or "ACC" position and then to the "ON" position again.

When your vehicle is running out of fuel, the low fuel warning light comes on. In models with an multi-information display (MID), "LOW FUEL" is displayed on the MID at the same time when the "RANGE" screen is selected.



ADVICE

 If your vehicle has run out of fuel, air bleeding procedure must be performed.

Low Fuel Warning Light

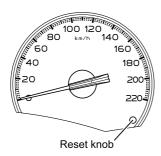
→ Refer to page 4-55

When the Fuel Runs Out

→ Refer to page 7-22

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Clock Display



Clock display



Model without MID

In vehicles without a factory-equipped audio system, a clock can be displayed on the center display. To display the clock, press the reset knob once to set the clock display.

Set the clock using the following procedure:

- 1. Press the reset knob once to display the clock on the center display.
- 2. Press and hold the reset knob to set the time setting.
- Press the reset knob once and select from a 12-hour or 24-hour display type. After selection, press and hold the reset knob to set the time setting.
- 4. Press the reset knob once to change the hour setting in increments of 1 hour. Once the hour has been set, press and hold the reset knob to set the minute setting (in increments of 10 minutes).
- 5. Press the reset knob once to change the minute setting in increments of 10 minutes. Once the minutes have been set, press and hold the reset knob to set the minute setting (in increments of 1 minute).
- Press the reset knob once to change the minute setting in increments of 1 minute. Once the minutes have been set, press and hold the reset knob to end.

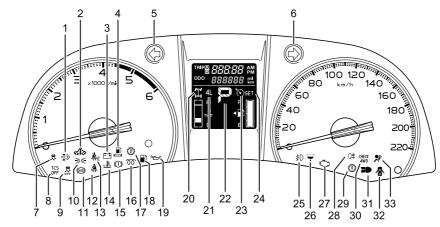
Model with MID

In vehicles without a factory-equipped audio system, the clock will be displayed on the MID. The MID switch can be operated to set the time setting.

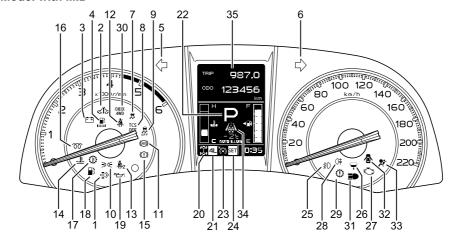
Select Mode → Refer to page 4-29

Warning and Indicator Lights Layout

Model without MID



Model with MID

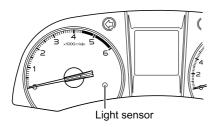


4-18 CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

No.	Nama	Reference
NO.	Name	page
1	DPD operator regeneration indicator light	4-61
2	SVS indicator light	4-52
3	Generator warning light	4-50
4	Fuel filter warning light	4-53
5	Turn signal indicator light – left	4-57
6	Turn signal indicator light – right	4-57
7	ESC warning light	4-45
8	TCS OFF indicator light	4-58
9	ESC OFF indicator light	4-59
10	Light position indicator light	4-57
11	ABS warning light	4-44
12	Seat belt warning light (driver seat)	4-39
13	Seat belt warning light (front passenger seat)	4-40
14	Engine overheat warning light	4-46
15	Brake system/parking brake warning light	4-42
16	Glow plug indicator light	4-58
17	Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light	4-54
18	Low fuel warning light	4-55

No.	Name	Reference page
19	Engine oil pressure warning light	4-46
20	4WD indicator light	4-61
21	4WD low indicator light	4-61
22	Shift indicator (automatic transmission model)	4-84
23	Cruise control main indicator light	4-60
24	Cruise control set indicator light	4-60
25	Front fog light indicator light	4-57
26	Water separator warning light	4-52
27	Malfunction indicator light (MIL)	4-51
28	Rear fog light indicator light	4-58
29	Check trans warning light	4-53
30	Check 4WD warning light	4-54
31	High beam indicator light	4-57
32	Door open warning light	4-56
33	SRS airbag warning light	4-41
34	Icy road warning light	4-55
35	Multi-information display (MID)	4-20

Illumination of Center Display



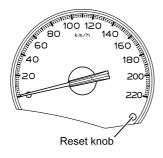
Model without MID

When the starter switch is in the "ON" position, the illumination brightness is automatically adjusted in two levels (daytime and nighttime) according to the brightness inside the vehicle. The speedometer and tachometer illumination is linked to headlight illumination, however the illumination brightness of the center display is not linked to the headlights. Perform the following operation to turn off the automatic brightness adjustment.



CAUTION

- Do not place any objects in front of the sensor. Doing so will reduce the sensitivity of the sensor, and will not operate properly.
- When the headlights are turned on during daytime driving with automatic brightness adjustment turned off, the fuel gauge and engine coolant temperature gauge may be difficult to see.



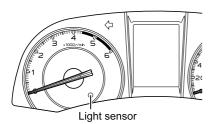
- 1. Hold in the reset knob and turn the starter switch to the "ON" position.
- Turn the headlights on and off 3 times within 10 seconds. When the setting is turned off, a beep will sound 2 times

To turn on the automatic brightness adjustment, perform steps 1-2 again.



- The center display automatic brightness adjustment will not be turned off in the following situation:
 - The headlights are not turned on and off 3 times

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS



Model with MID

When the starter switch is in the "ON" position, the illumination brightness is automatically adjusted according to the brightness inside the vehicle. The initial setting is "AUTO". By changing to "MANUAL", the illumination brightness of both the meter and MID can be individually set.

Illumination Control

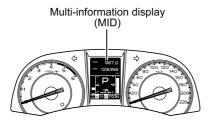
→ Refer to page 4-23



CAUTION

 Do not place any objects in front of the sensor. Doing so will reduce the sensitivity of the sensor, and will not operate properly.

Multi-Information Display (MID)

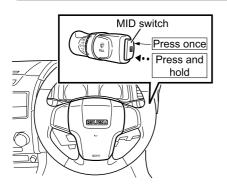


The MID in the instrument panel can display the following information.

- · Warning and indicator lights
- Operation-related information
- · Maintenance distance
- Diesel particulate defuser (DPD) state
- Fuel economy
- Range (possible driving range)
- Driving distance and average vehicle speed
- · Elapse time

Use the MID switch to select the desired screen or function.

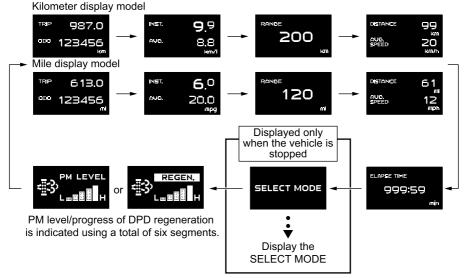
Main Routine



Basic operation and the screens of the MID display are shown.

Use the MID switch to select the desired screen or function.

→ : MID switch-press once• • ➤ : MID switch-press and hold



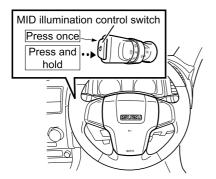
CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Warning and Indicator Lights Display

Display indication	Description	Reference page
RANGE LOW FUEL	Fuel level is too low. (Displays when the "RANGE" screen is selected)	4-55
RELEASE PARK BRAKE	When the vehicle is driven while the parking brake has not been released.	4-43
-D 0- LIGHT OFF	When the light control switch has been set to "=00=" or "=0", the starter switch is placed in the "LOCK" position and the driver's door is opened.	4-56
KEY REMAIN	When the starter switch is in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, the driver's door is opened and the key has not been removed.	4-56

Illumination Control

Select and set the illumination control to adjust the brightness of the MID. Unlike the MID operation, the operation is performed using the MID illumination control switch. Display "ILLUMI MODE" by pressing and holing the MID illumination control switch and perform an adjustment with "AUTO" or "MANUAL".



CAUTION

 Adjusting the brightness of the MID while driving is dangerous and should be done only while the vehicle is stationary. Park your vehicle in a safe place where stopping or parking is permitted and is well clear of traffic before adjusting the MID.



- The "ILLUMI MODE" screen can be switched from all the screens. To switch to the "ILLUMI MODE" screen, press and hold the MID illumination control switch.
- When no operation is performed on the "ILLUMI MODE" screen for approximately 10 seconds, it will return to the prior screen.

4-24 CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

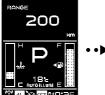
Auto Mode

When the starter switch is in the "ON" position, the illumination brightness is automatically adjusted according to the brightness inside the vehicle.



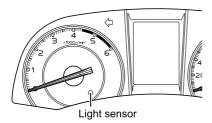
NOTE

- In the "HIGH" setting, the illumination brightness changes with high sensitivity. The sensitivity of "NORMAL" is between "HIGH" and "LOW". "LOW" changes with low sensitivity.
- The factory default setting is "NORMAL".
- -> : MID illumination control switch-press once
- • > : MID illumination control switch-press and hold











 Do not place any objects in front of the sensor. Doing so will reduce the sensitivity of the sensor, and will not operate properly.

Manual Mode

The brightness can be adjusted when the starter switch is in the "ON" position. Adjust the brightness as desired by pressing the MID illumination control switch. The meter and MID can be individually set to six brightness levels.

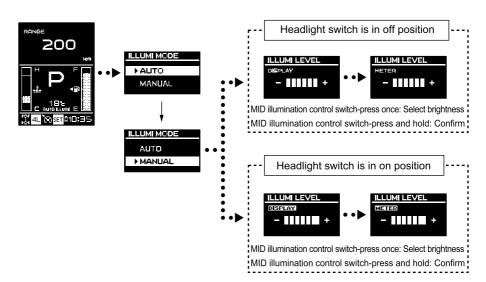


CAUTION

 When the headlights are turned on during daytime driving with the manual mode setting, the MID may be dark and difficult to see.



- When auto mode is used after the brightness has been adjusted in manual mode, the illumination will be automatically adjusted based on the brightest state with the headlight switch in the off position setting for the manual mode and the darkest state with the headlight switch in the on position setting.
- · Vehicles shipped from the factory are set to auto mode.
- : MID illumination control switch-press once
- • Land the illumination control switch-press and hold



CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Operation-Related Information Display

The operating conditions and operating control information of fuel economy, range (possible driving range), driving distance and average vehicle speed and elapse time are displayed.



NOTE

 The Operation-Related Information Display may differ from the actual values due to the conditions of roads, wind, cargo weight, the rear body, etc. Use the indications only as guidelines.

Fuel Economy

The system calculates and stores the distance traveled and fuel consumption while driving to encourage the operator to drive the vehicle economically.

It displays fuel consumption for a certain section according to the distance displayed on the trip meter.

Display types can be changed with "SELECT MODE".

CUSTOMIZE (Fuel Economy Display

Type Setting) → Refer to page 4-34

Message	Display indication	Display condition	
Fuel economy (numerical display)	INST. 9 .9 AUG. 8.8 Ism/I	Instantaneous fuel economy and average fuel economy are indicated in figures.	
Fuel economy (graphical display)	INST.	Instantaneous fuel economy is indicated in the graph and average fuel economy is indicated in figures.	
Fuel economy (average fuel economy)	AVG. 9 ,9 km/l	Average fuel economy is indicated in figures.	



NOTE

• In the "SELECT MODE", the unit of the fuel economy display can be changed to the desired unit from "km/l", "I/100km" or "mpg".

UNITS (Fuel Economy Unit Setting)

→ Refer to page 4-30

Kilometer display model



Mile display model





Range (Possible Driving Range)

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the remaining fuel quantity.

Displays a low fuel warning light when the quantity of fuel remaining becomes low.

Low Fuel Warning Light

→ Refer to page 4-55



NOTE

- It may not always be possible to actually drive the displayed distance because it is calculated based on the past fuel economy (average fuel economy).
- Since the fuel in the fuel tank moves when going uphill and downhill, the accuracy of the displayed distance may decrease greatly.
- The display may not be updated when only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank.

Kilometer display model



Mile display model



Driving Distance and Average Vehicle Speed

Driving distance and average vehicle speed from when the values are last reset until when they are next reset are displayed.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS



Elapse Time

Elapse time from when the values are last reset until when they are next reset is displayed.



NOTE

The displayed values of fuel economy (average fuel economy), driving distance
and average vehicle speed, and elapse time can be reset on each screen
by pressing and holding the MID switch. In the default setting, fuel economy
(average fuel economy), driving distance and average vehicle speed, and
elapse time are reset simultaneously. The reset method can be changed in the
"SELECT MODE" to reset each screen separately.

CUSTOMIZE (Reset Mode)

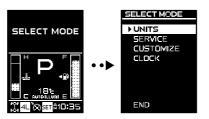
→ Refer to page 4-35

Select Mode

Press the MID switch to display the "SELECT MODE" screen. With "SELECT MODE", the unit, maintenance distance, customize setting, clock (only for vehicles without a factory-equipped audio system), etc. are displayed, and their settings can be changed.

Main Routine → Refer to page 4-21

→ : MID switch-press once• • ➤ : MID switch-press and hold



- Press the MID switch once, select "END" and press and hold the switch to return to the "SELECT MODE" entry screen. If no operation is performed on the screen for approximately 60 seconds or the vehicle starts to be driven, the screen automatically will return to the "SELECT MODE" entry screen.
- The "SELECT MODE" can be operated only while the vehicle is stationary. When operating the "SELECT MODE", park your vehicle in a safe place where stopping or parking is permitted and is well clear of traffic.

Message	Purpose	Reference page
UNITS	Set a fuel economy unit and ambient temperature unit.	4-30
SERVICE	Set the distance for a reminder for "ENGINE OIL", "AIR CLEANER ELEMENT" and "MAINTENANCE".	4-31 4-32 4-33
CUSTOMIZE	Set the buzzer sound on/off, fuel economy display type, message display (depending on the starter switch position), or fuel economy display resetting method.	4-34 4-35
CLOCK*	Change the clock display type and time setting.	4-36
END	Return to the "SELECT MODE" entry screen.	4-37

^{*:} Vehicles with a factory-equipped audio system do not have a clock display.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

UNITS (Fuel Economy Unit Setting)

With "FUEL CONS.", a unit of the fuel economy display can be changed to the desired unit among "km/l", "l/100km" or "mpg". Press the MID switch once to select, and press and hold the MID switch to set.

→ : MID switch-press once• • ➤ : MID switch-press and hold



UNITS (Ambient Temperature Unit Setting)

With "OUTSIDE TEMP.", a unit of the ambient temperature display can be changed to either "°C" or "°F" temperature. Press the MID switch once to select, and press and hold the MID switch to set.

→ : MID switch-press once• • ➤ : MID switch-press and hold

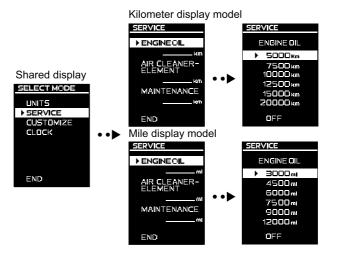


SERVICE (Engine Oil Reminder Distance Setting)

With "ENGINE OIL", the reminder setting for the replacement time of the engine oil can be set from 5,000 km (3,000 miles) to 20,000 km (12,000 miles). Increments of 2,500 km (1,500 miles) can be set between 5,000 km (3,000 miles) and 15,000 km (9,000 miles). Press the MID switch once to select, and press and hold the MID switch to set.

→ : MID switch-press once

• • ▶ : MID switch-press and hold





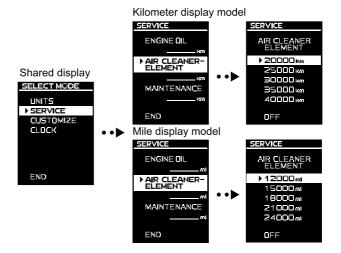
- If you select "OFF" in the engine oil reminder distance setting screen, no reminder messages will be displayed.
- Once 1,000 km (600 miles) remain until the engine oil reminder distance, when
 the starter switch is placed in the "ON" position, the engine oil reminder screen
 will be displayed for approximately 3 seconds. Every 200 km (100 miles) after
 that, the engine oil reminder screen will be displayed again when the starter
 switch is placed in the "ON" position.
- If you press the MID switch once while the engine oil reminder screen is displayed, the "SERVICE REMINDER OFF" screen will be displayed. After that, reminder messages will no longer be displayed but the remaining engine oil reminder distance will still be calculated without being cleared.
- By selecting the engine oil reminder distance again, the current engine oil reminder distance is cleared and the calculation begins again.

4-32 CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

SERVICE (Air Cleaner Element Reminder Distance Setting)

With "AIR CLEANER ELEMENT", the reminder setting for the replacement time of the air cleaner element can be set by 5,000 km (3,000 miles) from 20,000 km (12,000 miles) to 40,000 km (24,000 miles). Press the MID switch once to select, and press and hold the MID switch to set.

→ : MID switch-press once• • ➤ : MID switch-press and hold

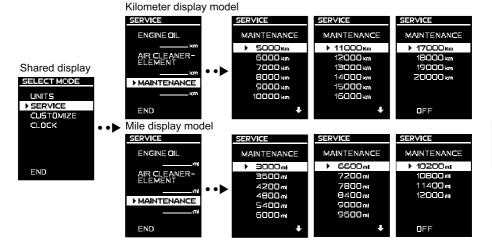


- If you select "OFF" in the air cleaner element reminder distance setting screen, no reminder messages will be displayed.
- Once 1,000 km (600 miles) remain until the air cleaner element reminder distance, when the starter switch is placed in the "ON" position, the air cleaner element reminder screen will be displayed for approximately 3 seconds. Every 200 km (100 miles) after that, the air cleaner element reminder screen will be displayed again when the starter switch is placed in the "ON" position.
- If you press the MID switch once while the air cleaner element reminder screen
 is displayed, the "SERVICE REMINDER OFF" screen will be displayed. After
 that, reminder messages will no longer be displayed but the remaining air
 cleaner element reminder distance will still be calculated without being cleared.
- By selecting the air cleaner element reminder distance again, the current air cleaner element reminder distance is cleared and the calculation begins again.

SERVICE (Maintenance Reminder Distance Setting)

With "MAINTENANCE", the reminder setting for the maintenance reminder distance can be set by 1,000 km (600 miles) from 5,000 km (3,000 miles) to 20,000 km (12,000 miles). Press the MID switch once to select, and press and hold the MID switch to set. "
" is displayed in the reminder distance setting screen of "MAINTENANCE" to indicate the next page. When "
" appears, press the MID switch once to display the next page.

→ : MID switch-press once• • ➤ : MID switch-press and hold



- When you select "OFF" in the maintenance reminder distance setting screen, no reminder messages will be displayed.
- Once 1,000 km (600 miles) remain until the maintenance reminder distance, when the starter switch is placed in the "ON" position, the maintenance reminder screen will be displayed for approximately 3 seconds. Every 200 km (100 miles) after that, the maintenance reminder screen will be displayed again when the starter switch is placed in the "ON" position.
- If you press the MID switch once while the maintenance reminder screen is displayed, the "SERVICE REMINDER OFF" screen will be displayed. After that, reminder messages will no longer be displayed but the maintenance reminder distance will still be calculated without being cleared.
- By selecting the maintenance reminder distance again, the current maintenance reminder distance is cleared and the calculation begins again.

4-34 CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

CUSTOMIZE (Buzzer Sound ON/OFF Setting)

If you select "ON" in "BUZZER", a sound will be audible when the MID switch is operated. Select "OFF" to turn the sound off.

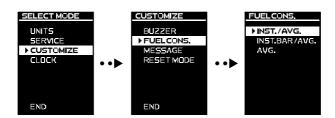
→ : MID switch-press once• • ➤ : MID switch-press and hold



CUSTOMIZE (Fuel Economy Display Type Setting)

With "FUEL CONS.", the display type of the fuel economy display can be changed to the desired type among fuel economy (numerical display), fuel economy (graphical display) or fuel economy (average fuel economy).

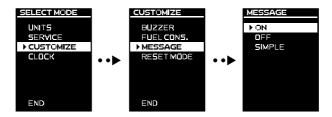
→ : MID switch-press once• • ➤ : MID switch-press and hold



CUSTOMIZE (Message Display Setting)

With "MESSAGE", the preferred display setting for when the starter switch is placed in the "ON", "START" or "LOCK" position can be selected.

: MID switch-press once • • : MID switch-press and hold



Message display	Display		
Message display type	Pointer sweep	Start up message	End message
ON	On	On	On
OFF	On	Off	Off
SIMPLE	Off	Off	Off

CUSTOMIZE (Reset Mode)

With "RESET MODE", the resetting method can be changed for "fuel economy (average fuel economy)", "driving distance and average vehicle speed", and "elapse time". Select "LINK" and then in one of the fuel economy (average fuel economy), driving distance and average vehicle speed, and elapse time screens, press and hold the MID switch. The fuel economy (average fuel economy), driving distance and average vehicle speed, and elapse time will all be reset at simultaneously. To reset a value only for the screen that is currently displayed, select "SEPARATE" and then in one of the fuel economy (average fuel economy), driving distance and average vehicle speed, and elapse time screens, press and hold the MID switch.

→ : MID switch-press once• ▶ : MID switch-press and hold



CLOCK (Time Setting)

Time Setting:

- Select "CLOCK" on the "SELECT MODE" screen and press and hold the MID switch.
- 2. Press the MID switch once, select the display type from "12H" or "24H", and press and hold the MID switch to set. At this time, "SET:00" is selected and you can press the MID switch once to set the time setting screen.

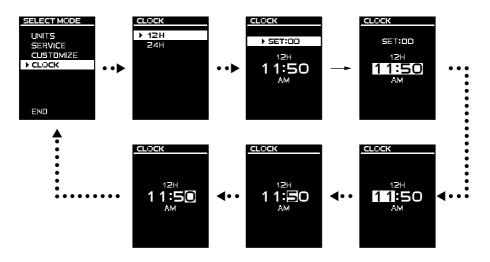


NOTE

- When "SET:00" is selected and the MID switch is pressed and held, the minute is automatically set to "00". If the displayed minute is 29 or less, the digit is rounded down, and if the minute is 30 or more, the digit is rounded up by 1 hour.
- 3. When the MID switch is pressed and held, the hour setting will be available.
- 4. Press the MID switch once to change the hour setting. Once the hour has been set, press and hold the MID switch and the minute setting (in increments of 10 minutes) will then be available.
- 5. Press the MID switch once to change the minute setting in increments of 10 minutes. Once the minutes have been set, press and hold the MID switch and the minute setting (in increments of 1 minute) will then be available.
- 6. Press the MID switch once to change the minute setting in increments of 1 minute. After the minutes have been set, press and hold the MID switch, the setting is then completed and the MID will return to the "SELECT MODE" screen.

→ : MID switch-press once

• • ▶ : MID switch-press and hold



END

Select "END" and press and hold the MID switch to return to the "SELECT MODE" entry screen.

Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD) State

This function displays the amount of particulate matter (PM) accumulated in the DPD. During DPD regeneration, the progress of the regeneration is displayed.

Message	Display indication	Display condition	
DPD PM level	PM LEVEL	The current level of PM accumulation in DPD is displayed.	
Progress of DPD regeneration	REGEN.	The progress of DPD regeneration is displayed until it is completed.	

DPD PM Level

The multi-information display (MID) shows the amount of PM accumulated in the DPD, using a total of six segments.

As the amount of PM in the DPD increases, the number of the displayed segments increases one by one from the left side ("L").

Status	Display	Status	Display
PM level 0	PM LEVEL	PM level 3	PM LEVEL
PM level 1	FM LEVEL	PM level 4	PM LEVEL
PM level 2	× ≣ ⇔PM LEVEL	PM level 5	PM LEVEL

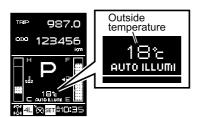
CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Progress of DPD Regeneration

During DPD regeneration, the MID indicates the progress using a total of six segments. As regeneration progresses, the number of displayed segments decreases one by one from the right side ("H").

Status	Display	Status	Display
Regeneration progressed to 1st step	REGEN.	Regeneration progressed to 4th step	REGEN.
Regeneration progressed to 2nd step	REGEN.	Regeneration progressed to 5th step	REGEN.
Regeneration progressed to 3rd step	EREGEN. Lambor H	Regeneration complete	REGEN.

Temperature Display



Outside temperatures between -40°C (-40 $^{\circ}$ F) and 50°C (122°F) are displayed on the MID.

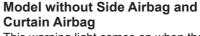


 The displayed temperature may be different from the actual temperature depending on the surrounding conditions, the driving conditions, etc.

Warning and Indicator Lights

Seat Belt Warning Light (Driver Seat)





This warning light comes on when the driver is not wearing the seat belt while the starter switch is in the "ON" position.



NOTE

 The warning light will go out as soon as the driver has buckled the seat belt



Model with Side Airbag and Curtain Airbag

This warning light flashes when the driver is not wearing the seat belt while the starter switch is in the "ON" position.

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle continues to be driven while the warning light is flashing.



NOTE

 The warning light will go out and the buzzer will stop sounding as soon as the driver has buckled the seat belt.

Seat Belt Warning Light (Front Passenger Seat)



Model with Side Airbag and Curtain Airbag

This warning light flashes when a passenger is in the front passenger seat without wearing the seat belt while the starter switch is in the "ON" position.

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle continues to be driven while the warning light is flashing.



- The warning light will go out and the buzzer will stop sounding as soon as the passenger has buckled the seat belt.
- Operation of the front passenger seat sensor:
 - The seat belt warning may be activated even when there are no passengers due to the sensor detecting weight if objects are placed on the passenger seat.
 - The seat belt warning may not be activated when the sensor does not detect passengers due to a cushion, etc., being placed on the seat.

SRS Airbag Warning Light



The SRS airbag warning light should flash seven times when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out.

If the SRS airbag warning light comes on, seat belt with pretensioner and airbag may not function properly in the event of a collision.



 If you encounter any of the following conditions, errors have occurred. Have your vehicle inspected/serviced at your Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.

[System error]

- If the SRS airbag warning light does not flash seven times when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- If the SRS airbag warning light does not go out.
- If the SRS airbag warning light comes on while driving the vehicle.



- It is normal for the warning light to come on, flash seven times, and then go out
 when the starter switch is placed in the "ON" position. The SRS airbag warning
 light may come on again immediately after the engine is started, but it is normal
 if it goes out after flashing seven times.
- The SRS airbag warning light may come on suddenly if the starter switch is
 placed in the "ACC" position or electrical equipment is operated, but this is not
 abnormal.

Brake System/Parking Brake Warning Light



Brake System Warning Light

This warning light will come on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position with the parking brake released, and if there is no malfunction will then go out after the engine is started.

The brake system warning light comes on while the engine is running (after startup) in the following situations:

- Drop in the level of brake fluid (due to brake wear or fluid leakage, etc.)
- Abnormality in the EBD (the ABS warning light will also come on.)

ABS Warning Light

→ Refer to page 4-44



- If this warning light comes on while the engine is running, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place well clear of traffic and promptly contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer for inspection.
- Immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Isuzu Dealer
 when the ABS warning light and brake system warning light both remain on.
 The indications mean that the ABS will fail and vehicle will become extremely
 unstable during braking. Also the rear brakes may lock up more easily than
 usual in emergency braking. This could result in an accident.



Parking Brake Warning Light

This warning light comes on when the parking brake lever is pulled up.

A CAUTION

- The illumination of the warning light does not necessarily ensure firm application of the parking brake.
 The parking brake lever must be sufficiently pulled up and locked.
- Be careful not to drive the vehicle with the parking brake lever still pulled up.

Parking Brake Release Warning Light



Model with MID

If the vehicle is driven without releasing the parking brake and the speed reaches approximately 5 km/h (3.1 MPH), this message appears on the display while a buzzer sounds. When the parking brake release warning light is indicated, release the parking brake.

Warning Buzzer → Refer to page 4-62

ABS Warning Light



This warning light should come on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out after approximately 3 seconds.

This warning light comes on whenever there is a problem in the anti-lock brake system (ABS). In this case, the ABS stops working but the brakes still function as ordinary service brakes.

CAUTION

- If this warning light comes on while driving, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place well clear of traffic and take the following actions.
 - Stop the engine.
 - Restart the engine. Check if the ABS warning light comes on and then goes out. If it does, there is no problem. The ABS operates normally.
 - Move the vehicle slowly forward. Gradually increase the speed to 15 km/h (9 MPH). If the light goes off, the ABS is normal.
- Immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Isuzu Dealer
 when the ABS warning light and brake system warning light both remain on.
 The indications mean that the ABS will fail and vehicle will become extremely
 unstable during braking. Also the rear brakes may lock up more easily than
 usual in emergency braking. This could result in an accident.
- If the warning light does not go out, or comes on repeatedly, have the vehicle inspected/serviced at the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.
- Even if a problem has occurred in the ABS, the brakes will still work as normal brakes. In this case, the ABS has no influence on the operation of the brake system.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

→ Refer to page 4-100

ESC Warning Light



When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, the ESC warning light turns on before going out after approximately 3 seconds. This warning light comes on whenever there is a problem in the electronic stability control (ESC). When the ESC is operating, the ESC warning light flashes.

The ESC warning light will also flash when only the traction control system (TCS) function is operating inside the ESC system.

When the ESC warning light does any of the following, the ESC may be faulty. Please contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

- When the ESC warning light remains on while driving.
- The ESC warning light does not turn on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.



NOTE

- When the ESC warning light is on, the TCS/ESC will not operate, but this has no effect on normal driving.
- The ESC warning light may turn on when the battery cables are disconnected or the battery voltage is low. The ESC function turns off while the ESC warning light is on, but the ESC warning light will turn off by driving the vehicle normally for a while, then the ESC function will resume. If the ESC warning light remains on even after driving for a while, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

→ Refer to page 4-104

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light



This warning light should come on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

While the engine is running, this warning light comes on if the engine oil pressure, which lubricates the engine components, is abnormal.

ADVICE

- If this warning light comes on while the engine is running, immediately pull off to a safe place well clear of traffic. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level.
- The lubrication system may be faulty. Promptly have your vehicle inspected at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Engine Oil → Refer to page 6-20

Engine Overheat Warning Light



This warning light should come on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out after approximately 3 seconds.

This warning light comes on when the engine overheats. When the engine overheats, the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates the "H" zone, and the engine overheat warning light comes on. Immediately pull off the road in a safe place, check the vehicle and take necessary actions.

WARNING

 When the engine coolant is still hot, do not remove the radiator cap. Hot vapor will come out and you may be scalded. Add engine coolant only when the engine coolant temperature has dropped.

Adding the Engine Coolant

→ Refer to page 6-34



CAUTION

 If you continue to drive the vehicle with the engine overheat warning light on steady, the engine may seize up.



ADVICE

 Do not shut down an overheating engine immediately. Otherwise, the engine may seize up. Take appropriate actions for engine overheating.

When the Engine Overheats

→ Refer to page 7-26

Engine Oil Indicator Light

Kilometer display model

ENGINE OIL DISTANCE TO CHANGE 1000km

Mile display model



Model with MID

This message appears when the maintenance time is set on the "SERVICE" screen of "SELECT MODE". This message appears on the display when the engine oil maintenance reminder distance will soon be reached. The distance shown is the remaining distance to the next engine oil change time or the distance the vehicle traveled after the due time.

When the maintenance reminder distance will soon be reached, this message appears after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position and remains on for approximately 3 seconds.

When the engine oil indicator light is indicated on the multi information display, have the vehicle inspected/serviced at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Multi-Information Display (MID)

→ Refer to page 4-20

Engine Oil \rightarrow Refer to page 6-20

Air Cleaner Element Indicator Light

Kilometer display model



Mile display model



Model with MID

This message appears when the maintenance time is set on the "SERVICE" screen of "SELECT MODE". This message appears on the display when the air cleaner element maintenance reminder distance will soon be reached. The distance shown is the remaining distance to the next air cleaner element change time or the distance the vehicle traveled after the due time

When the maintenance reminder distance will soon be reached, this message appears after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position and remains on for approximately 3 seconds.

When the air cleaner element indicator light is indicated on the multi information display, have the vehicle inspected/serviced at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Multi-Information Display (MID)

→ Refer to page 4-20

Air Cleaner → Refer to page 6-38

Distance to Maintenance Indicator Light

Kilometer display model

SERVICE DISTANCE TO MAINTENANCE 1000km

Mile display model



Model with MID

This message appears when the maintenance time is set on the "SERVICE" screen of "SELECT MODE". This message appears on the display when the maintenance reminder distance set by the user will soon be reached. The distance shown is the remaining distance to the next maintenance time or the distance the vehicle traveled after the due time. When the maintenance reminder distance will soon be reached, this message appears after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position and remains on for approximately 3 seconds. When the maintenance indicator light is indicated on the multi-information display.

When the maintenance indicator light is indicated on the multi information display, have the vehicle inspected/serviced at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Multi-Information Display (MID)

→ Refer to page 4-20



CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Generator Warning Light



This warning light should come on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

This warning light comes on when, while the engine is running, there is a problem with the charging system (such as a loose or broken fan belt).



ADVICE

 If this warning light comes on while the engine is running, immediately pull off to a safe place well clear of traffic and promptly contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer for inspection.

Fan Belt and Air Conditioning Compressor Belt

→ Refer to page 6-36

Handling the Battery

→ Refer to page 6-87

When the Battery Goes Flat

 \rightarrow Refer to page 7-20

Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)



This indicator light should come on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

If this indicator light comes on while the engine is running, this alerts you to a problem with the engine electronic control system or the diesel particulate defuser (DPD). In addition, if this light does not turn on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, an abnormality, etc. in the engine electronic control system is possible. Please contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

A CAUTION

If this indicator light comes on and the engine stops, it is possible that the
engine has entered protection mode. Turn the starter switch to the "LOCK"
position once, wait at least 10 seconds and then proceed to start the engine.
 Even if the vehicle is drivable, see the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible
for service of the system.



ADVICE

- If this indicator light comes on while the engine is running, avoid driving at high speeds and promptly have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.
- If this indicator light comes on either intermittently or continuously while driving, service is required. Even if the vehicle is drivable, and does not require towing, see your Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible for service of the system. Continued driving without having the system serviced could cause damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and drivability.

Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD)

→ Refer to page 4-120

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Service Vehicle Soon (SVS) Indicator Light



This indicator light should come on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

If the indicator light comes on during operation, immediately contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer for inspection.

Water Separator Warning Light



This warning light should come on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out after approximately 3 seconds.

This warning light comes on when water in the water separator needs draining. Drain water following the instructions in the

Drain water following the instructions in th "Draining Water from the Fuel Filter" and make sure the warning light goes out.

A CAUTION

 If this warning light comes on while the engine is running, immediately drain water from the fuel filter. If you still continue driving with the warning light on, the fuel injection system may fail.

Draining Water from the Fuel Filter

 \rightarrow Refer to page 6-42

Bleeding the Fuel System

→ Refer to page 7-23

Fuel Filter Warning Light



The fuel filter warning light comes on when the fuel filter element clogged with dust and others.

If this warning light comes on, have the vehicle inspected/serviced at your Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.

Check Trans Warning Light



Automatic Transmission Model

This warning light should remain on for approximately 3 seconds after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out.

If this light flashes after the engine has started, there is something wrong with the transmission electronic control system.



ADVICE

- If this warning light flashes, have the automatic transmission inspected at the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.
- While the warning light is flashing, the computer may put the transmission into emergency mode.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Automatic Transmission Fluid Temperature Warning Light



This warning light should remain on for approximately 3 seconds after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and then should go out.

This warning light comes on when the temperature of the automatic transmission becomes high while driving.



ADVICE

- If this warning light comes on while driving, the automatic transmission fluid is abnormally hot. Immediately pull safely off the road out of the way of any traffic, place the selector lever in the "P" position and run the engine at idling speed. Do not start driving again until the warning light goes out.
- If this warning light does not go off, have the automatic transmission lubricating system inspected at the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.

Check 4WD Warning Light



The check 4WD warning light comes on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position and should then go out after approximately 3 seconds. When this warning light stays on, the 4WD system has a malfunction. Please contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



CAUTION

 If the warning light does not go out, or comes on repeatedly, have the inspected/serviced at the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.

Icy Road Warning Light



Model with MID

This illuminates when the outside temperature is low and the road surface may be frozen. Since this is based on the outside temperature detected by the outside air temperature sensor and not the actual road surface temperature, it does not accurately display frozen road surface conditions.



CAUTION

• When the outside temperature is low, the road surface may be frozen even if the icy road warning light does not illuminate. Concentrate on driving safely, paying attention to the condition of the road surface.

Low Fuel Warning Light



Model with MID (Displays when the "RANGE" screen is selected)



This warning light comes on when the fuel level in the tank becomes low while the engine is running. In models with an MID, "LOW FUEL" is displayed on the multiinformation display (MID) at the same time when the "RANGE" screen is selected.



ADVICE

- If the low fuel warning light comes on, add fuel at the earliest possible time.
- · If the vehicle runs out of fuel. air bleeding procedure must be performed.

Fuel Gauge → Refer to page 4-15 When the Fuel Runs Out

→ Refer to page 7-22

Door Open Warning Light



The door open warning light comes on if any door is not fully closed when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.

Light Control OFF Warning Light



Model with MID

This message appears on the display when the light control switch is set to "-00-" or "-00-", the starter switch is placed in the "LOCK" position and the driver's door is opened. A warning buzzer sounds at the same time. When the light control switch is placed in the "OFF" position, the warning light will go out and the warning buzzer will stop sounding.

Warning Buzzer \rightarrow Refer to page 4-62

Key Remain Warning Light



Model with MID

This message appears on the display when the starter switch is placed in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position and the driver's door is opened when the key has not been removed. A warning buzzer will sound at the same time. When the key is removed, the warning light will go out and the warning buzzer will stop sounding.

Warning Buzzer → Refer to page 4-62

Turn Signal Indicator Light





Either of these indicator lights flashes when the turn signal switch is operated with the starter switch in the "ON" position.

Both indicator lights flash when the hazard warning flasher switch is operated irrespective of the position of the starter switch.

Turn Signal Switch

→ Refer to page 4-67



ADVICE

• These indicator lights will not flash if the bulbs are blown, or may flash abnormally if bulbs of incorrect wattage are used.

Light Position Indicator Light



This indicator light comes on when the light switch is in the "ON" position.

High Beam Indicator Light



This indicator light comes on when high beam is selected or the headlights are cycled between high and low beams (passing signal).

Light Control Switch

→ Refer to page 4-66

Front Fog Light Indicator Light



This indicator light stays on while the front fog lights are on.

Front Fog Light Switch

→ Refer to page 4-69

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Rear Fog Light Indicator Light



This indicator light stays on while the rear fog light is on.

Rear Fog Light Switch

→ Refer to page 4-69

Glow Plug Indicator Light



This indicator light comes on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position and goes out when preheating is completed.

Starting the Engine

→ Refer to page 4-4

TCS OFF Indicator Light



When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, the TCS OFF indicator light turns on before going out after approximately 3 seconds. The TCS OFF function is normal if the indicator light goes out. When you wish to cancel the TCS OFF after the engine is started, press the ESC OFF switch for approximately 1 second, and the TCS OFF indicator light in the meter will turn on.

When the TCS OFF indicator light does any of the following, the TCS OFF function may be faulty. Please contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

- When the TCS OFF indicator light comes on during driving (when the ESC OFF switch is not operated).
- The TCS OFF indicator light does not turn on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.



NOTE

In models with 4WD, the ESC OFF indicator light will turn on and the ESC
 (excluding the TCS brake control) will not activate when the 4WD switch is set
 to 4L (4WD low). If you wish to turn the TCS brake control off as well, press this
 ESC OFF switch for approximately 5 seconds to cancel the TCS brake control
 and cause the TCS OFF indicator light in the meter to turn on.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

→ Refer to page 4-104

Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Model

→ Refer to page 4-112

ESC OFF Indicator Light



When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, the ESC OFF indicator light turns on before going out after approximately 3 seconds. The ESC OFF function is normal if the indicator light goes out.

When you wish to cancel the ESC after the engine is started, press the ESC OFF switch for approximately 5 seconds to cancel the ESC and cause the ESC OFF indicator light in the meter to turn on. When the ESC OFF indicator light does any of the following, the ESC function may be faulty. Please contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

- When the ESC OFF indicator light comes on during driving (when the ESC OFF switch is not operated).
- The ESC OFF indicator light does not turn on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS



NOTE

 In models with 4WD, the ESC OFF indicator light will turn on and the ESC (excluding the TCS brake control) will not activate when the 4WD switch is set to 4L (4WD low).

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

→ Refer to page 4-104

Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Model

→ Refer to page 4-112

Cruise Control Main Indicator Light



This indicator light comes on when the cruise control main switch is pressed.

Cruise control main switch

→ Refer to page 4-96

Cruise Control Set Indicator Light



This indicator light comes on when the vehicle enters the cruise control mode after the cruise control set switch is operated to set the vehicle speed.

Cruise control set switch

→ Refer to page 4-96

4WD Indicator Light



The 4WD indicator light comes on when the 4WD switch is used to select "4H (4WD high)" or "4L (4WD low)".

Whenever you use the 4WD switch, check that the 4WD indicator light has come on or gone out as expected before driving.

4WD Switch → Refer to page 4-113

4WD Low Indicator Light



The 4WD low indicator light comes on when the 4WD switch is used to select "4L (4WD low)".

Whenever you use the 4WD switch, check that the 4WD low indicator light has come on or gone out as expected before driving.

4WD Switch → Refer to page 4-113

DPD Operator Regeneration Indicator Light



This indicator light comes on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, and goes out when the engine is started.

This indicator light will flash when operator regeneration of DPD is required. In this case, perform operator regeneration as soon as possible according to the "Operator Regeneration Procedure".

When operator regeneration begins, the indicator light will switch from intermittent flashing to continuous illumination, and will go off once regeneration is complete.

Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD)

→ Refer to page 4-120

Operator Regeneration of DPD

→ Refer to page 4-121

Operator Regeneration Procedure

→ Refer to page 4-122

Warning Buzzer

A warning buzzer sounds under the following conditions.

Warning	Buzzer pattern	Condition
Key remain	Short, repeated beeps	When the driver's door is opened if the key has not been removed and the starter switch is in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.
Light control OFF	Continuous beeps (Model without MID)	When the starter switch is placed in the "LOCK" position and the driver's door is
	Short, repeated beeps (Model with MID)	opened while the light control switch is set to "=00=" or " =0".
Parking brake release	Short, repeated beeps	When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 5 km/h (3.1 MPH) during driving with the parking brake engaged.
Seat belt (Driver seat)*	Short, repeated beeps	When the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 MPH) during driving with the seat belt unfastened.
Seat belt (Front passenger seat)*	Short, repeated beeps	When the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 MPH) during driving with the seat belt unfastened.
Manual transmission	One short beep	When the gearshift lever is placed in the "R (reverse)" position
Automatic transmission	Three repeated beeps	When the transmission is shifted to a low gear while the vehicle speed is too fast. When the transmission is shifted to a high gear while the vehicle speed is too slow.
4WD	Short, repeated beeps	When the vehicle speed, engine r/min, gearshift lever (manual transmission models) or the selector lever (automatic transmission models) position conflict with the changing conditions and when changing is not possible due to a 4WD system abnormality.

^{*:} Models with side airbag and curtain airbag.



ADVICE

The warning buzzer may not sound if there is a problem with the system. If this
occurs, the system needs to be inspected. Please contact the nearest Isuzu
Dealer.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

SWITCHES

Starter Switch	
Combination Light Control Switch	
Headlight Leveling Switch	4-68
Front Fog Light Switch	4-69
Rear Fog Light Switch	4-69
Hazard Warning Flasher Switch	4-70
Windshield Wiper and Windshield Washer Switch	4-7
Horn Button	4-7:
Remote Control Mirror Switch	4-7
Retractable Power Mirror Switch	4-74
Illumination Control Switch	4-7
Heated Seat Switch	4-70
Rear Window Defogger Switch	4-7



4-64 CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Starter Switch

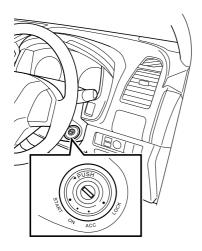


While driving, never turn the starter switch to the "LOCK" position. The key
could be removed from the switch, which then locks the steering wheel. This is
extremely dangerous.

⊗ ADVICE

- Using a key sticking with dirt or dust, etc. may possibly damage the starter switch. Make sure to wipe off any dirt or dust, etc. before inserting the key.
- After starting the engine, do not turn the starter switch to the "START" position. Otherwise, the starter motor may be damaged.
- Using electrical devices such as the audio system for an extended time period with the engine stopped can completely discharge the battery.

Starter Switch



LOCK : In this position, the key can be inserted or removed.

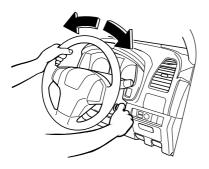
Remove the key and turn the steering wheel until it locks. The steering wheel will be locked to help prevent theft. To place the starter switch in the "LOCK" position, press and hold the key in the "ACC" position and then turn it to the "LOCK" position.

ACC : In this position, the audio and other accessories can be used with the engine stopped.

ON : The key stays in this position while the engine is running.

This position is also used for preheating before starting the engine.

START: The engine is started in this position. Release the key as soon as the engine has started. The key automatically returns to the "ON" position.

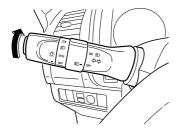


NOTE

 If the key cannot be turned from the "LOCK" position to the "ON" position, lightly move the steering wheel clockwise and counterclockwise while trying to turn the key.

Combination Light Control Switch

Light Control Switch



Turning the light control switch to the position indicated in the table causes the relevant lights to illuminate.



ADVICE

 Each light will come on regardless of the position of the starter switch.
 Do not operate the combination lights for an extended time period with the engine stopped. Otherwise, the battery may go dead, making it impossible to restart the engine.



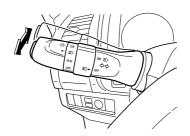
NOTE

 When repeatedly turning the headlight bulbs on and off frequently, the service life of the headlight bulbs will be reduced.

Maria	Position			
Name	OFF	<u> </u>	≣ O	() ‡
Headlight		Off		
Clearance light				
Taillight	Off	On	On	On
License plate light				
Illumination light control				
Rear fog light		Off	Off	
Daytime running light (if equipped)*	On		Off	

^{*} The daytime running light will come on when the following conditions are met.

¹⁾ The engine has been started. 2) The light control switch is "OFF" position. 3) The selector lever is placed in any position other than the "P" position (only for automatic transmission models). 4) The parking brake has been released.



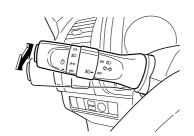
Switching between High Beam and Low Beam

With the headlights on, move the lever forward and backward to switch between the high beam and low beam.

Moving the lever forward selects high beam; moving the lever backward selects low beam.

While the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light on the instrument panel remains on.

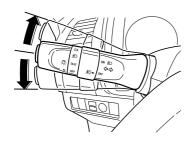
When the Bulb Does not Come On $$\rightarrow$$ Refer to page $\,$ 7-28 $\,$



Switching between High and Low Beams (Flash-to-Pass Signal)

By lightly pulling the light control switch lever and releasing it, the high beam comes on and off. At the same time, the high beam indicator light on the instrument panel comes on and off. Use this function as a signal for flash-to-pass a vehicle or other purposes.





When turning left or right, move the lever up or down to flash the turn signal light.



ADVICE

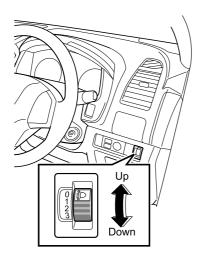
 The turn signal lights come on when the starter switch is in the "ON" position. Do not operate the turn signal lights for an extended time period with the engine stopped. Otherwise, the battery may go dead, making it impossible to start the engine.



NOTE

If the steering wheel is only turned a small amount, turn off the signal manually.
 Lightly press and hold the lever up or down when overtaking or changing lanes.

Headlight Leveling Switch



The headlight aim can be adjusted at four different angles. When the cargo load causes the headlights to aim upwards, this feature can be used to lower the aiming angle.

When your vehicle is not loaded with cargo, the switch should be set at the uppermost position. ("0" position)

Make adjustments in accordance with the following table.

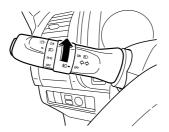


• Do not lower the aiming angle too much.

Otherwise, the illuminated range may be so reduced that you may be involved in an accident.

Position	Load	
0	No Load.	
1	When loaded to about 300 kg (660 lb).	
2	When loaded to about 650 kg (1,430 lb).	
3	When loaded up to the maximum.	

Front Fog Light Switch



Front fog light indicator light



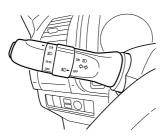
When the light control switch is placed in the "-OO-" or " >O " position, turn this switch to the "ON" position to come on the front fog lights, and then the front fog light indicator light will come on. To turn off the lights, place the switch in the "OFF" position. The front fog lights are useful when forward visibility is poor such as in fog.



 When replacing a front fog light bulb, do not use one of a larger wattage than the specified wattage. Otherwise, the wiring may be burned.

When the Bulb Does not Come On \rightarrow Refer to page 7-28

Rear Fog Light Switch



Rear fog light indicator light



When the light control switch is placed in "()‡", the rear fog light comes on and the rear fog indicator light comes on. Use this feature in low visibility such as in fog.

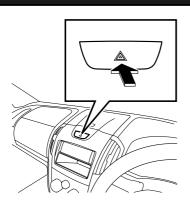


 When replacing a rear fog light bulb, do not use one of a wattage larger than the specified wattage. Otherwise, the wiring may be burned.

When the Bulb Does not Come On

→ Refer to page 7-28

Hazard Warning Flasher Switch



The hazard warning flasher is used to signal other vehicles that your vehicle is stationary on the road because of an accident or component failure.

With the starter switch in any position, when this switch is pressed, all of the turn signal lights and the turn signal indicator lights flash to signal an emergency. To turn off the hazard lights, press the switch again.



ADVICE

• Do not leave the hazard warning flasher operating for an extended time period with the engine stopped. Otherwise, the battery may go dead, making it impossible to restart the engine.

Windshield Wiper and Windshield Washer Switch

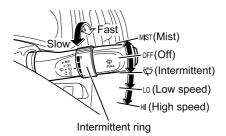
To use the windshield wiper and washer switches, the starter switch must be in the "ON" position.

Windshield Wiper Switch



ADVICE

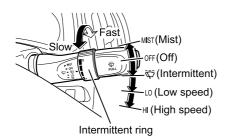
- · Clear ice or packed snow from the wiper blades before using the wipers.
- Before operating the wiper, ensure that the wiper rubber is not stuck on to the windshield. If the wiper rubber is stuck to the windshield and you still operate the wiper, the wiper may break or the wiper motor may fail.
- Do not operate the wiper on a dry windshield surface. Otherwise, the windshield surface may sustain damage. Always use the windshield washer when wiping a dry glass surface.
- The safety system may work to stop the wiper when excessive load is applied
 on the motor. In this case, turn the switch to the "OFF" position and, a few
 minutes later, check to see if the wiper is back to normal operation. If the wiper
 frequently stops operation, refrain from using it and contact the nearest Isuzu
 Dealer.



The windshield wiper switch has the following positions, which correspond to the states of the wiper.

Lever position	Wiper state	
MIST	Operated while the lever is only held upward	
OFF	Stopped	
Ď	Intermittent (Light rain)	
LO	Low speed (Moderate rain)	
HI	High speed (Heavy rain)	

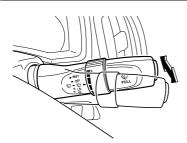
CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS



Variable Intermittent Windshield Wiper

The wipers will operate intermittently when the intermittent ring is rotated to the """ position. The interval between wiper sweeps can be adjusted within a range of approximately 1.5 to 15 seconds by turning the intermittent ring.

Windshield Washer Switch



Windshield washer fluid is sprayed over the windshield when this switch is pressed. At the same time, the windshield wiper operates.

The windshield washer is used when the windshield is being wiped during clean.



 At extremely low temperatures, washer fluid may freeze on the windshield after being sprayed, obstructing your forward view. In such a case, warm up the windshield before using the windshield washer.



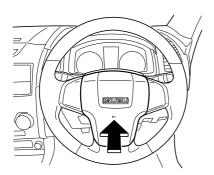
ADVICE

- If windshield washer fluid does not come out in sufficient quantity, immediately release the switch. Otherwise, the windshield surface may sustain damage.
- Do not hold the switch pressed for more than 30 seconds. Otherwise, the washer pump may sustain damage.
- If windshield washer fluid does not come out, release the windshield washer switch immediately. Otherwise the motor may seize up.
- When the vehicle is used in a cold-climate region, use washer fluid with appropriate concentration for the season to prevent frozen fluid.

Windshield Washer Fluid

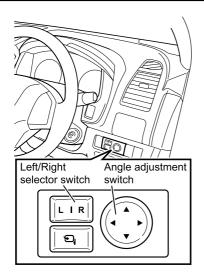
→ Refer to page 6-82

Horn Button



To sound the horn, press the pad with a horn symbol on the steering wheel.

Remote Control Mirror Switch



The remote control mirror switch is active only when the starter switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

Adjust

- Press the left/right selector switch on the "L" or "R" side to adjust the mirror in the desired direction.
- Press the angle adjustment switch to adjust the mirror angle. After adjusting, return the left/right selector switch to the middle position.

MARNING

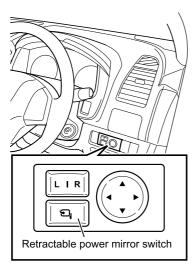
 Adjust the mirrors when the vehicle is stationary, not while the vehicle is in motion.

ADVICE

 Do not try to forcefully move the mirror surface by hand. Otherwise, the mirror motor may sustain damage.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Retractable Power Mirror Switch



The retractable power mirror switch is active only when the starter switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

Press the switch to retract the right and left mirrors. To extend the mirrors, press the switch again.

MARNING

- Adjust the mirrors when the vehicle is stationary, not while the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not operate the retractable power mirrors while driving as this is dangerous and could cause an accident.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded in. Before driving, be sure to adjust both the driver's side mirror and passenger's side mirror to their original positions.

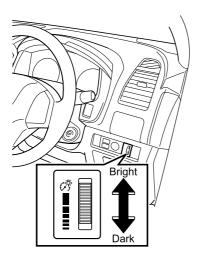
A CAUTION

 Do not touch the mirrors with a hand while the mirrors are moving.
 It could cause your hands to be pinched or a mirror malfunction.

⊗ ADVICE

- When moving the mirror manually, do not use more force than necessary.
- Although the retractable power mirror can be moved manually as well, we recommend that you electrically move the mirror to prevent malfunction.

Illumination Control Switch



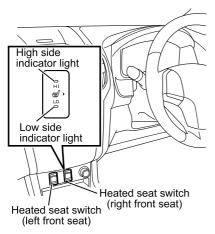
This switch is used to adjust the brightness of the illumination in the instrument panel. Turning the switch up brightens the lights, and turning the switch down darkens them. The brightness can be adjusted with the light control switch in the "-00-" or " or " or " position.



NOTE

- In models with MID, meter brightness is not adjusted in coordination with illumination control switch operation.
- In models without MID, the brightness of meter dials and needles is adjusted in coordination with illumination control switch operation. (However, the illumination brightness of the center display is automatically adjusted according to the brightness inside the vehicle and is not adjusted in coordination with illumination control switch operation.)

Heated Seat Switch



The heated seat can be used when the starter switch is in the "ON" position. Press the "HI" side of the switch to warm the seat quickly. The high side indicator light of the switch comes on. After the seat has been warmed, press the "LO" side to keep the seat warm. The low side indicator light of the switch comes on. When the switch is placed in the neutral position, the function is set to off.

A CAUTION

- The following persons should be careful so as not to receive a low temperature burn.
 - Babies and infants, elderly persons, sick persons and physically-disabled persons
 - Children
 - Persons who take drowsy medicines
 - Persons with delicate skin
 - Persons who are extremely exhausted
 - Persons who have drank alcohol
- To prevent overheating, do not use the seat with blankets and cushion that keep it too warm.
- To prevent low temperature burn, do not use the heated seat function when napping in the vehicle.



ADVICE

- Do not use the heated seat when the engine is not running. The heated seat consumes a lot of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.
- Do not place or set on the seats items such as a solid and heavy material, or nails and screws that have a sharp protruded edge. This could cause the heater wiring to break to be disconnected.
- If you spill water or a beverage on the seat, wipe it off with a dry cloth immediately.
- Do not use organic solvents such as mineral oil, benzine, thinner, or gasoline to clean the seats. Doing so may result in damage to the heater or seat covering.

Rear Window Defogger Switch

Heater/Manual Air Conditioner

→ Refer to page 5-4

Automatic Air Conditioner

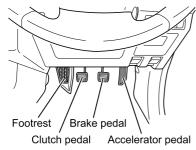
→ Refer to page 5-15

DRIVING CONTROLS

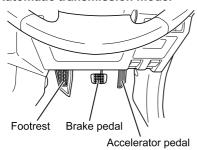
Pedals	4-80
Parking Brake Lever	4-81
Gearshift Lever	4-82
Selector Lever	4-83
Model with Automatic Transmission	4-85
Cruise Control	4-95
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	4-100
Electronic Braking force Distribution (EBD)	4-103
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	4-104
Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Model	4-112
Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD)	4-120

Pedals

Manual transmission model



Automatic transmission model



Sit in a correct driving position on the seat and operate the brake pedal and accelerator pedal with your right foot. To avoid accidentally pressing the wrong pedal, check the pedal positions and practice putting your foot on the desired pedal.

MARNING

 A can or bottle rolling on the floor may prevent brake pedal operation if it is caught under the pedal. This is very dangerous. A floor mat must be placed correctly. An incorrectly installed floor mat may hinder the free movement of each pedal.

Keep the Floor around the Driver's Seat Clean and Tidy → Refer to page 2-14 Making Sure the Floor Mats Laid Out Correctly → Refer to page 2-15

Ø D A

ADVICE

- Do not race the engine; engine components as well as fuel economy may be badly affected.
- If your vehicle has a manual transmission, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal.
 Doing so may damage the clutch.

Parking Brake Lever



CAUTION

- Although the brake system/parking brake warning light will come on if the parking brake is engaged, this does not mean the parking brake is fully engaged, so always make sure the lever is fully pulled up.
- Simply pressing the release button does not return the lever to its original position. You should always press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever up slightly.
- If the parking brake lever is not completely returned to its original position during driving, it may cause damage or a fire.
- In manual transmission models, if the vehicle is parked facing up a hill, place the gearshift lever in the "1 (1st)" gear, and if parked facing down a hill, place the lever in the "R (reverse)" gear. In addition, chocks must always be applied in either of these situations.
- · Never park the vehicle on a steep slope.

Operation of Parking Brake



Brake system/parking brake warning light

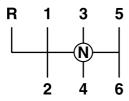


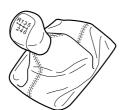
When parking the vehicle, fully apply the parking brake lever without pressing the release button. The brake system/parking brake warning light in the instrument panel will come on when the lever is pulled up.

To release the parking brake, press the release button while raising the lever a little and then lower the lever. The brake system/parking brake warning light in the instrument panel will go out.

Gearshift Lever

Manual Transmission Model





A manual transmission model requires fully depressing the clutch pedal when making a gearshift.

When the gearshift lever is placed into "R (reverse)" position, the back up lights come on and a buzzer sounds.



ADVICE

 Make a shift into the reverse gear from a forward gear or into a forward gear from the reverse gear only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop. In addition, do not shift gears without fully depressing the clutch pedal.

Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged.



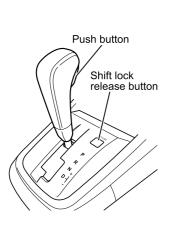
NOTE

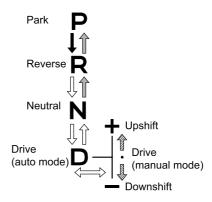
 As there is strong detent, apply ample force when shifting to the "R (reverse)" position.

Selector Lever

Automatic Transmission Model (5 Speeds)

Move the selector lever to shift into each gear position.





- Operate the selector lever while pressing the push button with the brake pedal pressed.
- : Operate the selector lever while pressing the push button.
- : Operate the selector lever without pressing the push button.
- Operate the selector lever without pressing the push button. The selector lever will return to the manual mode position when you release your hand after operating the lever in the direction of the arrow.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Selector lever position	Shift indicator in the instrument panel		Gear position
	Model without MID	Model with MID	Geal position
Р	Ω	Ω	Park: Used when parking and starting the engine.
R	Œ	ß	Reverse: Used when backing up the vehicle.
N	Z		Neutral: The engine can be started in this position but for safety reasons get in the habit of starting the engine with the selector lever in the "P" position.
D		D	Auto mode (automatic gearshift): The system automatically selects an optimum gear (1st to 5th gear) according to the vehicle speed.
+, -	m N T	128 45	Manual mode (manual gearshift): Manually selecting the "+" (upshift) or the "-" (downshift) position allows the driver to select the desired gear (1st to 5th gear).

MARNING

- When pulling away, be sure to visually check the selector lever position and the shift indicator for safety reasons.
- If you always operate the selector lever while pressing the push button, it is possible to accidentally shift the lever to the "P" or "R" position in some cases.
- Get in the habit of shifting the selector lever from the "N" to "D" or "D" to "N"
 position without pressing the push button. Incorrect operation may cause a
 serious accident.

NOTE

For safety reasons, the shift lock system operates to prevent shifting of
the selector lever to any position other than "P" unless the brake pedal is
depressed, the starter switch is in the "ON" position. When pulling away, be
sure to keep the brake pedal depressed as you operate the selector lever.

Shift Lock System → Refer to page 4-93

Model with Automatic Transmission

An automatic transmission is a transmission system that allows the driver to move the vehicle from a standstill, drive the vehicle with gears changing and bring the vehicle to a stop by only using the selector lever, accelerator pedal and brake pedal, without using the clutch pedal. Make sure you fully understand the characteristics of the automatic transmission model and familiarize yourself with its operation.

Automatic Transmission Model \rightarrow Refer to page 2-42



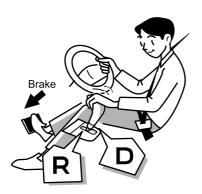
- Fully depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from moving even if it is stopped on a level road, and place the selector lever into "P" and securely set the parking brake as needed.
- Immediately after engine startup, while the air conditioner is running in models with an air conditioning system, the engine speed automatically rises, making creep stronger than it is at other times. Keep the brake pedal firmly pressed.

How to Use Automatic Transmission

A CAUTION

- Before starting the engine, place the selector lever into "P", pull up the parking brake lever and then fully depress the brake pedal.
- When moving the selector lever from "P" into any other position, be sure to depress the brake pedal.
- Do not leave the driver's seat with the selector lever placed in "D" (auto mode or manual mode) or "R" while the engine is running. The vehicle may start moving.
 When leaving the driver seat, be sure to place the selector lever into "P" and securely set the parking brake.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS



Model without MID





Model with MID





To Start Your Vehicle - on Normal Roads

- Fully depress the brake pedal, and make sure that the selector lever is placed in "P" and that the parking brake lever is fully pulled up.
 Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position.
- Start the engine while fully depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.
 Place the selector lever into "D" (auto mode or manual mode) for forward movement or into "R" for backward movement.
- 3. Make sure that the shift indicator indicates "D" (auto mode or manual mode) for forward movement or "R" for backward movement, release the parking brake, release the brake pedal, and then slowly press the accelerator pedal. The vehicle starts moving as you depress the accelerator pedal further.



- When you move the selector lever to a position other than "P" or "N", creep will
 cause the vehicle to move. When pulling away, be sure to keep the brake pedal
 pressed as you operate the selector lever.
- When pulling away, be sure to visually check the selector lever position and the shift indicator for safety reasons. If you always operate the selector lever while pressing the push button, it is possible to accidentally shift the lever to the "P" or "R" position in some cases.
- Get in the habit of shifting the selector lever from the "N" to "D" or "D" to "N"
 position without pressing the push button. Incorrect operation may cause a
 serious accident.
- Do not operate the selector lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. Doing so is dangerous because the vehicle will suddenly move.
- Carefully operate the accelerator pedal because the speed is controlled only using the accelerator pedal when starting or accelerating the vehicle.
- Immediately after engine startup, while the air conditioner is running in models
 with an air conditioning system, the engine speed automatically rises, making
 creep stronger than it is at other times. Keep the brake pedal firmly pressed.



NOTE

- When the brake pedal is not pressed, the shift lock system operates and the selector lever cannot be shifted from "P" to any other position.
- On a snowy or icy road, by depressing the brake pedal you can make a standing start in the manual mode 2nd gear and move the selector lever to the "+" (upshift) position.

Shift Lock System→ Refer to page 4-93

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

To Start Your Vehicle - on a Steep Slope

- 1. Firmly depress the brake pedal and make sure the parking brake lever is fully pulled up.
- 2. Place the selector lever into the "D" (auto mode or manual mode) position for forward movement or the "R" position for backward movement while fully depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.
- 3. Make sure that the shift indicator indicates "D" (auto mode or manual mode) for forward movement or "R" for backward movement, check the surrounding area to make sure it is safe to move the vehicle, ease your right foot off the brake pedal, and slowly press the accelerator pedal.
- 4. After you feel the vehicle start moving, slowly release the parking brake lever and pull away the vehicle.



- When you move the selector lever to a position other than "P" or "N", creep will cause the vehicle to move. When pulling away, be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed as you operate the selector lever.
- Do not operate the selector lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. Doing so is dangerous because the vehicle will suddenly move.
- Carefully operate the accelerator pedal because the speed is controlled only using the accelerator pedal when starting or accelerating the vehicle.

S O

ADVICE

- When the vehicle is stopped, do not keep depressing the accelerator pedal with the selector lever placed in the "D" (auto mode or manual mode) or "R" position while depressing the brake pedal. Doing so may cause a failure.
- When stopping the vehicle on a slope, be sure to fully apply the brakes.
 Keeping the vehicle stopped by depressing the accelerator pedal to produce a strong creeping effect may cause a failure.

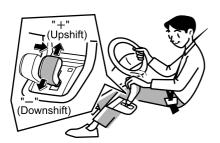
To Drive on Normal Roads - Auto Mode

When you change the selector lever from "P" into "D" (auto mode), shifting takes place in the automatic mode. Check that "D" is displayed on the shift indicator.



CAUTION

• Do not place the selector lever into the "N" position while driving. The engine brake does not work at all, possibly causing an accident. Doing so may also cause a failure in the automatic transmission.



To Drive on Normal Roads - Manual Mode

When the selector lever is shifted from "D" (auto mode) to the manual mode position (shifted to the right side) while the vehicle is stopped or being driven, the mode changes to the manual mode and the gears can be shifted manually as with a manual transmission model.

- When changing the gear, move the lever towards the "+" (upshift) or "-" (downshift) direction as necessary to select the desired gear. The currently selected gear ("1" to "5") is displayed on the shift indicator.
- Gears are not automatically shifted in the manual mode. To return to the auto mode, place the selector lever into the "D" (auto mode) position. Make sure that "D" is displayed on the shift indicator.



ADVICE

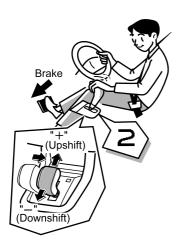
- Shift into the gear that is appropriate for the vehicle speed. If an inappropriate gear shift position is selected, a warning buzzer will sound and the shift will not occur.
- Driving using an inappropriate gear in the manual mode will result in a failure of the transmission system. In particular, avoid selecting higher gears when driving uphill or towing. Doing so will cause overheating.



NOTE

 The gear is automatically shifted down to the 1st gear when the vehicle is stopped.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS



2nd Start Mode on a Snowy or Frozen Road - Manual Mode

Use 2nd start mode only when driving on slippery road conditions due to snow, ice, etc.

- 1. Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.
- Shift the selector lever from the "D" (auto mode) position to the manual mode position (shifted to the right side). Press the selector lever forward to "+" (upshift).
- 3. Make sure that the shift indicator display changes from "1" to "2".
- To disengage the 2nd start mode, shift the selector lever to the "D" (auto mode) position or select a gear other than "2".



ADVICE

 Driving during normal road conditions using 2nd start mode will cause the automatic transmission fluid temperature to rise, leading to breakdown.

To Accelerate (Auto Mode)

When you depress the accelerator fully while driving with the selector lever in the "D" (auto mode) position, the transmission automatically shifts to a lower speed gear according to the vehicle speed and the engine speed rises to enable sufficient acceleration.

Uphill/Downhill Transmission Control System

On steep uphill grades or when towing a heavy load, the system senses a lack of engine torque in the upper gears and prevents upshifting or forces downshifting. This feature provides more suitable gear selection for driving uphill and unnecessary gear changes are eliminated.

On steep downhill grades, the system automatically downshifts when the service brake is applied as a trigger. Engine braking power is utilized to reduce the service brake load.

Lock-up Clutch Slip Control System

This system provides increased transmission efficiency and fuel economy.

The system automatically operates to reduce torque converter slip loss during moderate acceleration at low speed and to increase the effects of engine fuel-cut when coasting.



NOTE

[What is lock-up clutch]

- It is a device that raises transmission efficiency in the 2nd to 5th gears (all gears except 1st and reverse) when a certain speed is reached, and improves fuel efficiency.
- The lock-up clutch will be released when the accelerator pedal is pressed forcefully.

To Stop the Vehicle

When stopping the vehicle temporarily, firmly press the brake pedal with the selector lever in the "D" (auto mode or manual mode) position.



- Immediately after engine startup, while the air conditioner is running in models with an air conditioning system, the engine speed automatically rises, making creep stronger than it is at other times. Keep the brake pedal firmly pressed.
- When the vehicle is likely to be stopped for a long time, place the selector lever into the "N" position, fully depress the brake pedal and firmly set the parking brake. When the selector lever is placed in the "D" position, the torque converter of the transmission generates heat and the oil temperature of the automatic transmission fluid increases.

A CAUTION

- When leaving the driver's seat, be sure to place the selector lever into the "P" position, make sure that the shift indicator displays "P" and firmly set the parking brake.
- Do not race the engine while the vehicle is stopped. If the selector lever is
 placed in any position other than "P" or "N", the vehicle will suddenly move and
 it may cause an accident.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS



ADVICE

- When the vehicle is stopped, do not keep depressing the accelerator pedal with the selector lever placed in the "D" (auto mode or manual mode) or "R" position while depressing the brake pedal. Doing so may cause a failure.
- When stopping the vehicle on a slope, be sure to fully apply the brakes.
 Keeping the vehicle stopped by depressing the accelerator pedal to produce a strong creeping effect may cause a failure.



NOTE

When stopping the vehicle to wait for a traffic light, it is recommended that you
place the selector lever into the "N" position for improved fuel economy.

To Start Your Vehicle After Stopping

When starting the vehicle after stopping, visually check the selector lever position and the shift indicator and start the vehicle by slowly pressing the accelerator pedal.



When Parking Your Vehicle

- Set the parking brake while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.
- Place the selector lever into the "P" position, make sure that the shift indicator displays "P", and then slowly ease your right foot off the brake pedal.
- Stop the engine and remove the key.
 When the selector lever is not placed
 in the "P" position, the shift lock
 system operates and the key cannot
 be removed.



- Do not leave the vehicle while the engine is running. If the selector lever is
 placed in any position other than "P" or "N" position, creep may cause the
 vehicle to move or the vehicle may suddenly move by accidentally pressing the
 accelerator pedal when getting in the vehicle. While the air conditioner is used
 in models with an air conditioning system, the engine speed rises when the air
 conditioner operates and the vehicle may start moving even when it is stopped
 temporarily.
- When parking the vehicle, be sure to use the parking brake together with the "P" position of the selector lever. Avoid parking only with the selector lever placed in the "P" position.
- When parking the vehicle on a slope, place the selector lever into the "P" position and chock the tires.

Shift Lock System

When Starting Your Vehicle

The selector lever cannot be operated from the "P" position to any other position when the brake pedal is not depressed. Be sure to operate the lever while depressing the brake pedal.

When Parking Your Vehicle

The key cannot be removed unless the selector lever is fully placed in the "P" position (key interlock system). Be sure to place the selector lever in the "P" position when parking the vehicle.



NOTE

[Use the shift lock system correctly]

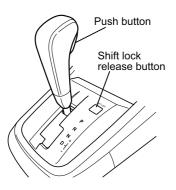
• The shift lock system is a system for safety to prevent incorrect operation of the automatic transmission model. Use it correctly and drive safely.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

When the Selector Lever Cannot be Operated from the "P" Position to Any Other Position

When the selector lever cannot be operated from the "P" position to any other position after the engine starts, perform the following checks.

- Check whether the brake pedal is firmly depressed.
 When the brake pedal is not pressed, the shift lock system operates and the selector lever cannot be shifted from "P" to any other position.
- Check whether the parking location is on a slope.
 When the vehicle is parked on a downslope, operation of the push button of the selector lever can become heavy. In that case, it can be operated smoothly when pressing the push button while pressing the selector lever toward the front of the vehicle.



Shift Lock Release

When the selector lever cannot be operated from the "P" position to any other position even after checking depression of the brake and the condition of the parking location and performing the operation as above, perform the following operations.

- 1. Fully depress the brake pedal and securely set the parking brake.
- 2. Press the shift lock release button.
- Press the push button and operate the selector lever while pressing the shift lock release button.

MARNING

When the selector lever cannot be operated from the "P" position to any other
position even after performing the operation above repeatedly, the shift lock
system may have a failure. Have your vehicle inspected at the nearest Isuzu
Dealer at once.

Cruise Control

The cruise control function allows you to drive the vehicle at a constant speed without operating the accelerator pedal. Cruise control can be used at vehicle speeds of approximately 40 km/h (25 MPH) or higher. This function should only be used when driving without frequent starting and stopping, such as when driving on an expressway.



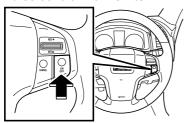
- Do not use the cruise control function on the following roads, where using it could be dangerous.
 - A road with a heavy traffic, such as an urban road
 - A road that includes sharp curves and steep downhill slopes
 - An icy, snowy or otherwise slippery road

A CAUTION

- Remember that taking your foot off the accelerator when the cruise control is
 engaged will not reduce vehicle speed. When going up or down hills (particularly
 when towing) it is possible for the vehicle to gain or lose speed, even though
 the cruise control is engaged. If this happens while going up a hill, depress the
 accelerator pedal to maintain the desired speed. If going down a hill, depress
 the brake pedal, which will both disengage the cruise control and slow down the
 vehicle.
- If you feel any abnormality when using cruise control, cancel cruise control
 with the cruise control main switch and have your vehicle inspected as soon as
 possible at your Isuzu Dealer.

Setting to Your Desired Vehicle Speed

Cruise control main switch

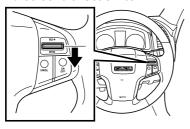


 Press the cruise control main switch to set it to "ON". The cruise control main indicator light will come on. In models with an MID, the cruise control main indicator light is first displayed prominently in the center of the MID. After that, the size of the display is decreased.

Cruise control main indicator light



Cruise control set switch



Cruise control set indicator light



 Use the accelerator pedal to adjust the vehicle to the desired speed above approximately 40 km/h (25 MPH). Upon reaching the desired speed, operate the cruise control set switch. The vehicle speed at the moment you operate the switch is set in the system, enabling you to drive with the set speed automatically maintained without using the accelerator pedal.

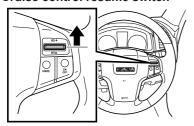
At the same time the cruise control set indicator light comes on. In models with an MID, the cruise control set indicator light is first displayed prominently in the center of the MID. After that, the size of the display is decreased.

Accelerating during Cruise Control Driving

If you want to accelerate temporarily to pass another vehicle while driving using the cruise control, depress the accelerator pedal. When you release the accelerator pedal, the speed returns to the original set vehicle speed.

Changing the Cruise Control Speed Setting

Cruise control resume switch



When Increasing Vehicle Speed

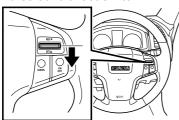
When the cruise control resume switch is operated, the speed increases while the switch is held.

After the speed is increased to the desired vehicle speed, and the switch is released, the speed is set at the increased vehicle speed. If you want to increase the speed quickly, depress the accelerator pedal and accelerate to the desired vehicle speed. Then, operate the cruise control set switch.

When Increasing Vehicle Speed Slightly

If the cruise control resume switch is operated and released immediately, the set vehicle speed increases 1 km/h (0.6 MPH) per operation.

Cruise control set switch



When Decreasing Vehicle Speed

When the cruise control set switch is operated, the speed decreases while the switch is held.

After the speed is decreased to the desired vehicle speed, and the switch is released, the speed is set at the decreased vehicle speed. If you want to decrease the speed quickly, depress the brake pedal to cancel cruise control and decelerate to the desired vehicle speed. Then, operate the cruise control set switch.

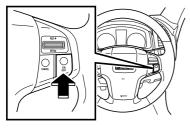
When Decreasing Vehicle Speed Slightly

If the cruise control set switch is operated and released immediately, the set vehicle speed decreases 1 km/h (0.6 MPH) per operation.

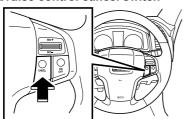
CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

When Canceling Cruise Control

Cruise control main switch



Cruise control cancel switch



Press the cruise control main switch again to set it to "OFF". The cruise control main indicator light will go out.

The cruise control is canceled in the following cases.

- When the brake pedal is depressed.
- When depressing the clutch pedal (manual transmission model).
- When the vehicle speed decreases to approximately 40 km/h (25 MPH) or less.
- When there is an abnormality in the engine control system.
- When shifting gears.
- When operating the cruise control cancel switch.
- When the vehicle has been temporarily stopped and the selector lever has been placed in the "N" position (automatic transmission model).
- When the electronic stability control (ESC) or traction control system (TCS) is activated.

ADVICE

- When not using the cruise control, be sure to turn it off.
- When placing the starter switch into "ACC", reset the cruise control after pressing the cruise control main switch to turn off the cruise control.

When Returning to Cruise Control Driving

If you have canceled cruise control under the following conditions, you can return to the cruise control driving condition before cancellation when you operate and release the cruise control resume switch. The moment the resume switch is released, the cruise control set indicator light comes on.

- · When depressing the brake pedal.
- · When shifting gears.
- When operating the cruise control cancel switch.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Wheels may be locked and slip during sudden braking or braking on a slippery road surface such as a snowy road. ABS is a device to prevent the wheels from by detecting a slippery condition during braking and to secure directional stability and handling stability of the vehicle. ABS is only to assist in slippery conditions and will not prevent an accident if you exceed safe driving speeds for road conditions. Always drive safely.

\triangle

CAUTION

- The braking distance on slippery road surfaces is longer than that on a normal dry paved road even with an ABS-equipped vehicle. In addition the braking distance can be slightly longer in deep snow and on a gravel road when ABS is activated. Therefore, always keep in mind the road condition and tire condition (type of tires and worn condition), observe safe driving habits and drive the vehicle while keeping a proper distance between vehicles.
- ABS does not prevent accidents if you do not drive safely. Drive the vehicle at a safe speed.
- Install tires of the specified size, same brand and same tread design (including winter tires) on all wheels. If different tires are installed, the braking distance becomes longer and directional control stability of the vehicle decreases. This is very dangerous.
- Steering during sudden braking (when the ABS is working) will feel slightly different than it does when the brakes are not applied. Operate the steering wheel carefully keeping this in mind.



ADVICE

- Driving in sand or on a muddy road may adversely affect the brakes and ABS sensors. Wash the vehicle to remove sand and mud after operating the vehicle in sandy or muddy conditions.
- Before washing the vehicle, provide necessary protection to prevent water from being splashed on the ABS components (sensors and actuators). Especially when using high-pressure washing, be careful not to allow water to be directly sprayed onto the ABS components and their harness connectors.



NOTE

[These are not signs of ABS malfunction]

- Immediately after the engine is started, a motor sound may be heard from the engine compartment. This sound is from a self-check by the ABS. In addition, you may also feel some vibration if the brake pedal is pressed at this time.
- When ABS is operating, vibration is felt on the brake pedal and steering wheel and you may hear the system operating. This is normal when ABS is properly operating.
- ABS is more likely to be activated when the brake is applied during cornering or driving over a bump. This is because inside wheels or wheels that have gone over a bump tend to lock.
- ABS is not activated immediately after starting the vehicle. It is activated only when the vehicle speed reaches approximately 10 km/h (6 MPH). ABS operation is inactive when the vehicle speed reduces to approximately 5 km/h (3 MPH).

ABS Operation Indications and Signs

ABS warning light



Operation Indications of ABS

When the starter switch is placed into the "ON" position, the ABS warning light comes on and then goes out in approximately 3 seconds. The ABS is normal if the warning light goes out.

Operation Signs of ABS

When ABS is activated, slight vibration is generated on the brake pedal and steering wheel, and an operating sound can be heard from the ABS equipment.



NOTE

- If the ABS warning light does any of the following, the ABS may be faulty.
 Please contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.
 - If the ABS warning light comes on during driving
 - The light does not come on when the starter switch is placed into the "ON" position
- Even if a problem has occurred with the ABS, the regular brakes will still work normally. However, ABS will not operate.

ABS Warning Light

→ Refer to page 4-44



CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Precautions for Driving an ABS-Equipped Vehicle

ABS is not a device that enables driving and stopping under conditions exceeding safe driving limits. Always drive safely.

A CAUTION

- When braking suddenly, continue pressing brake pedal hard so that the ABS can take effect.
- When braking suddenly, do not pump the brakes (pushing and releasing the brake pedal little by little). Pumping brakes will increase the braking distance.
- The braking distance on slippery road surfaces is longer than that on a normal dry paved road even with an ABS-equipped vehicle. When ABS is activated in the following road surface conditions, the braking distance may be slightly longer compared to that of vehicles not equipped with an ABS. Therefore, always be aware of the road and tire condition (tire type and wear condition), observe safe driving habits and drive the vehicle while keeping a safe following distance.
 - When driving on a gravel road, or a road with a deep snow covering.
 - When tire chains are used.
 - When driving over road joints or bumps such as light reflectors on the road.
 - When driving on a bumpy road, stone-paved road or track.
 - When driving over an iron plate or manhole lid.
- ABS does not work for wheel skid during a standing start, acceleration and
 cornering which do not involve braking. On a very slippery icy road, tires may
 lose grip and steering wheel operation may not be able to control the vehicle's
 direction, resulting in very unstable driving. Always drive the vehicle observing
 a safe speed well matched with both road surface and tire conditions, and avoid
 sudden braking.
- If powerful engine braking is applied on a very slippery icy road, the drive
 wheels may be locked (the ABS then does not work), resulting in loss of vehicle
 control. If this happens with a manual transmission vehicle, disengage the
 clutch or place the gearshift lever into the "N" position to prevent engine braking
 from acting on the drive wheels. Then, drive the vehicle with the gearshift lever
 placed in an appropriate gear.
- When ABS is activated, a slight vibration (especially when the road surface is
 different between right and left wheels) and pulling may be felt on the brake
 pedal and steering wheel. In addition, an operating sound is produced from the
 ABS actuators. This does not indicate any abnormal condition. Stay calm and
 operate the steering wheel properly.

Electronic Braking force Distribution (EBD)

EBD is a function that uses the ABS to distribute braking force ideally between the front and rear wheels in order to compensate for changes in load conditions or any shift of the load due to acceleration or deceleration, thus preventing premature locking of the rear wheels.

CAUTION

- If a problem should occur with the EBD function, the ABS warning light and the brake system/parking brake warning light will come on simultaneously.
- The rear wheels will lock more easily if there is a problem with the EBD function. Have it checked and serviced at the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.



NOTE

• When the EBD operates, the brake pedal may push back slightly or you may hear a sound similar to that generated by the ABS when operational. Neither of them indicate any abnormal condition.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The ESC improves safety and a vehicle's stability. The ESC controls the engine power and applies the brakes to the wheels that need it in order to suppress wheelspin when starting or accelerating on slippery road surfaces, maintain drive power, prevent skidding to the side and improve vehicle stability. The ESC has various sensors that detect rapid changes in the vehicle conditions while driving. The traction control system (TCS) suppresses wheelspin when starting or accelerating. The TCS is included in the ESC. The ESC is automatically activated when the engine is started. However, by using the ESC OFF switch, the ESC can be canceled (operation stopped status) or only the function of the TCS can be canceled (operation stopped status).

A CAUTION

- · When the ESC is activated, the ESC warning light flashes.
- The ESC warning light will also flash when only the TCS function is operating.
- When the ESC warning light is flashing, the road surface is slippery or acceleration is too fast. Loosen pressure on the accelerator pedal and drive conservatively.
- The ESC warning light may also flash when fully depressing the accelerator pedal on roads that are not slippery such as dry asphalt roads. This is a normal condition that predicts slipping and operates control.
- Even with an ESC-equipped model, when driving on a snowy or icy road, install tire chains or winter tires, and carefully drive the vehicle. The ESC is not a device for drastically improving the vehicle stability when driving or starting performance, so drive carefully on snowy or icy roads.
- When tire chains are installed, it may be easier for you to start the vehicle to
 move on an icy slope if just the TCS is canceled. Be aware, however, that TCS
 deactivation will result in reduced vehicle stability.
- Install tires of the specified size, same brand, same type and same tread design (including winter tires) on all wheels. In addition, do not install or use tires with significantly varying degrees of wear. If tires other than the specified size, different types, or tires with significantly varying degrees of wear are used, the ESC may not operate properly.
- If the tire diameter is different such as when installing tire chains or a spare tire, the ESC may not operate properly.
- If suspension-related parts, brake-related parts, or engine-related parts are replaced with parts other than Isuzu genuine parts or modified, the ESC may not operate properly.

CAUTION (Continued)

CAUTION (Continued)

- Be sure to consult with your Isuzu Dealer for replacement or repair of the steering wheel or steering-related parts. There is a sensor on the steering wheel that detects driving operation conditions, and the ESC may not operate properly if the steering wheel center position is misaligned.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the starter switch turned to the "ON" position with just the front wheels or rear wheels raised. The ESC may operate and cause an accident.



NOTE

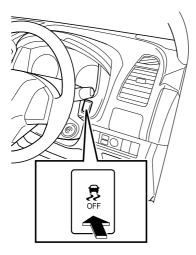
[These are not signs of ESC malfunction]

- Immediately after the engine is started, a motor sound may be heard from the engine compartment. This sound is from a self-check by the ESC. In addition, you may also feel some vibration if the brake pedal is pressed at this time.
- When the ESC is operating, the brake pedal movement may wiggle or feel tight.
 In addition, the vehicle body may vibrate or you may hear operating sounds.
 This is normal for ESC operation.
- The ESC will not operate immediately after starting until the vehicle reaches approximately 15 km/h (9 MPH).



ESC OFF Switch

When getting unstuck from mud or fresh snow with the ESC and TCS operating, the engine output may not rise even when the accelerator pedal is depressed, making getting unstuck difficult. In times like this, pressing the ESC OFF switch will make getting unstuck easier. The ESC can be turned off using the ESC OFF switch, or just the TCS (function for suppressing tire spinning when starting or accelerating) in the ESC system can be turned off.



TCS OFF indicator light



ESC warning light



When Canceling the TCS

When the ESC is active after the engine is started, press the ESC OFF switch for approximately 1 second to cancel the TCS and cause the TCS OFF indicator light in the meter to turn on. When the switch is pressed again for approximately 1 second, the TCS function turns back on.

A CAUTION

- When you turn off the TCS, it will not be available to assist you in slippery driving conditions. Always use caution when driving on slippery roads.
- Be sure to enable the TCS during normal driving.
- Even when the TCS is off, partial brake control will operate. The ESC warning light will flash during operation.



NOTE

- If the engine is turned off and then restarted again while the TCS is off, the TCS will be automatically reactivated.
- In models with 4WD, the ESC OFF indicator light will turn on and the ESC (excluding the TCS brake control) will not activate when the 4WD switch is set to 4L (4WD low). If you wish to turn the TCS brake control off as well, press this ESC OFF switch for approximately 5 seconds to cancel the TCS brake control and cause the TCS OFF indicator light in the meter to turn on.

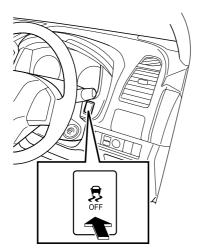
When Canceling the ESC

When the ESC is active after the engine is started, press the ESC OFF switch for approximately 5 seconds to cancel the ESC and cause the ESC OFF indicator light in the meter to turn on. When the switch is pressed again for approximately 1 second, the ESC function turns back on.



CAUTION

- When you turn off the ESC, it will not be available to assist you in slippery driving conditions. Always use caution when driving on slippery roads
- Be sure to enable the ESC during normal driving.
- When the ESC is turned off, the TCS will also be turned off, thus be careful when driving on slippery roads.



ESC OFF indicator light



CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS



NOTE

- If the engine is turned off and then restarted again while the ESC is off, the ESC will be automatically reactivated.
- In models with 4WD, the ESC OFF indicator light will turn on and the ESC (excluding the TCS brake control) will not activate when the 4WD switch is set to 4L (4WD low). The ESC warning light will flash during operation.

ESC Operation Check, Operation, Error

ESC warning light



TCS OFF indicator light

TCS OFF

ESC OFF indicator light



ESC Operation Check

When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, the ESC warning light, TCS OFF indicator light, and ESC OFF indicator light turn on before going out after approximately 3 seconds. The ESC is normal if the warning light and indicator light go out.

When the ESC is Operational

When the ESC is operating, the ESC warning light flashes.

ESC Faulty

When the ESC warning light does any of the following, the ESC may be faulty. Please contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

- The ESC warning light remains on while driving.
- The TCS OFF indicator light and ESC OFF indicator light turn on while driving (when the ESC OFF switch is not operated).
- The ESC warning light, TCS OFF indicator light, and ESC OFF indicator light do not turn on when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.



NOTE

 If the ESC is faulty, it does not interfere with normal driving.
 However, the ESC will not function.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Driving Precautions for Vehicles Equipped with ESC

A CAUTION

- The ESC is not a device that enables driving under conditions exceeding safe limits. Always drive safely.
- Always concentrate on driving safely and do not be overconfident just because
 the vehicle is equipped with the ESC, so do not drive too fast and turn the
 steering wheel too sharply.
- The ESC does not increase the road grip of tires although it controls slipping and sliding of vehicles and improves the vehicle stability on a slippery road surface during starting and acceleration when compared to a model without ESC. On an icy or otherwise slippery road, the grip of the tires decreases which also reduces steering control, resulting in unstable vehicle behavior. Always drive the vehicle observing a safe speed well matched to the road surface and tire conditions, and also avoid speeding.
- The ESC is a system for maintaining drive power and vehicle stability. Turn the system on even when it is not needed. When the system is turned off, drive carefully at a safe speed well matched to the road surface.
- Even if ESC is equipped, avoid sudden operation of the accelerator pedal, clutch pedal (manual transmission models) and steering wheel. Especially when starting the vehicle on a slippery road, start up slowly as you would in a vehicle without ESC.
- When the ESC is activated, the ESC warning light flashes.
- The ESC warning light will also flash when only the TCS function is operating.
- When the ESC warning light is flashing, the road surface is slippery or acceleration is too fast. Loosen pressure on the accelerator pedal and drive conservatively.
- The ESC warning light may also flash when fully depressing the accelerator pedal on roads that are not slippery such as dry asphalt roads. This is a normal condition that predicts slipping and operates control.
- Even with an ESC-equipped model, when driving on a snowy or icy road, carefully drive the vehicle, and install tire chains or winter tires.
- When tire chains are installed, it may be easier for you to start the vehicle to
 move on an icy slope if just the TCS is canceled. Be aware, however, that TCS
 deactivation will result in reduced vehicle stability.
- Do not install a commercially available limited slip differential (LSD). The ESC may not operate properly.



NOTE

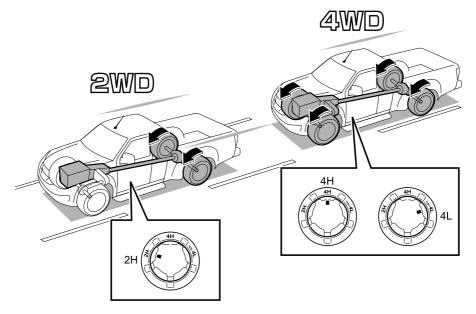
- When the ESC is operating, the brake pedal movement may wiggle or feel tight.
 In addition, the vehicle body may vibrate or you may hear operating sounds.
 This is normal for ESC operation.
- If there is significant wear or degradation on parts related to the suspension, tires, brakes, etc., the ESC warning light may turn on. In such cases, the ESC may not function properly.
- The ESC warning light may turn on when the vehicle is on a turntable at the entrance of a parking garage or on a moving object, etc. In such cases, re-start the engine after the vehicle has left the turntable.
- The ESC warning light may turn on when driving on roads with extreme inclines (the banks seen on race tracks, etc.). In such cases, the ESC may not function properly, so do not drive on such roads.
- The ESC warning light may turn on when the battery cables are disconnected
 or the battery voltage is low. The ESC function turns off while the ESC warning
 light is on, but the ESC warning light will turn off by driving the vehicle normally
 for a while, then the ESC function will resume. If the ESC warning light remains
 on even after driving for a while, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Model

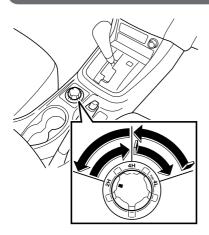
2WD and 4WD ("4H (4WD high)" or "4L (4WD low)") operation can be selected using the 4WD switch. Change them according to the driving conditions.



A CAUTION

- Even a 4WD vehicle does not exempt you from safe driving practices. Operate the accelerator pedal, steering wheel and brake pedal with the same level of caution as when driving a standard rear-wheel drive vehicle.
- Install tires of the specified size, same brand and same tread design (including winter tires) on all wheels.

4WD Switch



Use the 4WD switch to select 2WD or 4WD ("4H (4WD high)" or "4L (4WD low)").

A CAUTION

 Driving in 4WD mode on dry, well-paved roads can accelerate wearing of the front tires and reduce fuel efficiency. As this action can also increase vehicle noise levels and lead to drive system damage, 2WD should always be used under these driving conditions.



NOTE

- When the vehicle speed, engine speed, gearshift lever (manual transmission models) or the selector lever (automatic transmission models) position conflict with the changing conditions and when there is an abnormality in 4WD system, a warning buzzer sounds to alert you that switching is not possible.
- In the event that the 4WD indicator light or 4WD low indicator light fail to either go off or come on even when the 4WD switch is operated, have the vehicle inspected and serviced at your Isuzu Dealer.
- When the check 4WD warning light is on, have the vehicle inspected and serviced at your Isuzu Dealer.

4WD Indicator Light

→ Refer to page 4-61

4WD Low Indicator Light

→ Refer to page 4-61

Check 4WD Warning Light

→ Refer to page 4-54

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Guidelines for 2WD to 4WD Switching

Drive type	2WD	4WD	
	2H	4H (4WD high)	4L (4WD low)
4WD switch	4H 3 A	4H R	4H AC
Indicator light	OFF	104 104	1 4L
Model with MID*	2H	4H	4L
Driving conditions	During normal driving on an ordinary road or highway.	Wet roads, snow- covered roads, icy roads, and other roads where the vehicle needs more traction than 2WD.	Steep slopes, rough roads, sand, mud or deep snow, and other roads where the vehicle needs significant traction.

^{*:} When the 4WD switch has been operated in each position, it will be displayed on the MID for approximately 3 seconds.

ADVICE

• Do not set the 4WD switch midway between the "2H" and "4H" positions or the "4H" and "4L" positions. Doing so could cause a malfunction.

Switching from "2H" to "4H (4WD High)"



 Do not operate the 4WD switch from "2H" to "4H" while the wheels are spinning.
 Stop the slipping or spinning first,

Stop the slipping or spinning first, and then operate the 4WD switch.

 Keep the vehicle moving straight and operate the 4WD switch to the "4H" position at a constant speed below 100 km/h (60 MPH).



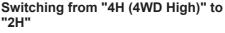
NOTE

- When the 4WD switch is operated at vehicle speeds over 100 km/h (60 MPH), the 4WD indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds.
- The 4WD indicator light comes on when "2H" is switched to "4H".
 The 4WD indicator light continues flashing until the operation is complete.

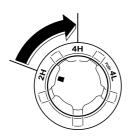


NOTE

 If the 4WD indicator light does not come on, move the vehicle slowly forward and backward.

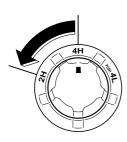


 Keep the vehicle moving straight and operate the 4WD switch to the "2H" position at a constant speed below 100 km/h (60 MPH).



4WD indicator light





CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

 The 4WD indicator light goes off when "4H" is switched to "2H".
 The 4WD indicator light continues flashing until the operation is complete.



NOTE

 If the 4WD indicator light does not go off, move the vehicle slowly forward and backward.

Switching between "4H (4WD High)" and "4L (4WD Low)"



NOTE

- Operate the 4WD switch when all of the following conditions are fulfilled. If the 4WD switch is operated when the conditions are not fulfilled, a warning buzzer sounds while the 4WD indicator light and 4WD low indicator light flash (at about 1/2-second intervals) to inform the driver that switching to "4H" or "4L" is not possible.
 - The vehicle is stationary.
 - The engine speed is less than 3,000 r/min.
 - The gearshift lever is placed in the "N" position in the manual transmission model, and the selector lever is placed in the "N" position in the automatic transmission model.
- If the status before the 4WD switch operation is any of the following, a waiting time is needed before switching to "4H" or "4L" can be performed (waiting time: A maximum of approximately 3 minutes).
 - The 4WD indicator light and 4WD low indicator light flash (at about 1/2-second intervals) until switching is complete.
 - In these cases, the waiting time can be reset by turning the starter switch to the "LOCK" position.
 - The vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time with the gearshift lever in the "1 (1st)" position and the clutch pedal depressed (manual transmission model).
 - The vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time with the selector lever in the "D" position and the brake pedal depressed (automatic transmission model).

- 1. Stop the vehicle.
- On the manual transmission model, shift the gearshift lever to the "N" position and fully depress the clutch pedal.

On the automatic transmission model, shift the selector lever to the "N" position and check that the shift indicator indicates "N".

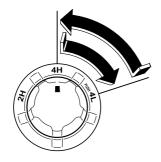
3. Select "4H" or "4L" while pressing the 4WD switch.

4. When "4H" is switched to "4L", the 4WD low indicator light comes on, and when "4L" is switched to "4H", the 4WD low indicator light goes off.



NOTE

 If the 4WD low indicator light does not come on or go off, move the vehicle slowly forward and backward.



4WD low indicator light



4510393_sec04_CONTROLS AND INSTR4-117 4-117

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Switching between "2H" and "4L (4WD Low)"

CAUTION

 Do not operate the 4WD switch while the rear wheels are spinning on a snowcovered, frozen or slippery road.



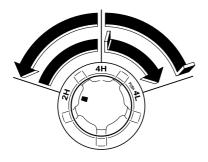
NOTE

- Operate the 4WD switch when all of the following conditions are fulfilled. If the 4WD switch is operated when the conditions are not fulfilled, a warning buzzer sounds while the 4WD indicator light and 4WD low indicator light flash (at about 1/2-second intervals) to inform the driver that switching to "2H" or "4L" is not possible.
 - The vehicle is stationary.
 - The engine speed is less than 3,000 r/min.
 - The gearshift lever is placed in the "N" position in the manual transmission model, and the selector lever is placed in the "N" position in the automatic transmission model.
- If the status before the 4WD switch operation is any of the following, a waiting time is needed before switching to "2H" or "4L" can be performed (waiting time: A maximum of approximately 3 minutes).
 - The 4WD indicator light and 4WD low indicator light flash (at about 1/2-second intervals) until switching is complete.
 - In these cases, the waiting time can be reset by turning the starter switch to the "LOCK" position.
 - The vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time with the gearshift lever in the "1 (1st)" position and the clutch pedal depressed (manual transmission model).
 - The vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time with the selector lever in the "D" position and the brake pedal depressed (automatic transmission model).

- 1. Stop the vehicle.
- 2. On the manual transmission model, shift the gearshift lever to the "N" position and fully depress the clutch pedal.

On the automatic transmission model, shift the selector lever to the "N" position and check that the shift indicator indicates "N".

3. Operate the 4WD switch to "4L" or "2H".



light

4WD indicator 4WD low indicator light





4. When "2H" is switched to "4L", the 4WD indicator light and 4WD low indicator light come on, and when "4L" is switched to "2H", the 4WD indicator light and 4WD low indicator light go off.



NOTE

 If the 4WD indicator light and 4WD low indicator light do not come on or go off, move the vehicle slowly forward and backward.

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD)

The DPD purifies diesel exhaust gases of particulate matter (PM). PM is filtered from the exhaust gas and accumulated in the DPD. When PM accumulates to level predetermined by the engine control module, the DPD automatically burns the PM in a process called regeneration. Regeneration may not be completed under certain driving conditions. If this occurs, the DPD operator regeneration indicator light will flash to prompt for the completion of DPD regeneration.

Automatic Regeneration of DPD

The DPD will regenerate itself as part of normal operation. The engine control module controls this function based on several factors. During regeneration, the engine idle speed will increase. When this occurs, the DPD is automatically regenerated. This does not indicate a failure.



ADVICE

• The DPD performs regeneration automatically when a certain amount of PM accumulates in the DPD. Regeneration occurs during driving and the DPD operator regeneration indicator light does not come on during regeneration. Depending upon driving conditions, however, the regeneration may sometimes not be completed. In this case, the DPD operator regeneration indicator light will flash, so perform operator regeneration as soon as possible according to the "Operator Regeneration Procedure". This operation recovers the function of the DPD. It does not mean that a failure has occurred.



NOTE

- In models with MID, the amount of PM accumulated in the DPD and the progress status for DPD regeneration can be displayed with the MID.
- Regeneration time may differ depending on outside temperature, engine coolant temperature and driving conditions.
- During regeneration, white smoke may be temporarily produced from the exhaust pipe. This results from combustion of PM, it does not indicate a failure.
- The engine coolant temperature may rise during regeneration.

NOTE (Continued)

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

NOTE (Continued)

- Automatic regeneration is performed under normal driving conditions, however, operator regeneration may be required under the following conditions.
 - If the vehicle is only driven at low speeds
 - If the engine is frequently started and stopped
 - If the engine frequently idles for extended periods (1 hour or more)
 - If the engine is habitually stopped before engine warming is complete

DPD PM Level → Refer to page 4-37
Progress of DPD Regeneration
→ Refer to page 4-38

Operator Regeneration of DPD

DPD operator regeneration indicator light



Steps for regenerating the DPD should be taken when the DPD operator regeneration indicator light flashes. Perform operator regeneration as soon as possible according to the "Operator Regeneration Procedure". If driving is continued with the light slowly flashing (1 Hz), the light will begin to flash more quickly (3 Hz). If driving is continued in this state for too long, the DPD may fail. Therefore, perform operator regeneration immediately according to the "Operator Regeneration Procedure".

ADVICE

 If the status of DPD regeneration continues to be incomplete, the malfunction indictor light (MIL) will come on. If this occurs, have your vehicle inspected/ serviced at your Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.



NOTE

• Depending on usage conditions, the light may begin flashing quickly (3Hz). If this occurs, perform operator regeneration immediately according to the "Operator Regeneration Procedure".

CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS

Operator Regeneration Procedure

- 1. Drive at a constant speed more than 70 km/h (45 MPH) while paying attention to the vehicle surroundings.
- 2. When vehicle speed, engine coolant temperatures and other factors are met, the DPD operator regeneration indicator light will switch from intermittent flashing to continuous illumination and DPD regeneration will begin.
- 3. Drive at as constant of a speed as possible. Operator regeneration of DPD is complete once the DPD operator regeneration indicator light will go off.



 It is not always necessary to continue driving under the conditions mentioned above. Always drive safely in accordance with road and traffic conditions.

ADVICE

 Although operator regeneration of DPD is usually completed within approximately 15 minutes, the time may differ depending on outside temperature, engine coolant temperature and driving conditions. As a guide, for completing operator regeneration in cold regions, continue driving in 4th gear (for automatic transmission models, maintaining 4th gear in manual mode) at more than 70 km/h (45 MPH) for approximately 15 minutes.



NOTE

- · During regeneration, the engine idle speed will increase.
- In models with MID, the amount of PM accumulated in the DPD and the progress status for DPD regeneration can be displayed with the MID.
- DPD regeneration process will continue even in the case of deceleration or vehicle stoppage. In addition, it is possible to turn off the engine during the process. In this case, the regeneration will stop, but the next time the engine coolant becomes warm after being started, the DPD operator regeneration indicator light will flash to prompt for the completion of DPD regeneration. If this occurs, perform operator regeneration as soon as possible according to the "Operator Regeneration Procedure".

Automatic Transmission Model
(5 Speeds) → Refer to page 4-83
DPD PM Level → Refer to page 4-37
Progress of DPD Regeneration
→ Refer to page 4-38

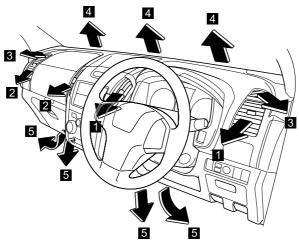
Air Outlets	5-2
Heater/Manual Air Conditioner	5-4
Automatic Air Conditioner	5-15
• Interior Lights	5-26
Overhead Console	5-28
• Sun Visor	5-29
Ticket Holder	5-29
Vanity Mirror	5-30
Cigarette Lighter	5-30
Accessory Socket	5-32
Ashtray	5-33
Small Article Storage Pocket	5-34
Small Article Storage Pocket (Passenger's Side)	5-35
Glove Compartment	5-36
Dashboard Tray	5-37

Small Article Storage Pocket (Upper Side of Dashboard)	5-37
Small Article Storage Pocket (Driver's Side)	5-38
Center Console Box	5-39
Cup Holder	5-40
Cup Holder and Small Article Storage Pocket	5-4
Bottle Holder and Small Article Storage Pocket (Front and Rear Doors)	5-43
• Grip	5-43
Coat Hook	5-44
Antenna	5-4
Steering Wheel Remote Control	5-47

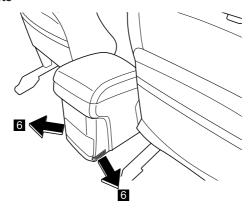
COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

Air Outlets

Front outlets



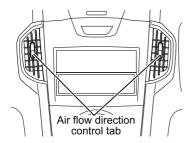
Rear seat outlets



No.	Outlet	Features
1	Driver side outlet	Air flow direction is adjustable with the tab.
2	Passenger side outlet	Air flow direction is adjustable with the tab.
3	Door windows outlet	Air is delivered towards the door windows.
4	Windshield outlet	Air is delivered towards the windshield.
5	Foot outlet	Air is delivered towards the feet.
6	Rear seat outlet (If equipped)	Air is delivered towards the rear seat.

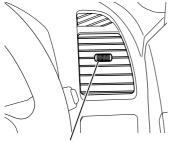
Air Flow Direction Control Tab

Front center outlet



Use the tab to control the air flow direction from the outlet. To close the outlet, move the tab fully down.

Front side outlet



Air flow direction control tab

Heater/Manual Air Conditioner

Use the heater and manual air conditioner only when the engine is running.

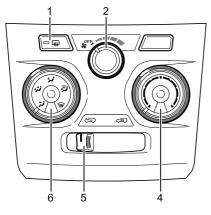


ADVICE

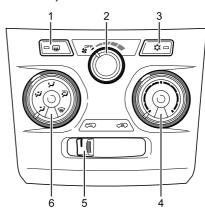
Do not use the heater or manual air conditioner when the engine is not running.
 The heater and manual air conditioner consume a lot of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.

How to Use the Controls

Model with the heater (without cooler)



Model with the air conditioner (cooler and heater)



No.	Name
1	Rear window defogger switch (if equipped)
2	Fan speed control dial
3	Air conditioning switch (A/C switch)

No.	Name		
4	Temperature control dial		
5	Air selector lever		
6	Outlet selector dial		

Rear window defogger switch (if equipped)
 Use this switch for defogging or defrosting the rear window glass. With the starter switch in the "ON" position, press the rear window defogger switch to turn on the rear window defogger. The indicator light comes on. Press the switch again to turn it off. The indicator light goes out.



ADVICE

- Do not use the rear window defogger while the engine is not running. The rear window defogger consumes a lot of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.
- Turn the switch off promptly after the rear window is defogged or defrosted.



NOTE

- Since the rear window defogger function consumes a lot of electricity, operation will automatically turn off after approximately 10 minutes of operation.
- In models with a mirror heater, press the rear window defogger switch to activate the mirror heater at the same time and defog the mirror surface.
- 2. Fan speed control dial

The fan speed can be adjusted to any of the 4 speeds that are available. To stop the air flow, return the fan speed control dial to the "OFF" position.

3. Air conditioning switch (A/C switch)
In models with an air conditioner (cooler and heater), press the A/C switch to use the air conditioning system. The indicator light inside the switch will come on to show that the air conditioning system is in operation. The indicator light will go out when the air conditioning system is not operating. The air conditioning system can also be used for dehumidifying while the heater is being used.



NOTE

- Even if the A/C switch is turned on, the air conditioning system will not operate when the fan speed control dial is placed in the "OFF" position. Make sure that the fan speed control dial is in a position other than the "OFF" position.
- In models with an air conditioner, even in seasons when the air conditioning system is not used, occasionally operate the system for a few minutes with the engine running at a low speed in order to keep the system's components lubricated.

5-6 COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

4. Temperature control dial

The interior temperature can be set as necessary. The outlet temperature will be low when the temperature control dial is set to the leftmost position, and the outlet temperature will be high when the dial is set to the rightmost position.

5. Air selector lever

Lever position	Purpose		
≈	Outside air ventilation	Use this position to ventilate the interior of the cab.	
æ	Inside air recirculation	Use this position to prevent dusty or otherwise polluted outside air from entering the cab (such as in a tunnel or in congested traffic).	



NOTE

- Extended use of the inside air recirculation position can cause the windshield and windows to fog up easily, which leads to poor visibility.
- 6. Outlet selector dial

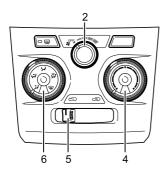
Dial position	Air delivery	Outlet
نټ	Face	Air flows through outlets 1 and 2.
نټ	Bi-level	Air flows through outlets 1, 2, 5 and 6 (if equipped).
نہو	Feet	Air flows through outlet 5 and 6 (if equipped).
i	Feet and defroster	Air flows through outlet 5, 6 (if equipped), and slightly through outlets 3 and 4.
₩	Defroster	Air flows through outlets 3 and 4.



NOTE

• When you set to the "" position, the air sent to the feet and legs is comparatively less than the air sent to the upper body.

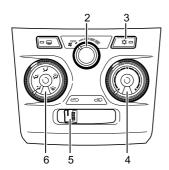
Ventilation



Outside Air Ventilation (model with the heater (without cooler))

Turn the outlet selector dial (6) to the preferred position. Move the air selector lever (5) to the "" position. Set the temperature control dial (4) to the preferred position depending on the season and climate.

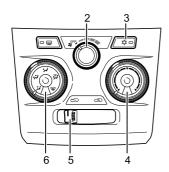
Adjust the fan speed control dial (2) to the preferred speed.

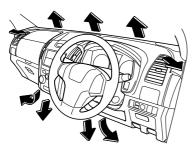


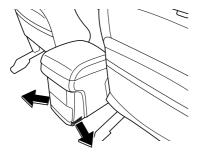
Outside Air Ventilation (model with the air conditioner (cooler and heater))

Press the A/C switch (3) to turn it off. Turn the outlet selector dial (6) to the preferred position. Move the air selector lever (5) to the "" position. Set the temperature control dial (4) to the preferred position depending on the season and climate. Adjust the fan speed control dial (2) to the preferred speed.

How to Use the Heater







Normal Heating

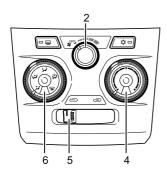
Set the outlet selector dial (6) to the """ or """ position. Use the """ position for warming your feet while defogging the windshield. Set the air selector lever (5) to the "" position. Adjust the temperature control dial (4) and the fan speed control dial (2) to the preferred positions.

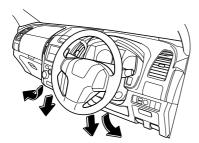
If your vehicle is equipped with an air conditioning system, to dehumidify the cab interior while heating, press the A/C switch (3) to turn it on.

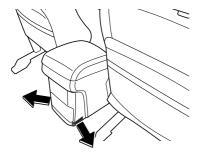


NOTE

 Because the heater uses the heat from the engine coolant, its heating effect is weak when the engine coolant temperature is low.







Maximum Heating

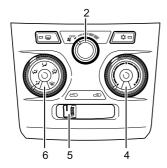
Turn the outlet selector dial (6) to the "position, set the air selector lever (5) to the "position, and turn the temperature control dial (4) fully towards the rightmost direction (high temperature direction). Set the fan speed control dial (2) to the maximum speed position.

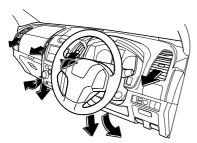


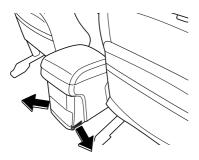
NOTE

 Extended use of the inside air recirculation position can cause the windshield and windows to fog up easily, which leads to poor visibility.

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE







Bi-level Heating

Set the outlet selector dial (6) to the "
position.

Set the air selector lever (5) to the ""
position.

Set the temperature control dial (4) to the middle position.

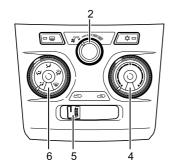
Adjust the fan speed control dial (2) as necessary.

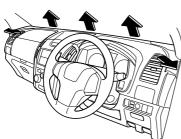


NOTE

• When you set to the "•;" position, the air sent to the feet and legs is comparatively warmer than the air sent to the upper body.

Defogging and Defrosting the Windshield





Defogging

Set the outlet selector dial (6) to the "\" position.

Set the air selector lever (5) to the "
position.

Turn the temperature control dial (4) to a right side position (high-temperature position) according to your preference. For defogging in the summer, set the temperature control dial (4) to any preferred position.

Adjust the fan speed control dial (2) as necessary.

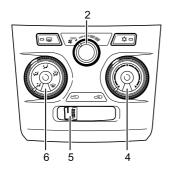
If your vehicle is equipped with an air conditioning system, using the dehumidifying effect of the system is very effective for defogging.

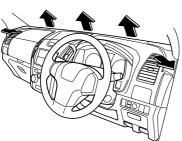


NOTE

 Do not use the maximum cooling position when operating the air conditioning system with the outlet selector dial (6) set to the "W" position. The outside surface of the windshield and windows will fog up, which leads to poor frontal visibility.

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE





Defrosting

Set the outlet selector dial (6) to the "\"position.

Set the air selector lever (5) to the "
position.

Turn the temperature control dial (4) fully towards the rightmost direction (high-temperature direction).

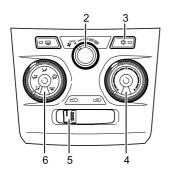
Set the fan speed control dial (2) to the maximum speed position.

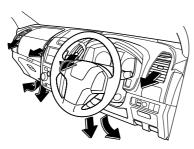


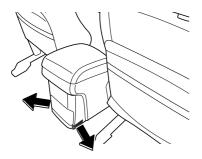
NOTE

 After defrosting, be certain to return the air selector lever (5) to the """ position. Failure to do so will cause the windshield and windows to fog up, which leads to poor frontal visibility.

Cooling (Model with the Air Conditioner)







Normal/Moderate Cooling

This setting is suitable for extended periods of cooling or moderate cooling.

Press the A/C switch (3) to turn it on.

Set the outlet selector dial (6) to the "position for normal cooling (or set it to the position for moderate cooling).

Adjust the temperature control dial (4) to the preferred position depending on the season and climate.

Adjust the fan speed control dial (2) as

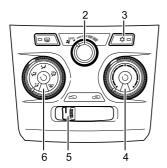


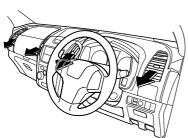
necessary.

NOTE

 When using the air conditioning system with the engine idling in extremely hot weather, place the air selector lever (5) in the "
position.

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE





Maximum Cooling

Set the outlet selector dial (6) to the "position."

Press the A/C switch (3) to turn it on. Move the air selector lever (5) to the "
position.

Turn the temperature control dial (4) fully towards the leftmost direction (low-temperature direction).

Set the fan speed control dial (2) to the maximum speed position.



NOTE

- After prolonged parking in direct sunlight, open the windows or doors to ventilate the interior of the cab and release the heat before turning the air conditioning system on.
- Prolonged use of the air conditioning system in the maximum cooling setting will make the interior air become stale. Occasionally move the air selector lever (5) to the outside air introduction position or open the windows to allow fresh air into the cab.
- During the cooling operation, mist may come out of the air outlets.
 This results from sudden cooling of humid air, and it does not indicate any problem.

Automatic Air Conditioner

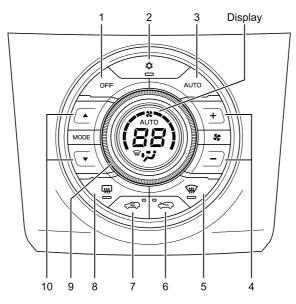
Use the automatic air conditioner only when the engine is running.



ADVICE

 Do not use the automatic air conditioner when the engine is not running. The automatic air conditioner consumes large amounts of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.

How to Use the Controls



No.	Name	
1	Automatic air conditioning off switch (OFF switch)	
2	Air conditioning switch (A/C switch)	
3	Automatic air conditioning switch (AUTO switch)	
4	Fan speed control switch	

No.	Name		
5	Windshield defroster switch		
6	Outside air ventilation switch		
7	Inside air recirculation switch		
8	Rear window defogger switch		
9	Temperature control dial		
10	Outlet selector switch (MODE switch)		

5-16 COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

- Automatic air conditioning off switch (OFF switch)
 Press this switch to stop both the fan and air conditioning system.
- 2. Air conditioning switch (A/C switch)

Press the A/C switch to use the air conditioning system while the fan is operating. The indicator light inside the switch will come on to show that the air conditioning system is in operation. The indicator light will go out when the air conditioning system is not operating. The air conditioning system can also be used for dehumidifying while the heater is being used.

To turn off the air conditioning system, press the A/C switch again. The indicator will go out and the air conditioning system will turn off.

- 3. Automatic air conditioning switch (AUTO switch) Press the AUTO switch to use the air conditioning system in the fully automatic mode. When the switch is pressed, "AUTO" is shown in the display and the system automatically selects the most suitable air outlets, fan speed and all other air conditioning parameters.
- 4. Fan speed control switch Use this switch when manually selecting the fan speed. Pressing "+" increases the fan speed and pressing "-" reduces the fan speed. The fan speed can be adjusted through 5 levels.

Fan speed	Low	Medium	Fast	Maximum
Displayed symbol				



NOTE

- Even in seasons when the air conditioning system is not used, occasionally
 operate the system for a few minutes with the engine running at a low speed in
 order to keep the system's components lubricated.
- The air conditioning system is operated by pressing the fan speed control switch.
- 5. Windshield defroster switch

Use this switch for defogging or defrosting the windshield. Pressing the switch causes the display to show the "\$\sigma\cdot\sigma\c

Displayed symbol	Purpose	Outlet
₩ ~*	Defroster	Air flows through outlets 3 and 4.

- 6. Outside air ventilation switch
 - Pressing the outside air ventilation switch causes the indicator light inside the switch to come on, and the mode switches to the outside air ventilation. Use this mode to ventilate the interior of the cab.
- 7. Inside air recirculation switch

Pressing the inside air recirculation switch causes the indicator light inside the switch to come on, and the mode switches to the inside air recirculation. Use this mode to prevent dusty or otherwise polluted outside air from entering the cab (such as in a tunnel or in congested traffic).



NOTE

- Extended use of the inside air recirculation position can cause the windshield and windows to fog up easily, which leads to poor visibility.
- 8. Rear window defogger switch Use this switch for defogging or defrosting the rear window glass. With the starter switch in the "ON" position, press the rear window defogger switch to turn on the rear window defogger. The indicator light comes on. Press the switch again to turn it off. The indicator light goes out.



ADVICE

- Do not use the rear window defogger while the engine is not running. The rear window defogger consumes a lot of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.
- Turn the switch off promptly after the rear window is defogged or defrosted.



NOTE

- Since the rear window defogger function consumes a lot of electricity, operation will automatically turn off after approximately 10 minutes of operation.
- In models with a mirror heater, press the rear window defogger switch to activate the mirror heater at the same time and defog the mirror surface.

5-18 COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

9. Temperature control dial

Use the temperature control dial for setting the preferred interior temperature. The display will show the set temperature. Each turn of the dial by one notch changes the temperature by 1°C (1.8°F). The adjustable temperature range is between 18 °C (64°F) and 32°C (90°F). If you set the temperature at 18°C (64°F), the system invariably sets the control for maximum cooling; if you set it at 32°C (90°F), the system sets the control for maximum heating.

10. Outlet selector switch (MODE switch)

The air outlet will change each time you press the MODE switch ("▲" or "▼"). The outlet currently selected will be shown on the display.

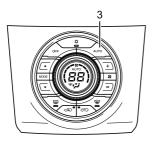
Displayed symbol	Air delivery	Outlet
نتر	Face	Air flows through outlets 1 and 2.
نټر.	Bi-level	Air flows through outlets 1, 2, 5 and 6 (if equipped).
نہ:	Feet	Air flows through outlet 5, 6 (if equipped), and a miniscule amount flows through outlets 3 and 4.
₩• , ,;	Feet and defroster	Air flows through outlet 5, 6 (if equipped), and slightly through outlets 3 and 4.



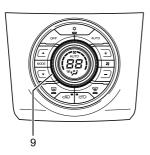
NOTE

• When you set to the "" position, the air sent to the feet and legs is comparatively less than the air sent to the upper body.

Automatic Air Conditioning Mode



 Press the AUTO switch (3). The air conditioning system will turn on, and automatically select the air outlets and fan speed most suitable for the condition of the interior of the cab. The display will then show "AUTO".

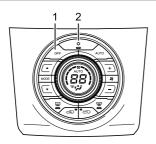


2. Use the temperature control dial (9) to set the interior temperature to the preferred level. The display will show the set temperature. Each turn of the dial by one notch changes the temperature by 1°C (1.8°F).



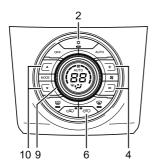
NOTE

- The number that is shown on the display shows an approximate set temperature. You may thus need finer adjustments for the preferred interior temperature.
- The adjustable temperature range is between 18°C (64°F) and 32°C (90°F). If you set the temperature at 18°C (64°F), the system invariably sets the control for maximum cooling; if you set it at 32°C (90°F), the system sets the control for maximum heating.
- Because the heater uses the heat from the engine coolant, its heating effect is weak when the engine coolant temperature is low.



3. To turn off the air conditioning system, press the A/C switch (2). To turn off both the fan and air conditioning system, press the OFF switch (1).

Manual Air Conditioning Mode



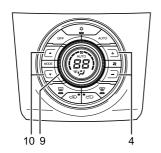
Outside Air Ventilation

Press the A/C switch (2) to turn off the air conditioning system. The indicator light inside the switch will go out.

Select the preferred settings with the

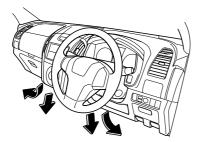
Select the preferred settings with the temperature control dial (9) and the MODE switch (10).

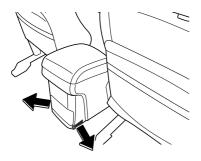
Press the outside air ventilation switch (6). The indicator light inside the switch will come on, and the mode switches to the outside air ventilation. Adjust the fan speed with the fan speed control switch (4) as necessary.





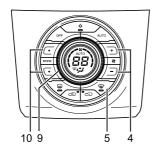
Turn the temperature control dial (9) to the maximum heating temperature (32°C (90°F)) and set the fan speed control switch (4) to the maximum speed setting by pressing "+". Select the preferred air outlets with the MODE switch (10).

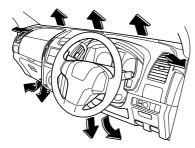


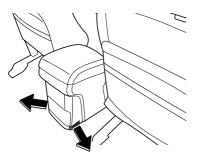




COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE







Defogging

Press the windshield defroster switch (5) to turn the defroster on. The display will show the "\$\mathbb{G}\$" sign and the indicator light inside the switch will come on. The air conditioning system starts operating.

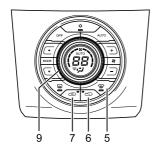
Turn the temperature control dial (9) to the preferred setting.

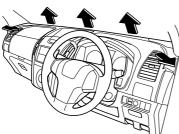
Turn the fan speed control switch (4) to the preferred setting. The efficiency of defogging will be lower when "" (inside air recirculation) is selected than when "" (outside air ventilation) is selected. Press the MODE switch (10) to select the preferred air outlets. If you press the switch so that the "" sign appears on the display, the windshield can be defogged while warming your feet as well.



NOTE

- Do not use the maximum cooling position when operating the air conditioning system with the windshield defroster switch (5) to turn the defroster on. The outside surface of the windshield and windows will fog up, which leads to poor frontal visibility.
- To defog quickly, set the temperature to a high temperature position with a high fan speed.





Defrosting

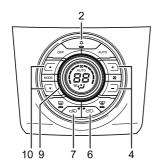
Press the windshield defroster switch (5) to turn the defroster on. The display will show the "\$\mathbb{\sigma}\end{a}\" sign and the indicator light inside the switch will come on. The air conditioning system starts operating. Turn the temperature control dial (9) to the maximum temperature position (32°C (90°F)).

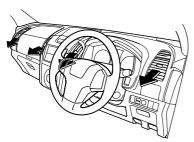
Press the inside air recirculation switch (7). The indicator light inside the switch will come on, and the mode switches to the inside air recirculation.

A CAUTION

 After defrosting, make sure to press the outside air ventilation switch (6) so that it will be switched to the outside air ventilation. Failure to do so will cause the windshield and windows to fog up, which leads to poor frontal visibility.

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE





Maximum Cooling

Turn the temperature control dial (9) to the maximum cooling position (18°C (64°F)) and turn the fan speed control switch (4) to the maximum speed setting by pressing "+". Select the preferred air outlets with the MODE switch (10) and press the inside air recirculation switch (7). The indicator light inside the switch will come on, and the mode switches to the inside air recirculation.

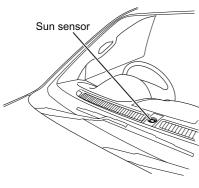
You must press the A/C switch (2) before doing the above operation to turn the air conditioning system on.



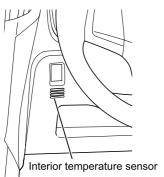
NOTE

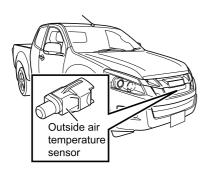
- After prolonged parking in direct sunlight, open the windows or doors to ventilate the interior of the cab and release the heat before turning the air conditioning system on.
- Prolonged use of the air conditioning system in the maximum cooling setting will make the interior air become stale. Occasionally press the outside air ventilation switch (6) to change to the outside air introduction mode or open the windows to allow fresh air into the cab.
- During the cooling operation, mist may come out of the air outlets.
 This results from sudden cooling of humid air, and it does not indicate any problem.

Temperature Sensors



The air conditioning system uses a sun sensor, interior temperature sensor and outside air temperature sensor to ensure effective and comfortable air conditioning. Do not place anything on the sensors or get them wet. Air conditioning control will become inaccurate.

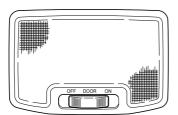




4510393_sec05_COMFORT AND CONVEN5-25 5-25

Interior Lights

Dome Light



The dome light operates regardless of the starter switch position.

ON:

The light stays on regardless of the doors being open or closed.



NOTE

- In models with a keyless entry system (radio remote control units for doorlock), the dome light will automatically turn off after approximately 20 minutes to prevent battery discharge when all the doors are securely closed with the starter switch turned from the "ON" position to another position and the dome light switch in the "ON" position.
- In models with a keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock), the light turns off in a different manner when the vehicle is locked depending on its switch position ("ON" or "DOOR").

DOOR:

The light turns on when a door is opened and off when the door is closed. In addition, in models with a keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door locks), the light also turns on and off under the following conditions.

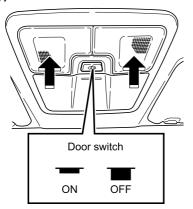
- When the starter switch is turned to a position other than the "ON" position and a door is open, closing the door will turn the light on for approximately 30 seconds, then it will turn off automatically.
- When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, opening and then closing a door will turn the light off.
- When the doors are closed, removing the key from the starter switch will turn the light on for approximately 30 seconds, then it will turn off automatically.
- When the doors are closed, turning the starter switch to the "ON" position will turn off the light.

OFF:

The light stays off regardless of the doors being open or closed.

Map Lights

Type 1



Type 1

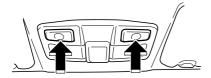
When the map light is pushed, the map light on the pushed side will come on. If it is pushed again, it will turn off.

When the door switch is "ON", they will come on in conjunction with opening/ closing of the doors.

In addition, in models with a keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door locks), the light also turns on and off under the following conditions.

- When the starter switch is turned to a
 position other than the "ON" position
 and a door is open, closing the door
 will turn the light on for approximately
 30 seconds, then it will turn off
 automatically.
- When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, opening and then closing a door will turn the light off.
- When the doors are closed, removing the key from the starter switch will turn the light on for approximately 30 seconds, then it will turn off automatically.
- When the doors are closed, turning the starter switch to the "ON" position will turn off the light.

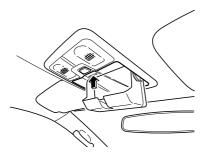
Type 2



Type 2

When the map light switch is pushed, the map light on the side the switch is pushed will come on. If the map light switch is pushed again, it will turn off.

Overhead Console



Use them for storing small articles.

Press the indented portion of the overhead console to open it.

MARNING

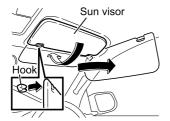
- For safety, close the overhead console lid during driving as there is a risk of injury from the open lid or from objects stored in the overhead console.
- Do not place heavy objects inside the overhead console. It is designed for storing light articles such as eyeglasses. The lid may open and objects may fall out, resulting in an accident.

(AUTION

 Do not leave eyeglasses or lighters inside the cab. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.

Sun Visor

Driver's side



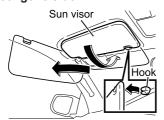
The sun visor protects your eyes in strong sunlight. Use it when sunlight is too bright. To reduce side glare, unhook the sun visor and swing it around to the side.



CAUTION

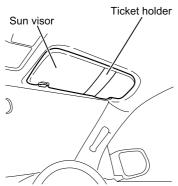
• For safety, make sure to fold up the sun visor after use.

Passenger's side



Ticket Holder

Driver's side



Use this to hold your tickets.

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

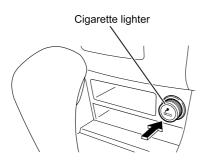
Vanity Mirror

Passenger's side



The vanity mirror is on the rear side of the front passenger's sun visor.

Cigarette Lighter



The cigarette lighter can be used when the starter switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

- 1. Push the lighter in until it locks.
- 2. When the heater element becomes hot, the lighter pops out to the original position. Pull out and use it.

MARNING

- As the lighter's tip can become extremely hot, take due precautions against burns.
- Do not leave your finger on the cigarette lighter once it has been pushed in. The lighter will overheat and be damaged or cause a fire.
- If the cigarette lighter does not pop out after more than 25 seconds, the lighter is defective. Pull out the lighter by hand immediately.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the cigarette lighter pushed in. This could cause a fire.
- As there is a burn hazard, do not touch the heater element when using the cigarette lighter.
- Do not bend the cigarette lighter. A bent lighter does not function properly and is dangerous.

A CAUTION

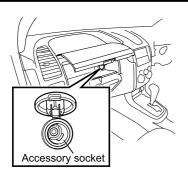
- Check with your Isuzu Dealer if you have no alternative to using the cigarette lighter socket as an accessory outlet.
- If the cigarette lighter has to be replaced, use an Isuzu genuine replacement. Do not use other cigarette lighters.
- When cleaning the cigarette lighter, do not use too much force. It may become bent.
- · Keep the cigarette lighter socket and the heater free of ash and dirt.

⊗ ADVICE

• Do not use the cigarette lighter while the engine is not running. The cigarette lighter consumes a lot of electricity and could discharge the battery completely.

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

Accessory Socket



You can use this when the starter switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.
Use it to supply power to commercially available vehicle accessories, etc. Open the cap to use. When using a commercially available electrical accessory, follow the instruction manual of the electrical accessory.

MARNING

- The maximum allowable load on the socket is 120 W (10 A).
 If you subject the socket to more than the allowable load, the wiring may overheat and cause a fire. Use the socket within the allowable load.
- The socket uses 12 V power. Connecting electrical accessories other than 12 V accessories could cause overheating and may result in a fire.
- Be sure to insert the plug of the electrical accessory all the way into the socket.
 Using an accessory when the plug is not completely inserted could cause abnormal heat generation and may result in the vehicle's fuses blowing.
- Do not insert the cigarette lighter into the socket. Doing so could generate heat.
- When not in use, be sure to attach the cap. If foreign matter enters the socket, or if water or drinks contact it, it could be damaged. Also, do not insert fingers or any metallic objects other than plugs into the socket.

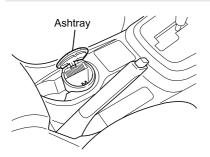
ADVICE

- · When not in use, turn off electrical accessories.
- Using the socket for a long period of time while the engine is stopped will deplete the battery.
- As the internal part of the socket may become deformed depending on the size
 of the plug used, do not attempt to force the plug into the socket. In this case,
 replace the socket.
- When inserting or removing the plug of an electrical accessory, turn the electrical accessory off or place the starter switch in the "LOCK" position.

Ashtray



- Do not put any paper trash or other flammable material in the ashtray.
- After using the ashtray, be sure to close it. If a cigarette butt has not been extinguished completely, other butts in the ashtray may catch fire.
- · Do not leave the ashtray full of cigarette butts.
- Put matches and cigarette butts in the ashtray only after they are fully extinguished.
- Never throw lit cigarette butts out the window. They not only litter the road and around but also can cause a roadside fire.



Open the lid to use.

Put out lit cigarettes on the crush-out tab. Remove the ashtray to clean it.

Small Article Storage Pocket

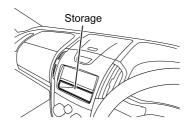
Use them for storing small articles.



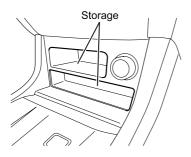
CAUTION

- Do not leave eyeglasses or lighters inside the cab. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.
- Do not place lidless containers such as paper cups containing drinks in the center console small article storage pocket. Liquid in the container could be spilled inside the vehicle.

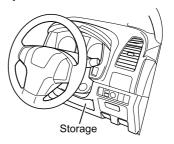
Center of instrument panel



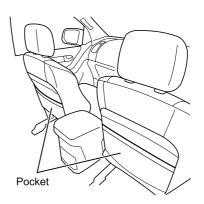
Lower part of center of instrument panel



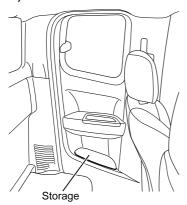
Lower part of driver's side



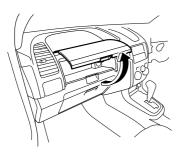
Front seatback



Side access panel (Extended cab model)



Small Article Storage Pocket (Passenger's Side)



Pull up the cover to open.

A CAUTION

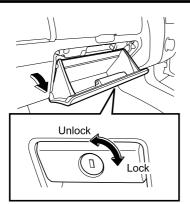
- For safety, close the small article storage pocket (passenger's side) during driving. There is a risk of injury from the open lid or items stored in the small article storage pocket (passenger's side).
- Do not leave eyeglasses or lighters inside the cab. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.

ADVICE

• Do not place an object in the small article storage pocket (passenger's side) that is so large that the lid of the compartment cannot be closed. If you attempt to close the lid in this condition, you are likely to break the lid of the small article storage pocket (passenger's side).

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

Glove Compartment



Pull the lever to open it.

Insert the key into the key lock and turn counterclockwise to unlock or clockwise to lock.

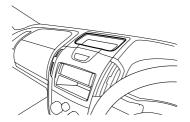
A CAUTION

- For safety, close the glove compartment during driving. There is a risk of injury from the open lid or items stored in the glove compartment.
- Do not leave eyeglasses or lighters inside the cab. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.

ADVICE

• Do not place an object in the glove compartment that is so large that the lid of the compartment cannot be closed. If you attempt to close the lid in this condition, you are likely to break the lid of the glove compartment.

Dashboard Tray



Use it for storing small articles.

A CAUTION

 Do not leave eyeglasses or lighters inside the cab. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.

Small Article Storage Pocket (Upper Side of Dashboard)



Press the button to open the lid.

CAUTION

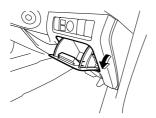
- For safety, close the small article storage pocket (upper side of dashboard) during driving. There is a risk of injury from the open lid or items stored in the small article storage pocket (upper side of dashboard).
- Do not leave eyeglasses or lighters inside the cab. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.

ADVICE

 Do not place an object in the small article storage pocket (upper side of dashboard) that is so large that the lid of the compartment cannot be closed. If you attempt to close the lid in this condition, you are likely to break the lid of the small article storage pocket (upper side of dashboard).

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

Small Article Storage Pocket (Driver's Side)



Pull towards you to open.

A CAUTION

- For safety, close the small article storage pocket (driver's side) during driving. There is a risk of injury from the open lid or items stored in the small article storage pocket (driver's side).
- Do not leave eyeglasses or lighters inside the cab. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.



ADVICE

Do not place an object in the small article storage pocket (driver's side) that
is so large that the lid of the compartment cannot be closed. If you attempt to
close the lid in this condition, you are likely to break the lid of the small article
storage pocket (driver's side).

Center Console Box



Pull up the lid to open.



CAUTION

- For safety, close the center console box during driving. There is a risk of injury from the open lid or items stored in the center console box.
- Do not leave eyeglasses or lighters inside the cab. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.



ADVICE

Do not place an object in the center console box that is so large that the lid
of the compartment cannot be closed. If you attempt to close the lid in this
condition, you are likely to break the lid of the center console box.

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

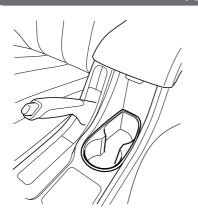
Cup Holder



CAUTION

- Do not place objects in the cup holder if they have an improper size or shape.
 Sudden braking or pulling away could cause the object to fly out of the cup holder, leading to an injury.
- Do not place a cup that is too full in the cup holder. Spillages could cause damage to the other electrical circuits. If there is a spill, wipe it up immediately with a dry cloth.

Front Side



This can be used as a cup holder.

CAUTION

 Placing a water bottle in the cup holder could interfere with driving, leading to an accident.

Rear Side



Pull towards you to open.

Cup Holder and Small Article Storage Pocket



 Do not use the small article storage pocket as an ashtray or place any ashtrays inside. Doing so is dangerous and could lead to a fire in the vehicle.

A CAUTION

- Do not place objects in the cup holder if they have an improper size or shape.
 Sudden braking or pulling away could cause the object to fly out of the cup holder, leading to an injury.
- Placing a water bottle could obscure the driver's view and interfere with driving, and this could lead to an accident.
- Do not place a cup that is too full in the cup holder. Spillages could cause damage to the radio and other electrical circuits. If there is a spill, wipe it up immediately with a dry cloth.
- There may be a danger of the cup holder and small article storage pocket breaking if the weight on it exceeds 0.75 kg (26 oz).

5-42

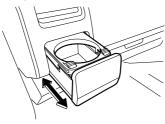
COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

Driver's side



1. Pull towards you to open.

Passenger's side



Driver's side

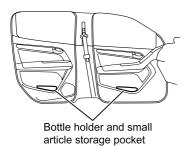


Passenger's side



- 2. If only the cup holder is returned to its original position it can be used as the small article storage pocket.
- 3. If it is used as a cup holder before being returned to its original position, it will be a cup holder when it is opened again. If it is used as a small article storage pocket before being returned to its original position, it will be a small article storage pocket when it is opened again.

Bottle Holder and Small Article Storage Pocket (Front and Rear Doors)



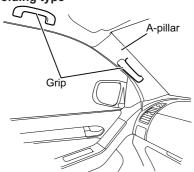
Use as a bottle holder and small article storage pocket.

CAUTION

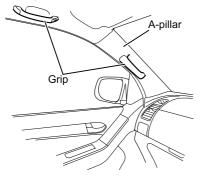
 Do not place lidless containers such as paper cups containing drinks in the bottle holder and small article storage pocket. Liquid in the container could be spilled inside the vehicle.

Grip

Folding type



Fixed type



There are grips near the top of the windows.

A-pillar grips are equipped on 2WD (High-Ride) and 4WD models.

\triangle

WARNING

 In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, if hard objects such as hangers or accessories are attached to the grip or coat hook, they may prevent normal operation of the curtain airbag and could fly off in the event of system activation.

5-44

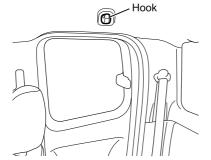
COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

Coat Hook

Crew cab model



Extended cab model



Use this to hang clothing.



- To prevent hook cracking or breakage, do not hang heavy or large objects in the coat hook.
- In models with side airbag and curtain airbag, if hard objects such as hangers or accessories are attached to the grip or coat hook, they may prevent normal operation of the curtain airbag and could fly off in the event of system activation.

Antenna



NOTE

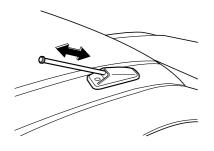
[Radio reception]

- Compared with AM signals, FM signals are of better quality and compatible
 with stereo broadcasting. However, due to the nature of FM signals, conditions
 in which the quality of signals received in a moving vehicle may not be
 sustainable.
 - The directness of FM signal transmission
 As FM signals are more strongly directional than AM signals, they are blocked
 easily by large objects such as mountains and buildings and as such their
 reception area is much narrower than AM signals.
 - Sound loss FM signals are reflected easily by objects, so when driving through built-up areas, the sound may be interrupted or disturbed by noise.
 - Sound distortion
 Simultaneous reception of direct signals from the radio station and reflected signals from buildings may cause flutter or noise disturbance.

5-46

COMFORT AND CONVENIENCE

Pillar Type



When receiving radio signals, pull the antenna out by hand to extend it to its full length.

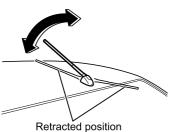


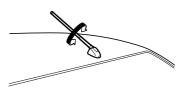
ADVICE

 To prevent breaking the antenna, shorten it when passing through areas with low clearance or a car wash, or when attaching a vehicle cover.

Center Type







When receiving radio signals, adjust the angle of the antenna as appropriate. Turn the antenna rod counterclockwise to remove it.



ADVICE

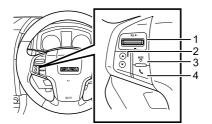
- To prevent breaking the antenna when in an automatic car wash, remove the antenna. When the antenna has been removed in order to wash the vehicle, be careful not to misplace the antenna and be sure to reinstall it before driving the vehicle again.
- To prevent breaking the antenna, retract it when passing through areas with low clearance or when attaching a vehicle cover.

Steering Wheel Remote Control

You can use the steering wheel remote control to perform various audio operations. The operations differ depending on the type of audio system that you use.



• While driving, be sure that audio control operations do not interfere with your driving.



No.	Description
1	[VOL +/-] button
2	[▲], [▼] buttons
3	[MODE] button
4	[\] button

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

6

BEFORE SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE	6-3
DAILY CHECKS	6-13
ENGINE-RELATED SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE	6-17
CHASSIS-RELATED SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE	6-45
OTHER SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE	6-81
INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR MAINTENANCE	6-97
MAINTENANCE DATA	6-105

6-3

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

BEFORE SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

 Precautions for Checking and Adjustments 	6-4
Discarded Parts, Oils and Other Liquids	6-6
Isuzu Genuine Oils and Grease	6-6
• Tools	6-7
Engine Hood	6-10



Precautions for Checking and Adjustments

Your Isuzu Dealer has factory trained technicians and Isuzu genuine parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see your Isuzu Dealer.



- To help avoid personal injury, take care when doing any maintenance or making any check or repair. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for all materials used during service and maintenance of this vehicle. If used or handled improperly, they may be hazardous. Improper or incomplete service can also affect the vehicle and result in personal injury, or damage to the vehicle or its equipment. If you have any questions about carrying out some service, contact an Isuzu Dealer.
- Make sure to turn off the engine and remove the key from the starter switch before performing any checks.
- Pull firmly on the parking brake lever and put the transmission in neutral.
 - If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, make sure the gearshift lever is in "N" position.
 - If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, place the selector lever in "P" position and make sure the shift indicator displays "P".
- Select a place with a solid and level surface to perform the checking and maintenance work. Make sure to chock the wheels. It would be very dangerous if the vehicle started to move.
- To prevent personal injury, keep hands, tools and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan when the engine is running.
- When raising the vehicle, use a suitable jack, not the one provided on the vehicle.
- After raising the vehicle and before going underneath to perform work, make sure the vehicle is supported with jack stands.
- When performing work on the electrical system, begin by turning the starter switch to the "LOCK" position, wait at least 1 minute, and then disconnect the negative cable from the negative terminal on battery. If the negative cable is disconnected within 1 minute, the engine control module may malfunction.
- The engine, exhaust pipe, radiator and power steering fluid reserve tank will be hot immediately after the vehicle is driven. In addition, the oil and fluids will also be hot. Be careful around these parts to prevent burns. Perform all checks when the engine is cold.
- Do not perform work near an open flame or other heat sources.

WARNING (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- When working on the fuel line or fuel filter, remove the fuel tank filler cap. The fuel system is under pressure and the fuel will overspill unless the pressure is relieved, possibly leading to combustion or a fire.
- Do not let the engine run in poorly ventilated garages or sheds. This could cause carbon monoxide poisoning, resulting in death.
- Hands, tools, or clothing could become entangled in the belts while the
 engine is in operation. Do not allow them to come close to the engine (remove
 wristwatches, neckties, rings, etc.).
- Fuel and batteries generate flammable gas that could explode. Do not use fire and avoid creating sparks.
- Protect your eyes with protective goggles from oil, fluids, and falling objects.
- · Use only Isuzu genuine parts for replacement parts.

A CAUTION

- Discarded parts, oil, grease and fluids could have an adverse effect on the environment. It is difficult to dispose of these, so have your Isuzu Dealer handle all checks and replacements.
- Oils, brake fluid, battery fluid and engine coolant have lubrication, cooling
 and rust prevention functions. If these liquids deteriorate through loss or
 contamination, it will cause a decline in the performance of the parts and such
 problems as seizure or malfunctioning. Replenish or change these liquids when
 performing the checks (daily and periodic checks) as required by the relevant
 regulations or in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule (when either the
 specified driving distance or period of time, whichever comes first, has expired).

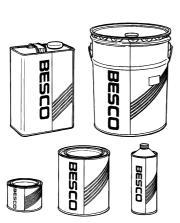
ADVICE

- · Use only appropriate tools.
- Confirm that all systems and components are normal after performing the work.
- Do not leave the removed parts or tools in the engine compartment. They could damage the equipment if caught in the belts or other moving components.
- Dirty water, dirt and other impurities seriously impair the effectiveness of the oil, grease and fluids, and damage the parts. Exercise all due caution to prevent waste or other refuse from coming in contact with parts or materials that have been removed when changing or replenishing them.

Discarded Parts, Oils and Other Liquids

- When changing oils, filters, engine coolant or other liquids, be sure to have a container ready in advance for their disposal.
- Use methods conforming to legal requirements for discarding or disposing of parts, oils, filters or engine coolant after change or replacement.

Isuzu Genuine Oils and Grease



Periodically replenishing and changing the oil and grease is extremely important for maintaining your vehicle's performance and preventing malfunctions.

Isuzu Motors guarantees the quality and performance of the Isuzu genuine oils and grease. We recommend the use of Isuzu genuine oils and grease for maintenance and service of your vehicle.

A CAUTION

 Flames or other heat sources near spilled oil can cause a fire. Make sure to clean up all oil spills.

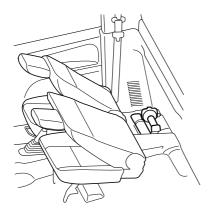
Tools



ADVICE

- It is recommended that you familiarize yourself with the contents and use of the various tools and the jack before using them.
- After finishing work with the tools, return them to the correct storage location and ensure that they will not move while the vehicle will be in motion.
- Store the jack in its original position and turn the jack socket clockwise so that it is secured (as a guide, with a force of **0.5 N·m** (0.05 kgf·m/**0.36 lb·ft**)).

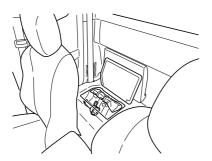
Storage Location



Regular Cab Model

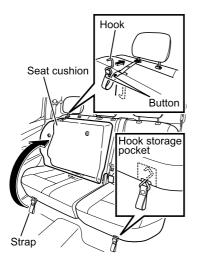
The jack and tools are positioned behind the right seat. Tilt the seatbacks forward to take out the jack and tools. To remove the jack, turn the jack socket counterclockwise so that the ram is lowered away from the holder. Remove the jack when the ram is fully lowered.

Driver's Seat → Refer to page 3-37



Extended Cab Model

The jack and tools are positioned in the storage compartment behind the right front seat. Open the cover to take out the jack and tools. To remove the jack, turn the jack socket counterclockwise so that the ram is lowered away from the holder. Remove the jack when the ram is fully lowered.





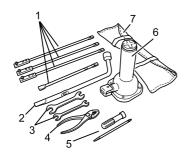
Crew Cab Model

The jack and tools are positioned under the right rear seat. Pull the strap forward to raise the seat cushion. Remove the hook of the strap edge from the strap button and secure the hook to the headrest stay. To remove the jack, turn the jack socket counterclockwise so that the ram is lowered away from the holder. Remove the jack when the ram is fully lowered.

MARNING

- Do not raise the seat cushion while driving.
- When raising the seat cushion, the hook of seat cushion strap must be secured to the headrest stay to keep the seat cushion locked safely in the storage position.
- When returning the seat cushion to its original position, hold the seat cushion and slowly lay it down.
 Finally, try to move the seat cushion to check that it is completely locked.
- After returning the seat cushion to its original position, do not forget to return the hook to the hook storage pocket.
- When returning the seat cushion to its original position, make sure the seat belt does not get trapped. In addition, make sure the seat belt lays on top of the seat cushion after returning the seat cushion to its original position.

Tools Carried in Your Vehicle



No.	Tool name
1	Jack bar/Spare tire removal bar
2	Wheel nut wrench (Jack handle)
3	Spanner
4	Pliers
5	Screwdriver (with switchable Phillips and flat heads)
6	Jack
7	Tool bag



ADVICE

• Be sure to carry all of the provided tools in the vehicle.

Engine Hood

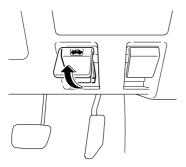


- Keep your hands and clothing away from the moving fan and engine drive belts when the engine is running.
- Upon inserting the support rod into the hood slot, make sure that the rod supports the hood securely to prevent injuries due to unexpected and sudden closing of the hood.
- Do not open the engine hood when steam is coming out of the engine compartment.



ADVICE

• Do not open the engine hood with the wiper arms standing. The wiper arms and engine hood may be damaged.



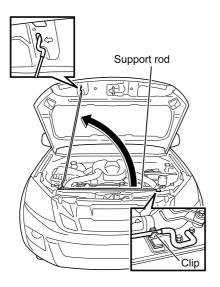
To Open

Pull the engine hood release lever.
 The lock is released, and the front edge of the engine hood will rise.



Insert a hand into the space at the front edge of the engine hood, push the safety latch upward and release the lock to open the engine hood.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE



Remove the support rod from the clip, and then install the support rod edge hook into the groove of the engine hood.

To Close



• The engine hood is very heavy. When you close the engine hood, be careful not to trap your hands or anything else.

ADVICE

- Do not drop the engine hood from a height of over 60 cm (23.6 in). The engine hood and radiator grille may be damaged by the impact.
- 1. Remove the support rod from the groove of the engine hood and install it into the clip.
- 2. Lower the engine hood slowly, and release your hands at a height of approximately 20 to 25 cm (7.9 to 9.8 in).
- 3. Gently push and pull the edge of the engine hood to make sure that it has been securely locked in place.

MARNING

 Do not drive unless the engine hood is complete closed. Driving with the engine hood open could lead to an accident. Before driving, confirm that the engine hood is securely locked.

6-13

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

DAILY CHECKS

Daily Checks (Preoperational Checks)	6-14
Checking Components that Showed Abnormalities during Previous Operation	g 6-16

6-14 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Daily Checks (Preoperational Checks)

Check your vehicle for the items listed below before starting the day's operation to ensure safe, trouble-free operation. Also, make note of the distance the vehicle has covered and the conditions under which the vehicle has been operated to be able to determine the inspection intervals most appropriate for your specific vehicle and adequately service it according to inspection results.

If the checks reveal an abnormality or if there are components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation, have the vehicle repaired by your Isuzu Dealer before using the vehicle.

Daily Check (Preoperational Check) Items

[1. Checking components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation]

operation	
Check item	Reference page
Checking components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation	6-16

[2. Checks performed with the engine hood opened]

Check item	Reference page
Fan belt looseness and damage	6-36
Engine oil level	6-20
Engine coolant level and radiator cap looseness	6-30
Power steering fluid level	6-79
Brake fluid level (For a manual transmission model, brake fluid doubles as clutch fluid.)	6-46, 6-76
Windshield washer fluid level	6-82
Battery fluid level	6-87

[3. Checks performed in the driver's seat]

Check item	Reference page
Brake pedal free play	6-48
Operation of meters, gauges and warning/indicator lights	4-10, 4-17
Engine startability, abnormal noise and color of exhaust gases	6-18
Parking brake lever stroke	6-51
Windshield washer fluid spray condition and windshield wiper effectiveness	6-82, 6-83
Rearview mirror condition	3-46
Steering wheel free play and mounting condition	3-45, 6-78
Operation of horn and turn signal lights	4-67, 4-73
Fuel level	4-15
Operation of door locks	3-7, 3-15

[4. Checks performed during a walk around the vehicle]

[one one periodical data and an entire transfer of		
Check item	Reference page	
Illumination, flashing or for stained or damaged lights	6-86	
Suspension springs damage	_	
Leakage of oil, engine coolant, fuel, brake fluid, and power steering fluid	_	

[5. Checking wheels and tires]

Check item	Reference page
Air pressure	6-52
Cracks and other damage	6-54
Abnormal wear	6-54
Tread depth	6-54
Disc wheel mounting condition	6-55

[6. Checks performed while driving the vehicle]

Check item	Reference page
Brake effectiveness	6-50
Driving condition at low speeds and during acceleration	6-19



Checking Components that Showed Abnormalities during Previous Operation



Check the components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation. Have any abnormalities repaired by your Isuzu Dealer before using the vehicle.

6-17

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

ENGINE-RELATED SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Engine Conditions	6-18
Engine Oil	6-20
Engine Coolant	6-30
Handling the Radiator and Intercooler	6-35
Fan Belt and Air Conditioning Compressor Belt	6-36
Air Cleaner	6-38
• Fuel Filter	6-41



Engine Conditions

Checking the Engine for Startability and Abnormal Conditions

- 1. Make sure the parking brake is securely engaged. Step firmly on the brake pedal.
- If your vehicle is a manual transmission model, check that the gearshift lever is in the "N" position, and fully depress the clutch pedal.
 In an automatic transmission model, check that the selector lever is in the "P" position, and firmly depress the brake pedal.



CAUTION

- If your vehicle is equipped with the automatic transmission, the engine will not start unless the transmission is actually in "P" or "N" position.
- For safety, firmly press the brake pedal before starting the engine.
- Turn the starter switch to start the engine.
 Check that the engine starts quickly without any abnormal conditions (abnormal noises, vibration, etc.). If there are any abnormalities, stop the engine and contact your nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Starting the Engine

→ Refer to page 4-4

Checking Condition of the Engine at Low Speeds and during Acceleration



- Make sure that the parking brake lever is fully pulled.
 If your vehicle is a manual transmission model, make sure that the gearshift lever is in the "N" position and then depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal fully.
 In an automatic transmission model, make sure that the selector lever is in the "P" position and then depress the brake pedal fully.
- 2. Turn the starter switch to start the engine, and run it to warm up.

Starting the Engine

→ Refer to page 4-4

- Check that the engine is running at a speed within the standard idle speed range.
- 4. Drive the vehicle, making sure the accelerator pedal does not stick when gradually accelerating, the engine speed rises smoothly and it does not knock. If there are any abnormalities (accelerator pedal sticking, rough engine acceleration, knocking, etc.), stop your vehicle at a safe place, stop the engine, and contact your nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Engine Oil

Engine oil is an important factor in determining engine performance and longevity. Be sure to use only specified oil and oil filter. The engine oil level must be checked and the oil and oil filter should be regularly changed at the same time according to the Maintenance Schedule.



NOTE

• When particulate matter (PM) has accumulated to a preset level in the diesel particulate defuser (DPD), the DPD is automatically regenerated through combustion. To make this regeneration (combustion) possible, a small amount of fuel is injected into the engine combustion chamber after combustion. A small amount of the injected fuel gradually mixes with the engine oil, and the engine oil level rises beyond the original level. This does not indicate an engine malfunction. If the engine oil level exceeds the specified level, change the engine oil even if the regular oil change period on the Maintenance Schedule has not arrived yet.

Engine Oil Indicator Light

→ Refer to page 4-47

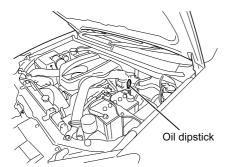
Maintenance Schedule

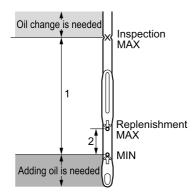
→ Refer to page 6-106

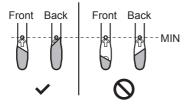
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and

Diesel Fuels → Refer to page 6-111

Checking the Engine Oil Level







Perform the engine oil level check on a flat surface while the engine is cold before starting it. If the engine has already been started, stop it after it has sufficiently warmed and wait 30 minutes or more before performing.

- 1. Remove the oil dipstick and wipe off any oil on the oil dipstick.
- 2. Reinsert the oil dipstick fully and then gently remove it.
- Check the front and back of the oil dipstick. If the highest position is between the "MIN" and "Inspection MAX" marks (range 1), the oil is at the correct level.
 - If the oil level is below the "MIN" mark, add oil by following the procedures detailed on the following pages.
 - If the oil level is beyond the "Inspection MAX" mark, have engine oil replacement performed at your Isuzu Dealer. If you perform replacement yourself, please replace the oil by following the procedures detailed on the following pages.

ADVICE

- If the oil level is higher than the "MIN" mark, there is a sufficient amount of oil. In this case, the engine oil supply does not need to be replenished.
- Reinstall the oil dipstick into position after checking the oil level.

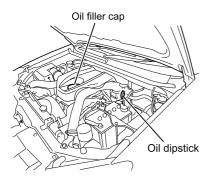
6-22 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

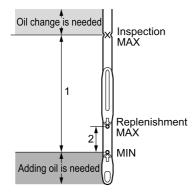


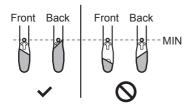
ADVICE

- Any oil level above the "Inspection MAX" mark on the oil dipstick may cause engine malfunctions. Change the oil whenever its level exceeds the "Inspection MAX" mark.
- Fuel will gradually become mixed with the engine oil, thinning it out. Be sure to change the oil at the specified intervals.
- The oil level read by the oil dipstick changes depending on the amount of time
 that elapses after the engine is turned off. In order to confirm the correct oil
 level, perform the check while the engine is cold before starting it. If the engine
 has already been started, stop it after it has sufficiently warmed and wait 30
 minutes or more before performing.

Adding the Engine Oil







If the oil level is found to be below the "MIN" mark on the oil dipstick as a result of the oil level inspection, add engine oil by following the procedure below.

Add engine oil on a flat surface while the engine is cold before starting it. If the engine has already been started, stop it after it has sufficiently warmed and wait 30 minutes or more before performing.

- 1. Clean around the oil filler cap so that foreign matter does not enter.
- 2. Remove the oil filler cap.
- Fill with 0.3 liters (0.08 US gal./0.07 Imp gal.) of the specified oil through the oil filler.
- 4. Install the oil filler cap.
- 5. Wait 5 minutes or more without starting the engine.
- 6. Remove the oil dipstick and wipe off any oil on the oil dipstick.
- 7. Reinsert the oil dipstick fully and then gently remove it.
- Check the front and back of the oil dipstick. If the highest position is higher than the "MIN" mark, the oil is at the correct level.
 - If the "Replenishment MAX" mark is exceeded, drain oil until the level is between the "MIN" and "Replenishment MAX" marks (range 2).
 - If below the "MIN" mark, return to Step 2 and repeat the procedure for adding 0.3 liters (0.08 US gal./0.07 Imp gal.) of the specified oil.
- 9. Reinstall the oil dipstick into position after checking the oil level.

6-24 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

MARNING

- When adding oil, be careful not to spill any, but keep a workshop rag handy just in case there are any spills. If any oil should spill onto the engine, carefully wipe it away. If this precaution is not taken, the spilled oil could ignite and a fire could spread.
- Do not leave flammable items, such as rags or gloves, in the engine compartment. They could cause a fire.
- The engine oil and the area surrounding the engine are hot immediately after engine operation, so be careful of burns.

⊘ ADVICE

- The oil level read by the oil dipstick changes depending on the amount of time
 that elapses after the engine is turned off. In order to confirm the correct oil
 level, perform the check while the engine is cold before starting it. If the engine
 has already been started, stop it after it has sufficiently warmed and wait 30
 minutes or more before performing.
- Prevent dirt from entering the oil filler when filling with oil. If foreign matter mixes with the oil, it could damage the engine.
- Always use low ash content engine oil. Failing to do so could result in DPD failure



NOTE

• If the oil level is above the "MIN" mark, there is a sufficient amount of oil.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

Engine oil and the oil filter are important factors in determining engine performance and longevity. Be sure to use only specified oil and oil filter. The engine oil level must be checked and the oil and oil filter should be regularly changed at the same time according to the Maintenance Schedule.



 Hot engine oil can cause severe skin burns. Allow the engine to cool before draining the engine oil.

ADVICE

- Use the oil quantities indicated below only as guidelines when changing the engine oil. After changing the oil, make sure the oil is at the required level.
- Always use low ash content engine oil. Also, do not use engine oil additives. Failing to do so could result in DPD failure.

Quantity of engine oil to be changed

Engine model	Oil quantity [Reference value]
	When changing oil and filter
4JK1 (2WD)	5.4 liters (1.43 US gal./ 1.19 lmp gal.)
4JK1 (4WD)	5.9 liters (1.56 US gal./ 1.30 lmp gal.)

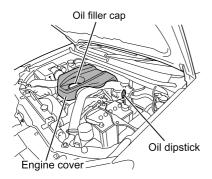
Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

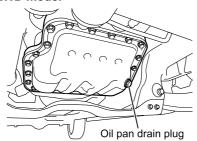
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Diesel Fuels → Refer to page 6-111

6-26

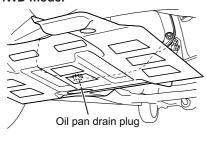
SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

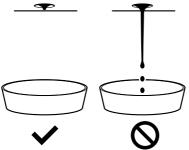


2WD model



4WD model





Changing the Oil and Oil Filter

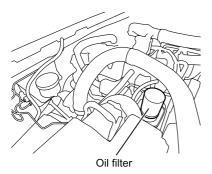
Change the engine oil and oil filter on a flat surface while the engine is cold before starting it. If the engine has already been started, stop it after it has sufficiently warmed, wait 30 minutes or more, and perform after confirming that the oil has sufficiently cooled.

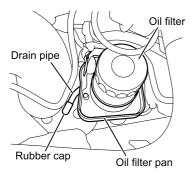
- 1. Remove the engine cover.
- 2. Clean around the oil filler cap so that foreign matter does not enter.
- 3. Remove the oil filler cap.
- Place a container for receiving the oil beneath the oil pan. Remove the oil pan drain plug to discharge the oil into the container.
- Wait until the flow of oil stops and the oil pools into a drop inside the oil pan drain hole.



ADVICE

- If the engine oil is not sufficiently drained from the oil pan, the oil level may be too high when oil is replenished.
- Drained oil must be disposed of in a method conforming to the regulatory requirements in your country.





- 6. Remove the oil filter in one of the following procedures:
 - When replacing the oil filter without using a drain hose, use the special oil filter wrench to remove the oil filter

When the oil from the oil filter spills out into the oil filter pan, remove the oil from the oil filter pan. Wipe away any spilled oil with a workshop rag, etc.

- When replacing the oil filter using a drain hose, remove the rubber cap attached to the end of the drain pipe for the oil filter pan and attach a commercially available drain hose to the drain pipe before removing the oil filter. Then, place a container under the end of the drain hose after pulling the hose to the bottom of the engine.

Use the special oil filter wrench to remove the oil filter.

Drain any oil remaining in the oil filter pan from the drain hose into the container. After oil drainage is complete, remove the drain hose and attach the rubber cap. Wipe away any spilled oil with a workshop rag, etc.



ADVICE

 Drained oil must be disposed of in a method conforming to the regulatory requirements in your country.



NOTE

• Engine oil will spill out from the removed oil filter, so catch the engine oil with a workshop rag, etc.

- 7. Lightly coat the gasket of the new oil filter with clean engine oil.
- 8. Wipe the attachment surface of the oil filter clean with a rag, etc.
- Install the new oil filter. After the filter gasket comes in contact with the surface to which it will be attached, use the special oil filter wrench and tighten it by a 2/3 (two thirds) turn.



ADVICE

- When installing the oil filter, make sure the gasket is not caught in the screw threads. This could cause oil leaks.
- Replace the oil pan drain plug gasket. Reinstall and tighten the oil pan drain plug.

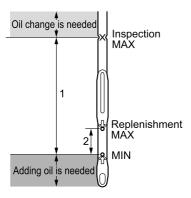
Drain plug tightening torque

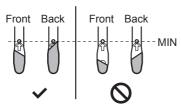
44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m/33 lb·ft)



ADVICE

- The dirt on the plug must be wiped off before reinstalling it.
- 11. Measure the specified quantity of the specified oil.
- Remove the oil dipstick and pour the specified quantity of oil once from the oil filler.
- 13. Install the oil dipstick and the oil filler cap.
- 14. Wait 5 minutes or more without starting the engine.





- 15. Remove the oil dipstick and wipe off any oil on the oil dipstick.
- 16. Reinsert the oil dipstick fully and then gently remove it.
- 17. Check the front and back of the oil dipstick. If the highest position is higher than the "MIN" mark, the oil is at the correct level.
 - If the "Replenishment MAX" mark is exceeded, drain oil until the level is between the "MIN" and "Replenishment MAX" marks (range 2).
- 18. Reinstall the oil dipstick into position after checking the oil level.
- 19. Reinstall the engine cover.

MARNING

- Bringing flames or other heat sources near spilled engine oil could cause a fire. Make sure to wipe it all up.
- Do not leave flammable items, such as rags or gloves in the engine compartment. They could be the cause of a fire. Also, do not forget your tools.

ADVICE

• Do not start the engine until the oil level has been checked, because it will become impossible to confirm the correct oil level.

NOTE

• If the oil level is above the "MIN" mark, there is a sufficient amount of oil.

Engine Coolant

The engine cooling system is a device for keeping the engine temperature at an appropriate level.

The engine coolant must be changed according to the Maintenance Schedule.

Have engine coolant replacement performed at an Isuzu Dealer.

Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Diesel Fuels → Refer to page 6-111



- Check, replenish or change the engine coolant only after the engine has sufficiently cooled down.
- Do not loosen or remove the cap of the radiator or reserve tank cap when the engine coolant is still hot. Hot vapor or boiling water may burst out and cause a burn. Cover the cap with a cloth, etc. and remove it gradually after the engine is fully cooled down and the temperature of the engine coolant becomes low.
- When removing the radiator cap or reserve tank cap, use a thick cloth to cover the cap and turn it slowly.
- Engine coolant is toxic and must not be ingested. If the engine coolant is mistakenly ingested, immediately vomit it and seek prompt medical attention.
- If the engine coolant gets in your eyes, rinse it off immediately with a large amount of water for 15 minutes or longer. Also, if still abnormality such as irritation is felt, seek medical attention.
- If the engine coolant gets on your skin, rinse it off using a soap with a large amount of water. Also, if abnormality is seen, seek medical attention.
- Engine coolant is flammable, and therefore, it must be kept away from flames
 and other heat sources. Engine coolant also could ignite if it comes in contact
 with a hot surface, such as the exhaust manifold. Exercise caution to prevent
 this from happening.



ADVICE

Replace the engine coolant periodically.
 If the engine coolant is not replaced periodically, rust is generated due to degradation of the engine coolant, which may cause a failure such as water leakage or clogging of the radiator or heater core.



NOTE

 Engine coolant is fluid which is made by mixing coolant and water at an appropriate concentration.

Preparing Engine Coolant

To prevent the engine damage due to freezing of the engine coolant and to protect the cooling system from corrosion, mix the Isuzu recommended coolant and water to be an appropriate concentration.

Outside temperature	Coolant concentration*
-30°C (-22°F) or above	50%

* Direct use of "50/50 Pre-diluted" product which is already diluted to 50% concentration is recommended.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Diesel Fuels → Refer to page 6-111



ADVICE

- Isuzu does not guarantee the use of the engine or vehicle at the outside temperature of -30°C (-22°F) or below.
- However, if the engine or vehicle is used at the outside temperature of -30°C (-22 °F) or below, the coolant concentration of 55% is recommended.

MARNING

- Coolant is toxic and must not be ingested. If the coolant is mistakenly ingested, immediately vomit it and seek prompt medical attention.
- If the coolant gets in your eyes, rinse it off immediately with a large amount of water for 15 minutes or longer. Also, if still abnormality such as irritation is felt, seek medical attention.
- If the coolant gets on your skin, rinse it off using a soap with a large amount of water. Also, if abnormality is seen, seek medical attention.
- For storage, close the cap securely and keep it in a place inaccessible to children.
- Coolant is flammable, and therefore, it must be kept away from flames and other heat sources. Coolant also could ignite if it comes in contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust manifold. Exercise caution to prevent this from happening.

6-32 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

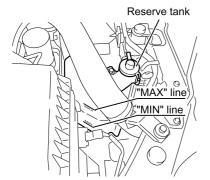


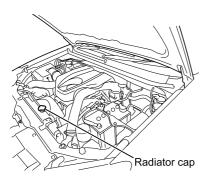
- · Use only an Isuzu recommended coolant.
- Using any coolant other than that Isuzu recommended could cause damage
 to the engine, radiator or heater core. In particular, use of coolants containing
 borate salts or silicates may result in engine or radiator corrosion, causing
 engine coolant leaks and other problems.

ADVICE

- To dilute the coolant, use distilled water or deionized water.
- Do not use the coolant at any coolant concentration other than that specified. If the coolant concentration is 60% or higher, overheating is likely to occur, while if it is 30% or lower, anti-corrosion function is not provided sufficiently.
- Using coolant at any coolant concentration other than that specified may reduce anti-freezing performance, and engine coolant may freeze.
- If the engine coolant decreases rapidly, go immediately to the nearest Isuzu Dealer for a check or repair.
- Do not introduce additives to engine coolant other than coolant.

Checking the Engine Coolant Level





The reserve tank is located at the front right side of the engine compartment. When the engine has cooled down, make sure that the engine coolant level in the reserve tank is between the "MAX" and "MIN" line. In addition, remove the radiator cap and check that the engine coolant is full to the filler neck. Check the engine coolant level only when it is cold.

Engine Hood → Refer to page 6-10



CAUTION

 The radiator cap opens and closes in double action. When removing the radiator cap, take caution not to damage the cap and the filler neck.

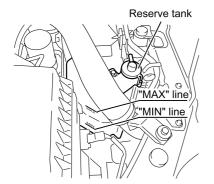
Also, check to make sure there are no leaks from the radiator or radiator hose. Check for fluid or stains on the ground showing leaks where the vehicle is parked. Contact your Isuzu Dealer when you discover leaks.



CAUTION

• Using the vehicle when there are leaks can lead to engine seizure.

Adding the Engine Coolant



When the engine coolant level in the reserve tank is below the "MIN" line, open the tank cap and fill to near the "MAX" line with engine coolant. Tighten the cap securely after the engine coolant has been replenished.

Engine Hood → Refer to page 6-10

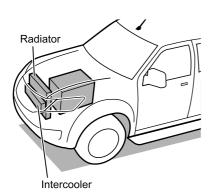


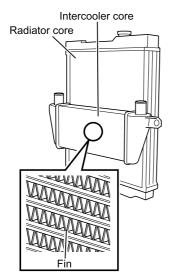
 Check, replenish or change the engine coolant only after the engine has sufficiently cooled down.

₩ ADVICE

- · Do not overfill the reserve tank.
- Check the reserve tank to determine engine coolant level. In situations, however, where the level in the reserve tank rises or falls suddenly, open the radiator cap and check the level within the radiator itself.
- When the engine is still hot, take care to prevent engine coolant from contact with the exhaust manifold. Any such contact could result in exhaust manifold damage.
- If the level of engine coolant changes rapidly, have your vehicle inspected at your Isuzu Dealer.

Handling the Radiator and Intercooler





Cleaning the Radiator Core and Intercooler Core

Cooling efficiency is compromised when there is dirt or dust plugging air passages in the radiator core and intercooler core. This can also cause corrosion of these cores. Periodically wash the radiator core and intercooler core with tap water.

MARNING

- Before cleaning cores, make sure to turn the engine off and remove the key from the starter switch.
- The area around the engine is extremely hot immediately after vehicle operation, so wait until the vehicle has cooled down before cleaning. Otherwise, you could be burned.

A CAUTION

- When washing the radiator core and intercooler core, make sure that they have sufficiently cooled. Otherwise, the cores could be damaged.
- Do not clean the radiator, intercooler and their surrounding areas using water that is supplied under high pressure. Doing so may cause damage.
- When cleaning the radiator core and intercooler core, do not crush or damage the fins.
- The fins are very fragile so be careful not to bend them out of shape. If they become deformed, their cooling efficiency will be impaired.

CAUTION (Continued)

CAUTION (Continued)

- Before cleaning, take steps to ensure that no water will splash onto the surrounding electrical components and wires.
- If stubborn dirt still remains even after the radiator core and intercooler core have been cleaned, have the vehicle inspected and serviced at your Isuzu Dealer.

Fan Belt and Air Conditioning Compressor Belt

\triangle

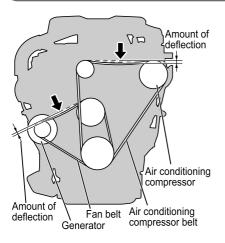
CAUTION

- A V-ribbed belt is used for the fan belt. This type of belt requires the tension
 to be adjusted more accurately than is required with the conventional V belt.
 Inappropriate tension could cause the belt to make noise or break. When the
 fan belt is damaged, electricity is not properly generated or becomes a cause of
 engine overheating. You must check the tension of the fan belt carefully.
- Inappropriate tension could cause the belt to make noise or break. You must check the tension of the air conditioning compressor belt carefully.
- Use Isuzu genuine parts when changing the fan belt.

[Follow this to properly adjust belt tension]

- Adjust the belt using the following method after installing either a new or used belt.
 - Inspect the belt before starting the engine or 30 minutes after turning off the engine to cool down.
 - Align the belt and pulley grooves and adjust the belt tension using the indicated method.
 - Start the engine, and let it idle for about 1 minute to equalize the tension of the belt at all spans between the pulleys.
 - Stop the engine, and then check the belt tension. If the tension is inappropriate, readjust it to the specified standard value.
 - Use the new belt tension specification only after replacing the belt with a new one.

Inspection



Press the center of the span between pulleys (see the figure) of the belt with a force of **98 N** (10.0 kgf/**22 lb**) and check the amount of deflection. The amount of deflection must fall within the standard value range indicated below. Otherwise, adjust the tension.

When inspecting by vibration frequency, place and hold the sensor mike surface parallel to the belt 10 mm (0.39 in) from the center of the span between pulleys (indicated by the arrow) and tap the belt with a handle of screwdriver etc. to make the belt vibrated and measure the value. Measure the value 2 or 3 times and calculate the average value. The average value must be within the standard value range indicated below. Otherwise, adjust the tension.

Also check the belt for cracks or other damage. If there are cracks or damage or if the inspected value is not within the standard value range, replace the belt. Have adjustment and replacement of the fan belt or the air conditioning compressor belt performed at an Isuzu Dealer.

	Standard value [amount of deflection]	Standard value [vibration frequency]	
Fan belt	7.7 - 8.5 mm/0.30 - 0.33 in (New belt: 5.4 - 6.6 mm/0.21 - 0.26 in)*	160 - 174 Hz (New belt: 188 - 210 Hz)*	
Air conditioning compressor belt	16.5 - 19.1 mm/0.65 - 0.75 in (New belt: 12.5 - 16.5 mm/0.49 - 0.65 in)*	79 - 91 Hz (New belt: 92 - 112 Hz)*	

^{*:} The values in parentheses are the adjusted values for replacement with a new belt.

Air Cleaner

Use of clogged air cleaner element not only causes a deterioration in the engine output but also increased fuel consumption. The air cleaner element should be serviced in the following manner.

The air cleaner element must be inspected and changed according to the Maintenance Schedule. Have air cleaner element replacement performed at an Isuzu Dealer.



ADVICE

- Be sure to use an Isuzu genuine air cleaner element.
- The cover should be reinstalled after aligning correctly to prevent dust from entering. The engine air cleaner should be installed at all times unless temporary removal is necessary during repair or maintenance of the vehicle.
 Absence of the air cleaner could cause damage to the engine.

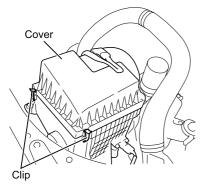
Air Cleaner Element Indicator Light \rightarrow Refer to page 4-48 Maintenance Schedule \rightarrow Refer to page 6-106

Checking the Air Cleaner

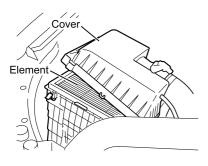
Remove the air cleaner element and check to see if it is blocked by dirt.

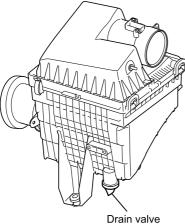
If air cleaner element is blocked by dirt, clean the air cleaner element.

1. Unfasten the 2 clips and open the air cleaner cover.



SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE





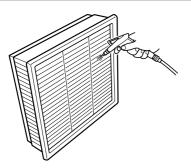
- 2. Remove the air cleaner element by pulling it out upward.
- 3. Remove the dirt that has accumulated on the air cleaner cover and the air cleaner body.
- 4. Install the air cleaner element.
- 5. Clean the drain valve at the bottom of the air cleaner.



ADVICE

 When installing, keep the air cleaner element direction aligned, and firmly lock the two clips of the air cleaner cover.

Cleaning the Air Cleaner Element



- Blow compressed air at a pressure of up to 690 kPa (7.0 kgf/cm² / 100 psi) against the upward side of the element to remove the dust.
- 2. Check to see if the element has been damaged or become thin in places.

ADVICE

 Do not apply compressed air to the outer face of the element as it causes the dust to lodge in the inner face.

Fuel Filter

Change the fuel filter (both the chassis-side and engine-side fuel filters for vehicles with a pre-fuel filter) in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule. Have fuel filter replacement performed at an Isuzu Dealer.

Drain the water when the water separator (fuel filter) warning light comes on.

Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

Water Separator (Fuel Filter) Warning Light



When a certain amount of water has collected in the water separator (the engine side fuel filter), the water separator (fuel filter) warning light comes on.

When this happens, drain the water and make sure that the warning light has gone out.

A CAUTION

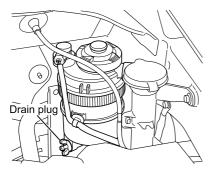
- Water remaining that is not discharged from the water separator could freeze and damage the vehicle.
- If the warning light comes on while the engine is in operation, immediately drain the water from the water separator (fuel filter). Continuing to drive with the light remaining on could damage the fuel injection system. If this happens, have the vehicle checked and serviced by the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Draining Water from the Fuel Filter

→ Refer to page 6-42

Draining Water from the Fuel Filter

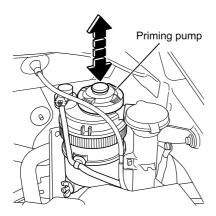
Have water separator (fuel filter) drain work performed at an Isuzu Dealer. If performing water separator (fuel filter) drain work yourself, dispose of the oil in a method conforming to the regulatory requirements in your country.



 The fuel filter is located at the rear left side of the engine compartment.
 Connect one end of a plastic hose to the drain plug at the bottom of the fuel filter and place the other end of the hose inside a container to receive the drained fluid.

MARNING

- Perform drain work in a location without any flammable material.
 Failure to do so could cause a fire.
- Loosen the drain plug and move the priming pump up and down by hand between 10 and 20 times.
- 3. Fully tighten the drain plug and move the priming pump several times.
- 4. Test run the engine and check that there are no fuel leaks from the drain plugs of the fuel filter. Also check that the water separator (fuel filter) warning light stays off.



⚠ CAUTION

- Be sure to stop the engine when draining water from the fuel filter.
- Clean off any fuel that has adhered to the vehicle body.
- Starting the engine immediately after draining the water from the fuel filter requires a little more time than usual. If the engine doesn't start in 10 seconds, wait for a while and try again.
- Fuel will be mixed in the drained water. Dispose of it in a method conforming to the regulatory requirements in your country.
- If the water separator (fuel filter) requires frequent draining, have the fuel tank drained at your Isuzu Dealer. It would be better not to use the water separator (fuel filter), since it may possibly exert a bad effect on the fuel system.

CHASSIS-RELATED SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Brakes	6-46
Parking Brake	6-51
Wheels and Tires	6-51
Tire Rotation	6-57
Spare Tire	6-58
Handling the Jack	6-62
Changing Tires	6-67
Clutch (Manual Transmission Model)	6-76
Automatic Transmission Fluid (Automatic Transmission Model)	6-77
Steering Wheel	6-78
Power Steering Fluid	6-79

6-46

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Brakes



 If there are abnormalities with the brake system, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Brake Fluid

For a manual transmission model, the tank of the brake fluid is common with a tank of the clutch fluid.



• If the brake fluid gets in your eyes, rinse it off immediately with a large amount of water for 15 minutes or longer. Also, if still abnormality such as irritation is felt, seek medical attention.

A CAUTION

- Before refilling the tank, clean the area around the cap and fill brake fluid from a clean container. Foreign objects getting in the tank will lead to a brake system failure.
- Inspect and change brake fluid according to the Maintenance Schedule.
- · Use non-petroleum base brake fluid when adding brake fluid.
- Be careful not to let brake fluid come in contact with skin. If fluid comes into contact with skin, wash away the fluid with water.
- Brake fluid melts paintwork and vehicle component materials such as plastic, vinyl and rubber. It is also highly corrosive on metals. If it is spilled, immediately wipe the area clean or wash away the fluid with water.
- · If skin irritation persists, check with a doctor.
- Brake fluid readily absorbs moisture. Therefore, it is necessary to close the container tightly for storage.
- Do not mix brake fluid with fluids of a non-specified brand. Due to chemical reactions, any mixture of differently branded fluids will cause failure of the brake system.

CAUTION (Continued)

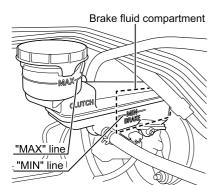
CAUTION (Continued)

• If the brake fluid level decreases rapidly, there may be a problem in the brake system or brake pads or shoe linings may have worn out. Have your vehicle inspected by the nearest Isuzu Dealer immediately.

Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Diesel Fuels → Refer to page 6-111



Checking the Brake Fluid Level

Check that the fluid level in the reserve tank is between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines.

Be sure to use the brake fluid compartment section when checking the "MIN" line section of the brake fluid level. The brake fluid level cannot be accurately checked if the brake fluid level is checked with a method other than the brake fluid compartment section.

If the fluid surface cannot easily be seen, rock the vehicle gently.



 Be sure to check the fluid level correctly. The clutch and brake fluid level varies when the brake pads are worn out.

Adding Brake Fluid

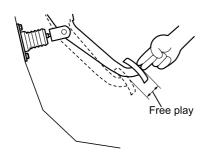
If the level of brake fluid has dropped below the "MIN" line, remove the cap and add fluid. Take care to avoid filling beyond the "MAX" line.

Tighten the cap securely after the fluid has been added.

Changing Brake Fluid

Change the brake fluid according to the Maintenance Schedule using the specified fluid. Since a brake fluid change requires disassembly of the related components, have this service performed by your Isuzu Dealer.

Brake Pedal

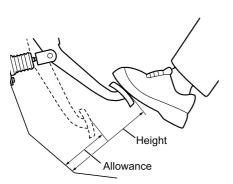


Free Play

Shut off the engine and depress the brake pedal about 10 times strongly, then check the brake pedal for free play by lightly pushing it by hand until you feel resistance. If the free play is not within the specified range, have your vehicle inspected and adjusted by an Isuzu Dealer.

Free play (measured at the tip of pedal)

6 - 10 mm (0.24 - 0.39 in)



Height and Allowance

Inspect the brake pedal height from the floor.

Next, start the engine, wait at least 1 minute and inspect the brake pedal allowance from the floor with the brake pedal in a depressed position.

If the height and allowance are not within the specified range, have your vehicle inspected and adjusted by an Isuzu Dealer.

Transmission model	Height		
Transmission model	Right-hand drive models	Left-hand drive models	
Manual transmission models	177.4 - 189.4 mm (7.0 - 7.5 in)	176.3 - 188.3 mm (6.9 - 7.4 in)	
Automatic transmission models	179.6 - 191.6 mm (7.1 - 7.5 in)	178.5 - 190.5 mm (7.0 - 7.5 in)	

Allowance (pressure of **490 N** (50 kgf / **110 lb**) applied to the brake pedal)
45 mm (1.77 in) or more





ADVICE

- If, after continued pressing of the brake pedal, the clearance slowly decreases or the pedal action feels spongy, air may be trapped in the brake hydraulic circuit. Have your vehicle inspected at the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.
- If your vehicle's brakes squeak during normal driving or braking, the cause may be one of the following.
 - Brake pad wear
 Brake pads are about to wear out.

 If this happens, have your vehicle inspected at the nearest Isuzu
 Dealer as soon as possible.
 - Adherence of sand, grit or mud If sand, grit or mud adheres to the brakes, a screeching sound may be emitted upon contact with rotating components. If this happens, wash the vehicle to remove all such adhering matter. If cleaning alone does not eliminate the squeaking sound, have your vehicle inspected at the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.



NOTE

• To check the clearance of the pedal from the floor, start the engine, depress the accelerator pedal a few times, and use the first pressing of the brake pedal to measure the clearance. The clearance cannot be correctly measured after pressing the pedal two or more times in succession.

6-50

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Brake Performance

Run the vehicle slowly on a dry road and apply the brakes. Check that the brakes fully work and the vehicle does not pull on one side. If there are problems with brake performance, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



CAUTION

 A brake performance check should be performed on a wide road with good visibility while paying adequate attention to the traffic behind and the surroundings.

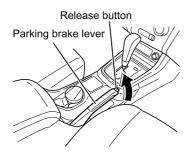
Brake Hoses and Pipes



With the steering wheel turned fully to the left, check the left front brake hose and pipe visually and by touch, making sure that they are free of scratches, cracks and bulging. Also make sure that the hose and pipe do not interfere with any chassis part or wheel, and that their joints are not leaking and free of any type of damage. Check the right front brake hose and pipe in the same way. The rear left and right brake hoses and pipes should also be checked. If there are abnormalities with the brake hose or pipes (damage, scratches, cracks, bulging, leakage, etc.), avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Parking Brake

Inspection



Pull the parking brake lever slowly from the fully released position while counting the clicks produced as the lever engages ratchet plate notches to check that it can be raised the proper amount and the lever is held firmly. If the number of notches is not within the standard value range below, adjust it to the standard value. Also, on a dry sloping road, check that the parking brake can hold the vehicle stationary. Have adjustment of the parking brake and inspections for parking brake performance performed at an Isuzu Dealer.

Lever stroke*

6 to 9 notches

*:Number of notches before parking brake is set when lever is pulled slowly from released position with pull force of about 294 N (30 kgf/66 lb).

Wheels and Tires

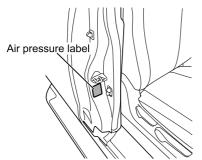
The wheels have a major influence upon the safety and comfort of driving. Should any wheel fall off the vehicle, it not only causes the vehicle to breakdown on the road and block other traffic, but it may also lead to a serious accident. We strongly recommend that you check the wheels and tires daily and maintain them in satisfactory condition.

MARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle unless the tires are properly inflated and in safe condition.
- If you find anything abnormal with wheel bolts, wheel nuts, disc wheels or tires
 when you check them, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu
 Dealer.
- If you find anything abnormal on the left wheels, check the right wheels carefully for similar defects. A defect on a wheel may be a sign of defects on other wheels.

Checking Tires





Air Pressure

Too low or too high a tire air pressure not only affects the ride or causes damage to the cargo but also causes abnormal heat buildup, premature wear, a tire puncture, or may even cause the tire to burst.

- Use an appropriate tire air pressure gauge when measuring the air pressure of a tire. Tire air pressure should be measured when the tire is cold, or before the vehicle is driven. (After driving, tire air pressure increases by about 10%.)
- As the tire air pressure varies depending on the vehicle model and tire size, refer to the air pressure label on the driver's door opening frame if the air pressure label is attached or the tire air pressure tables on the following pages if the air pressure label is not attached.
- Also check the air pressure of the spare tire using a tire air pressure gauge at the intervals specified by the Maintenance Schedule.

Tire Size and Tire Air Pressure

Vehicle model	Tire size		Tire air pressure kPa (kgf/cm²/ psi)	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
2WD	215/70R15C		225 (2.25/ 33)	375 (3.75/ 54)
2WD High-Ride/	245/70R16		200 (2.00/ 29)	280 (2.80/ 41)
4WD	255/6	5R17	200 (2.00/ 29)	250 (2.50/ 36)

MARNING

- Insufficiently inflated or worn-out tires are highly dangerous as they easily skid and can even burst. Should they burst, the tires may burn and this could cause a fire in the vehicle.
- If you drive on under-inflated or flat tires, the wheel bolts will be placed under excessive stress. Under such conditions, the bolts may break and the wheel may detach from the vehicle, possibly causing an accident.

A CAUTION

 Over-inflated tires result in a harsh ride and are likely to cause damage to the cargo. Under-inflated tires build up heat and could burst. Always keep the tires of your vehicle adjusted at the standard air pressures.

6-54 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

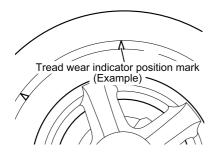
Cracks and Other Damage

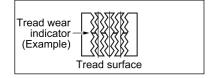
Check the tread and sidewall surfaces of each tire for cracks or other damage. Especially check the tread for nails or other metal pieces embedded in grooves. If you find anything abnormal with tires when you check them, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



ADVICE

 When checking tires, pay special attention to: low air pressure; pebbles or nails in tread grooves; cracks or other damage on tire surfaces; uneven wear.





Tread Depth and Abnormal Wear

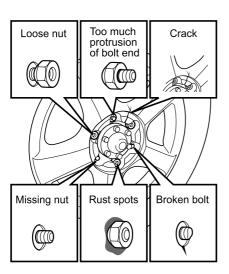
Using worn-out tires is dangerous because they might have an increased chance of getting punctured or bursting while driving. Check all tires to see if tread wear indicators appear on their treads and also check their entire tread for its depth with a depth gauge to make sure that the grooves are deeper than the specified depth.

A tire with tread wear indicators appearing must be changed. Also, check the tires for uneven or otherwise abnormal wear.

If the tires are worn, contact your Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.

A CAUTION

• Tires with excessively shallow tread grooves will increase the chance of skidding and, when driving at high speeds, hydroplaning.



Visual Checking of Wheel Installation Condition

Visually check the condition of installation of each disc wheel.

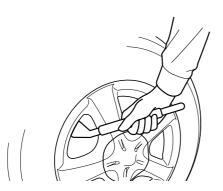
- 1. Check that there are no missing wheel bolts and wheel nuts.
- Check each disc wheel to see if there is any rust seepage from wheel bolts or nuts. Also check the disc wheel for cracks or other damage.
- 3. Check the end of each wheel bolt for proper length of protrusion from the wheel nut. The protrusion should be uniform among all bolts on a wheel and among all wheels. If you find anything abnormal with wheel bolts, wheel nuts or disc wheels when you check them, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

A CAUTION

 Any abnormality in wheel installation is likely to lead to loose or missing wheel nuts and/or broken wheel holts

6-56

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE



Spare Tire Air Pressure

Keep the air pressure of the spare tire slightly higher than the standard pressure. Adjust the pressure correctly when you use it.

Tires heat up while driving, and their air pressures become higher accordingly. If you must wait until right after driving to adjust the air pressure, determine the target pressure for adjustment by adding about **20 kPa** (0.2 kgf/cm² / **3 psi**) to the standard pressure.

Tires Used for Long Term

Tires are made of rubber whose property changes gradually by aging as time goes on (even when it is stored fitted on the rim like a spare tire). Tires must receive an aging check after being used for up to 5 to 7 years if they are to be used continuously. For further details, please contact your Isuzu Dealer.

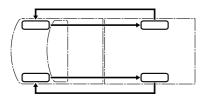
Tire Rotation

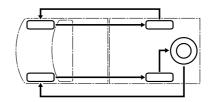


CAUTION

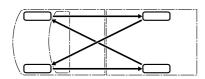
- Be sure to check the wheel bolts, wheel nuts and disc wheel for any abnormality whenever the disc wheel is removed.
- If you find any abnormal condition on the wheel bolts, wheel nuts or disc wheel, do not continue to use the wheel. Contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.

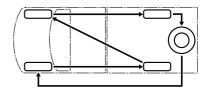
Tires at different locations wear differently. For uniform tire wear and longer tire life, you should rotate the tires on your vehicle regularly.





If one-sided tire wear appears on radial tires, rotate the wheels as shown in the below figure.





ADVICE

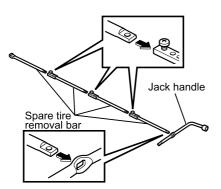
- The tightening torque of the wheel nuts may decrease after a tire change due
 to their initial settlement. Upon driving 50 to 100 km (31 to 62 miles) after a
 tire change, retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torques according to the
 instructions in the "Retightening Wheel Nuts" section in this chapter.
- The spare tire disc wheel is steel (not aluminum). It is for emergency use only for vehicles that are equipped with an aluminum wheel (do not use in the rotation sequence).

Retightening Wheel Nuts

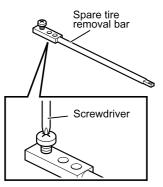
→ Refer to page 6-75

Spare Tire

Removal



1. Assemble the spare tire removal bars and jack handle.



 When assembling the spare tire removal bars to each other, tighten the joint bolts by hand or with a screwdriver (Phillips head).
 Make sure that the concave side is facing the bolt side of the other bar before tightening the bolt.

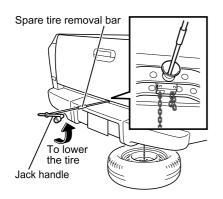


 Make sure that each screw joint is tightened properly.

<mark>⊗</mark> ADVICE

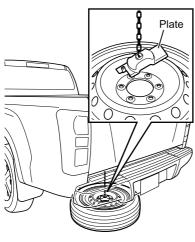
- All the joint bolts should be tightened properly or the bars may become loose and hit the body panel, causing damage to the panel or paint.
- To prevent paint damage, place several pieces of paper above painted parts.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

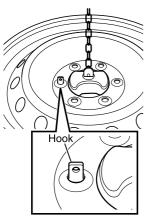


Insert the spare tire removal bar into the hole in the spare tire carrier, and turn the jack handle counterclockwise to remove the spare tire.

Storage



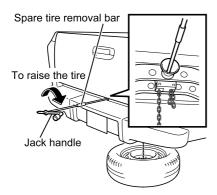
1. Set the disc wheel so that its outer surface faces up, and then insert the plate into the center of the disc wheel.

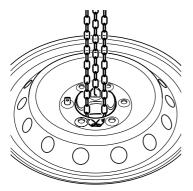


Insert the hook of the plate into the disc wheel nut hole and adjust its position for secure engagement with the spare tire before winding the chain up.

6-60 SERVICE

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE





 Let the chain rest in the center of the disc wheel while it is raised halfway.
 Then turn the jack handle to lift up the tire

Turn the spare tire removal bar clockwise to fully wind up the chain, apply at least **196 N** (20 kgf/**44 lb**) of force to the jack handle by hand, and make sure that the spare tire is firmly secured in place.

CAUTION

- Do not remove the spare tire while the vehicle is jacked up.
- If the chain twisted when it is wound, it becomes loose while running due to vibrations or shocks and the tire might fall off; this is very dangerous.
- After storing the tire in the carrier, check that the tire is held firmly. If loosely retained, the tire becomes loose while running due to vibrations or shocks and the tire might fall off; this is very dangerous.



ADVICE

After storing the spare tire, check that it is not loose by strongly pushing the tire
with your foot. If the tire is loose, fasten it again after checking that there are
no defects in the carrier such as a bent bracket or hanger plate. If you cannot
retighten the tire in the carrier, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest
Isuzu Dealer.

Air Pressure

Check the air pressure of the spare tire using a tire air pressure gauge at the intervals specified in the Maintenance Schedule.

A spare tire inflated to a normal pressure may lose its pressure gradually over time due to leaks. You should therefore inflate it to a pressure a little higher than the normal over time pressure.

Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

Handling the Jack



- Raising the vehicle with a jack could lead to an accident when carried out on soft or inclined surfaces. Ensure that you always carry out this operation on flat, solid surfaces.
- Do not place any objects above or below the jack while performing the jacking operation.
- Always apply the parking brake fully and correctly chock the wheels with the
 gearshift lever in the "R (reverse)" position for manual transmission models
 and "P" for automatic transmission models before jacking the vehicle. A vehicle
 blocked only with the parking brake could move, creating a very dangerous
 situation when the rear wheels are jacked up.
- Place the front wheels in a straight position and remove the key from the starter switch to lock the steering wheel.
- Ensure that there are no people or objects present in the vehicle before it is jacked up.
- In order to ensure safety, doors should never be opened and the engine should never be started during a jack-up operation.
- The jack must only be used at one of the specified jacking points. In addition, you must confirm that it makes good contact with the specified point.
- In order to provide extra safety should the jack slip, once a spare tire has been removed, it should be placed under the vehicle near the jack.
- Before starting a jacking operation, ensure that the jack and the jacking point
 to be used are clear of dirt, oil and grease. Failure to observe this precaution
 could lead to an accident should the dirt or oil cause the jack to slip.
- It might start moving when the engine power is transmitted to the rear axle even when one of the wheels on the axle is raised clear of the ground. Do not start the engine with any rear wheel in contact with the ground.
- The jack provided with your vehicle must be used only for changing defective tires and fitting or removing tire chains. In order to ensure safety, furthermore, only one wheel should be jacked up at a time.
- Do not use more than one jack at any one time.
- Lifting up both wheels at the same time is very dangerous. Be sure to jack up one wheel at one time.
- The jack supplied with your vehicle is specifically for that vehicle. Do not use it
 on another vehicle and never use another vehicle's jack.

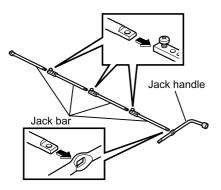
WARNING (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Be sure that the jack bar is tightly inserted into the jack handle before turning the handle and bar. Serious personal injury can result if the bar slips from the handle during the jacking procedure.
- Do not get under a vehicle and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that supported by a jack. Failure to observe this precaution could lead to an accident if the jack were to slip.
- If the underside of the vehicle is to be worked on after jacking up, jack stands must be used to support the vehicle.



Operating the Jack

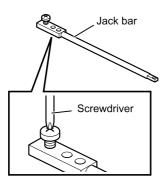


Raising the Vehicle

1. Assemble the jack bars and jack handle.

6-64

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE



 When assemble jack bars to each other, tighten joint bolt by hand or a screwdriver (Phillips side).
 Make sure that the concave side is facing the bolt side of the other bar before tighten the bolt.

A CAUTION

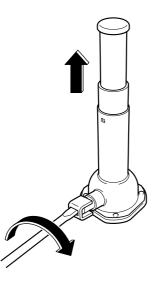
- Make sure that each screw joint is tightened properly.
- 3. Insert the jack bar end into the jack socket.
- Place the jack immediately below the jacking point and ensure that it is upright.
 The jack must be placed on a flat, solid surface.
- 5. Turn the jack handle, and check that the jack moves correctly.

Front Wheel Jacking Points

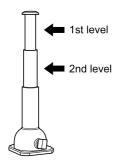
→ Refer to page 6-66

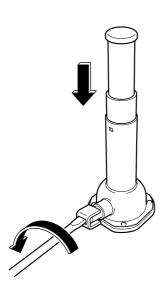
Rear Wheel Jacking Points

- → Refer to page 6-66
- 6. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack handle clockwise.
- Confirm that the jack is in good contact with the jacking point, and then continue to raise the vehicle.









MARNING

 The jack has 2 levels. After completion of the 2nd level lifting, the handle becomes heavy to operate.
 At this time, stop lifting up with the jack. If lifting up is continued, the jack may be damaged. If the vehicle is lifted up with the jack excessively, the vehicle becomes unstable and very dangerous.

Lowering the Vehicle

Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle counterclockwise to the ground.

2015/01/16 9:25:06

Jacking Points



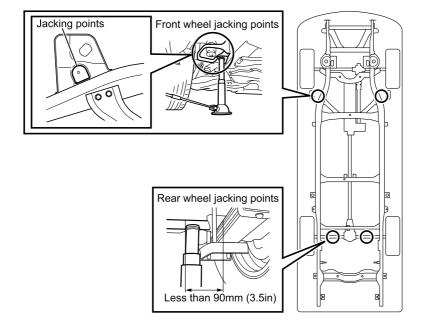
• Failure to position the jack as described could result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage caused by the vehicle slipping off the jack.

Front Wheel Jacking Points

Apply the jack head to the flat part of the bracket on the frame side.

Rear Wheel Jacking Points

Set the jack at a point within 90 mm (3.5 in) from the leaf spring under the axle tube. Align the recess on the jack head to the curved surface of the axle tube center.



Changing Tires

Preparation



When you park the vehicle to change tires, choose a place listed below.

- Your vehicle does not hinder other traffic.
- The surface is level, flat and solid.
- · You can change a tire safely.

When changing tires on a road, use the hazard warning flasher and triangle reflectors to alert other traffic to the presence of your vehicle.

Fully pull the parking brake lever, put the gearshift lever in the "R (reverse)" position for manual transmission models or put the selector lever in the "P" position for automatic transmission models. Chock both the front and back sides of the wheel diagonally opposite to the one to be changed with chocks (or stones, wood blocks, etc.). (Example: When changing the right rear wheel, chock the left front wheel.) Have the passengers get out of the vehicle.



 Use a tire of the specified size and the same tread pattern as the one to be replaced.

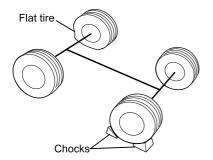
Removing a Wheel

MARNING

- Always apply the parking brake fully and put the gearshift lever in the "R
 (reverse)" position for manual transmission models or put the selector lever
 in the "P" position for automatic transmission models and correctly chock the
 wheels before raising the vehicle. Applying only the parking brake is insufficient
 to prevent the vehicle from moving. When a rear wheel is jacked up, the vehicle
 blocked only by the parking brake would move, creating a very dangerous
 situation.
- Ensure that there are no people or objects present in the vehicle before it is jacked up.
- Never open doors or start the engine while jacking up the wheel. Do not try to look into the underside of the vehicle or get beneath the vehicle. This is very dangerous.
- To avoid danger in case of the jack slipping off, place the removed spare tire near the jack under the vehicle.
- Never apply oil or grease to the wheel bolts or nuts. Wheel nuts may loosen, causing the wheels to fall off and cause serious accidents.
- Never use heat to loosen tight wheel nuts. The application of heat to the hub can shorten the life of the wheel and may cause damage to wheel bearings.

A CAUTION

- The wheel is heavy. Carefully handle it to avoid getting hurt when removing and installing the wheel.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe or the diesel particulate defuser (DPD) just after stopping the vehicle as they are very hot.
- Be careful for personal injuries when handling wheel ornaments.

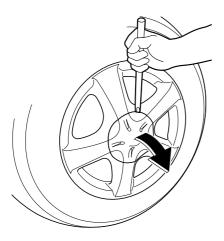


- Firmly apply the parking brake and put the gearshift lever in the "R (reverse)" position for manual transmission models or put the selector lever in the "P" position for automatic transmission models. When changing a front wheel, chock the rear wheel diagonally opposite to the front wheel. When changing a rear wheel, chock the front wheel diagonally opposite to the rear wheel.
- 2. Firmly apply the head of the jack to the jacking point.

Handling the Jack

→ Refer to page 6-62

- 3. Raise the vehicle enough so that the tire not quite clear of the ground.
- 4. In the case of aluminum wheel models remove the wheel cover by using the flat end of the jack handle. Pry along the edge of the wheel cover until it comes off. Using the wheel nut wrench, loosen the wheel nuts just enough so that the wheel remains stable in position. Do not remove the wheel nuts yet.



A CAUTION

- Remove the wheel cover using the flat end of the jack handle. If you remove the wheel cover with bare hands, you could be injured by the edge of the wheel cover.
- Do not loosen the wheel nuts too much. The wheel bolts would be damaged.



ADVICE

- Wrap a piece of cloth or tape around the flat end of the jack handle so as not to damage the wheel and wheel cover.
- 5. Jack up the vehicle so that the tire is clear of the ground completely.
- Remove all the wheel nuts that have been loosened, and then remove the wheel.

Remove the wheel being careful to not damage the threads of the wheel bolts.



ADVICE

- Do not put the wheel with its design (outer) side down on the floor. It may cause scratch on the wheel surface.
- 7. Check the following parts: the disc wheel for deformation and damage such as cracks; the hub for excessive wear of the disc wheel fitting surface; and the wheel bolts and nuts for damage to the threads. If anything abnormal is found in the above parts, check other parts as well, and replace any defective part with a new one.

Front Wheel Jacking Points

→ Refer to page 6-66

Rear Wheel Jacking Points

→ Refer to page 6-66

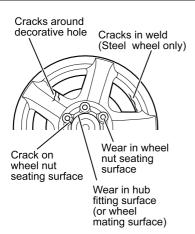
Installing a Wheel



- A disc wheel, wheel bolts or wheel nuts in any abnormal condition could break later, causing the wheel to be detached from the vehicle while driving.
- If you find anything abnormal with wheel bolts, wheel nuts or disc wheels when you check them, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.
- Do not repaint any mating surfaces, wheel nut seating surfaces (tapered surfaces) and hub fitting surface of the disc wheel. Thick paint films would cause loosened or broken wheel bolts.
- Do not assemble the wheel in a slanted state or with the center of the wheel misaligned state.
- Never apply oil or grease to the wheel bolts or nuts. By applying them, nuts may become over-tightened and cause damage to the bolts. Wheel nuts or bolts may loosen, causing the wheels to fall off and cause serious accidents. If oil or grease is found on any bolt or nut, clean it off.

A CAUTION

- Change wheels only when the tire is clear of the ground. Otherwise, the wheel
 will be installed improperly and the operation of the vehicle will be affected
 adversely.
- Remove mud and rust from the hub fitting surface or wheel-to-wheel mating surfaces. Otherwise, the wheel might become loose while driving.



- 1. Check the disc wheel for the following:
 - Cracks or other damage around the bolt holes and decorative holes
 - Cracks or other damage or wear on the wheel nut seating surfaces (tapered surfaces)
 - Cracks or other damage on welds (steel wheel only)
 - Wear or other damage on the hub fitting surface or wheel-to-wheel mating surface

If you find anything abnormal with disc wheels when you check them, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

- 2. Check the wheel bolts and wheel nuts for the following:
 - · Cracks or other damage
 - · Bolt elongation or excessive rust
 - Crushed, thinned or seized threads

If you find anything abnormal with wheel bolts or wheel nuts when you check them, avoid driving the vehicle and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

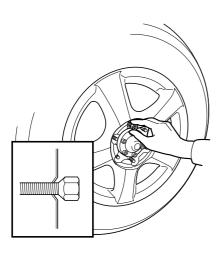
CAUTION

- Remove rust and dirt from a wheel bolt and nut, and turn the nut on the bolt. If the nut does not turn smoothly, the threads are defective.
- If the threads are defective, replace both wheel bolt and wheel nut as a set.
- If any wheel bolt is broken, change all the wheel bolts and wheel nuts on the wheel.
- Remove rust, dust and mud from the fitting surface, hub fitting surface or wheel-to-wheel mating surfaces, and wheel nut seating surfaces (tapered surfaces) of the disc wheel, and from the threads of the wheel bolts and nuts.

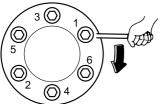
\triangle

CAUTION

 Clean the disc wheel to remove dirt and rust from its fitting surfaces, hub fitting surface or wheel-towheel mating surface. Also clean the tapered portion of each nut. If you fasten the wheel nuts without removing dirt and rust, the wheel nuts would later loosen and the wheel might be detached from the vehicle while driving. This could be very dangerous.



- Install the wheel while aligning the bolt holes in the disc wheel with the wheel bolts.
- 5. Screw in each wheel nut by hand until it touches the nut seating surface on the disc wheel, and then finger tighten all wheel nuts until the wheel is held in position without any looseness. Face the tapered end of wheel nuts inward.
- Turn the bleeder screw of the jack counterclockwise to lower the vehicle slowly.



7. Tighten the wheel nuts in a diagonal sequence and in two or three passes.

A CAUTION

- Some impact wrenches available in the market produce torques higher than the maximum torque specified for tightening the wheel nuts. If the wheel nuts are tightened with such an impact wrench, wheel bolts might be broken. Before using an impact wrench, check that the torque it produces conforms to the specification.
- When using an impact wrench, carefully adjust the air pressure regulator and select the tightening time. As a final step, tighten to the specified torque using a torque wrench.

6-74

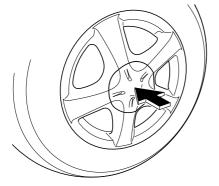
SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

8. Finally, tighten all wheel nuts using a torque wrench to the specified torque.

Tightening torque

120 N·m (12 kgf·m/87 lb·ft)

 For aluminum wheel models, install the wheel cover by tapping the wheel cover into place with your hand. If your vehicle has 255/65R17 size tires, align the wheel cover groove and the air valve when installing the wheel cover.







$\overline{\mathbb{A}}$

WARNING

- Do not attach plastic wheel ornaments that are heavily damaged.
 These may fly off from the wheels of your vehicle and cause accidents when the vehicle is driven.
- Make sure to secure all tools, jacks and flat tires into their storage locations before driving in order to reduce the possibilities of personal injury due to a collision or sudden braking.



ADVICE

- After changing a tire, turn the steering wheel in both directions to make sure that the wheels do not interfere with the surrounding components. If you are unclear about any of this, please contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.
- The tightening torque of the wheel nuts may decrease after tire replacement due to their initial settlement. Upon driving 50 to 100 km (31 to 62 miles) after a tire change, retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque according to the instructions in the "Retightening Wheel Nuts" section in this chapter.

Retightening Wheel Nuts

→ Refer to page 6-75

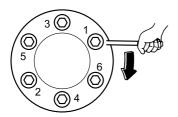
Retightening Wheel Nuts

Check the wheel nuts to make sure they are tightened to the specific torque by using a torque wrench.

Use the following methods to check loose wheel nuts. The tightening torque of the wheel nuts may decrease after a tire change or rotation due to their initial settlement. After driving 50 to 100 km (31 to 62 miles), be sure to retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque.

Tightening torque

120 N·m (12 kgf·m/87 lb·ft)



Turn the wheel nuts in the tightening direction to the specified torque.

MARNING

• If you find any abnormal conditions with the wheel nuts such as frequent loosening of retightened nuts, have your vehicle checked or serviced at the nearest Isuzu Dealer as soon as possible.

A CAUTION

- Fully engage the wheel wrench on a wheel nut in order to tighten the nut to the specified torque. However, do not use a pipe as a handle extension or your foot to apply force on the wrench. This would tighten the nut more than required and might damage components.
- Both under-tightening and over-tightening of wheel nuts may cause broken
 wheel bolts or cracked disc wheels and could lead to wheel detachment. Adhere
 to the specified tightening torques.
- When replacing a tire with a new one, use only a tire of the same type and size as the replaced tire; otherwise, driving safety could be affected. Avoid mixed use of different types or different size tires at all costs.

Clutch (Manual Transmission Model)

Clutch Fluid

The tank of the clutch fluid is common with a tank of the brake fluid.



If the clutch fluid gets in your eyes, rinse it off immediately with a large amount
of water for 15 minutes or longer. Also, if still abnormality such as irritation is felt,
seek medical attention.

A CAUTION

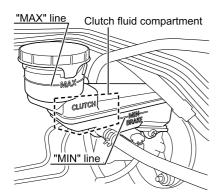
- Before refilling the tank, clean the area around the cap and fill clutch fluid from a clean container. Foreign objects getting in the tank will lead to a clutch system failure.
- Be careful not to let clutch fluid come in contact with skin. If fluid comes into contact with skin, wash away the fluid with water.
- Clutch fluid melts paintwork and vehicle component materials such as plastic, vinyl and rubber. It is also highly corrosive on metals. If it is spilled, immediately wipe the area clean or wash away the fluid with water.
- · If skin irritation persists, check with a doctor.
- Use only the specified clutch fluid and change it according to the Maintenance Schedule.
- Clutch fluid readily absorbs moisture. Close the cap of the container tightly when storing it.
- Do not mix clutch fluid with fluids of a non-specified brand. Due to chemical reactions, any mixture of differently branded fluids will cause failure of the clutch system.
- If clutch fluid decreases too rapidly, there might be a problem in the clutch system or the brake system, or the brake pads or shoe linings may have worn out. Have your vehicle inspected by the nearest Isuzu Dealer immediately.

Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and

Diesel Fuels → Refer to page 6-111



Checking the Clutch-Fluid Level

Confirm that the fluid level in the reserve tank is between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines. Be sure to use the clutch fluid compartment section when checking the "MIN" line section of the clutch fluid level. The clutch fluid level cannot be accurately checked if the clutch fluid level is checked with a method other than the clutch fluid compartment section.

If the fluid surface cannot easily be seen, rock the vehicle gently.

Adding Clutch Fluid

If the level of clutch fluid has dropped below the "MIN" line, remove the clutch fluid tank cap and add fluid. Add the specified clutch fluid up to the "MAX" line.

Changing Clutch Fluid

Change the clutch fluid according to the Maintenance Schedule using the specified fluid. Since a clutch fluid change requires disassembly of the related components, have this service performed by your Isuzu Dealer.

Automatic Transmission Fluid (Automatic Transmission Model)

Have inspection and replacement of the automatic transmission fluid performed at an Isuzu Dealer.

Steering Wheel

Checking the Steering Wheel



While the engine is idling, place the steering wheel in the straight forward position, then gently turn it to the left and right by hand, and check the play in the steering wheel as the peripheral distance to the point where the tires start moving.

Standard value (at the periphery of the steering wheel)

10 - 30 mm (0.39 - 1.18 in)



Grasp the steering wheel with both hands, and move it in the axial direction and also up and down, and left and right to see if there is any looseness.

Also, drive the vehicle and check for abnormal shaking of the steering wheel, steering pull, sluggish steering, or inability to return to the straight forward position.

CAUTION

 If the steering parts have excess play or looseness or if any abnormal condition is noted, have the steering system checked at the nearest Isuzu Dealer immediately.

Power Steering Fluid

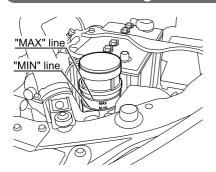
The power steering fluid level must be checked and it must be changed according to the Maintenance Schedule.

Have replacement of the power steering fluid performed at an Isuzu Dealer.

Maintenance Schedule

→ Refer to page 6-106

Checking the Power Steering Fluid Level



The reserve tank is located at the front of the engine compartment on the left. The fluid level is correct if it is between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the reserve tank. If the level is lower than the "MIN" line, add power steering fluid up to the "MAX" line. Furthermore, perform an inspection for power steering fluid leaks.

Engine Hood → Refer to page 6-10

Adding Power Steering Fluid

\triangle

CAUTION

- Before adding fluid, clean the area around the cap and pour fluid from a clean jug or filler. Foreign matter getting in the tank will cause power steering system failure.
- Do not mix the recommended power steering fluid with fluids of other brands.
 Due to chemical reactions, any mixture of differently branded fluids will cause failure of the system.

Remove the reserve tank cap, and add power steering fluid up to the "MAX" line.

6-81

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

OTHER SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

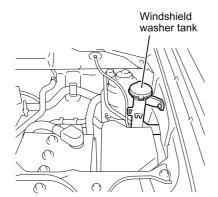
Windshield Washer Fluid	6-82
Windshield Wiper Blades	6-83
Headlights and Turn Signal Lights	6-86
Handling the Battery	6-87
Refrigerant	6-96



Windshield Washer Fluid

Windshield Wiper/Washer

Check the level of fluid in the windshield washer tank. In addition, spray windshield washer fluid and operate the windshield wipers to check for any areas not properly wiped. At this time, also check the windshield washer's spraying condition.



Refilling Windshield Washer Fluid

- The windshield washer tank is located at the rear of the engine compartment on the left.
- Open the cap and fill the tank with windshield washer fluid to the opening.

g.

ADVICE

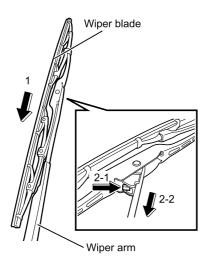
- Upon factory shipment, new vehicles contain only tap water in the washer fluid tank. Adjust the concentration of the fluid to suit your own usage.
- Follow the instructions provided with the windshield washer fluid regarding the ratio for mixing with tap water.
- Poor quality products, engine coolant, and soapy water must not be used.
 Failure to observe this precaution can result in nozzle blockage or damage to painted surfaces.
- The washer should never be used while the tank is empty. Operating the washer with the tank empty can result in motor damage.

Windshield Wiper Blades

Daily Checks

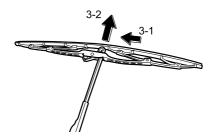
Spray windshield washer fluid and then operate the windshield wipers to check for any poorly wiped areas. In addition, confirm that each of the "MIST", " $\bar{\nabla}$ (intermittent)", "LO", and "HI" functions operate normally.

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement



Removal

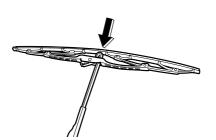
- 1. Pull the wiper arm up to the vertical position.
- 2. While pressing the wiper blade hook towards the arm, slide the blade downwards (towards the base of the arm).

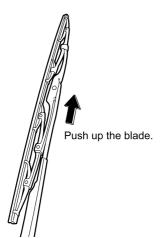


3. With the blade and arm almost perpendicular, remove the blade from the arm.

6-84

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE





Installation

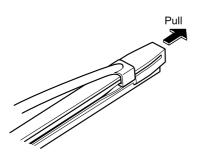
1. Insert the blade while holding it almost perpendicular to the arm.

2. Then, with the blade and arm oriented in the same direction, push up the blade until it locks into place on the arm.

ADVICE

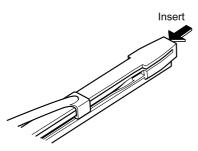
- Do not lower the wiper arm with its blade removed; the windshield glass may be scratched.
- Whenever a wiper blade has been attached, ensure that it is locked into place. Failure to observe this precaution can result in the wiper blade becoming dislocated when the windshield wiper switch is turned on.

Replacement of Wiper Rubber Insert



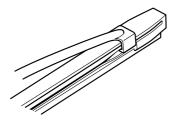
Removal

- 1. Remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
- 2. Pull the wiper rubber insert in the direction indicated by the arrow and extract it from the wiper blade.



Installation

1. Insert a new wiper rubber insert into the wiper blade.



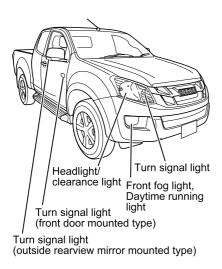
- Continue pushing in the wiper rubber insert until the wiper blade's hook engages with the hole in it, and then confirm that the rubber insert is securely held in place.
- 3. Attach the wiper blade to the wiper arm.

Headlights and Turn Signal Lights

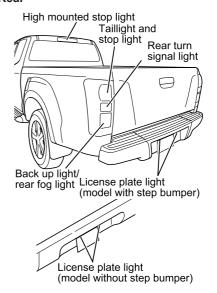
Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position, and then check the way in which the headlights, turn signal lights, and other exterior lights come on and flash. In addition, depress the brake pedal to confirm whether the stop lights come on, and shift the transmission to "R" position to confirm whether the back up lights come on. Also examine the lights for discoloration, damage, and looseness.

When the Bulb Does not Come On → Refer to page 7-28

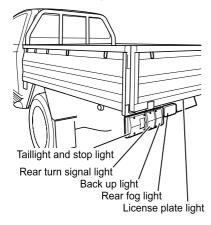
Front



Rear



Rear (Horizontal type)



Handling the Battery



DANGER

- Usage or charging of the battery when the battery fluid is below the lower level line can accelerate deterioration and give rise to dangerous situations such as the generation of heat and even explosion.
- If battery fluid should come in contact with an eye, immediately wash it out using
 a large amount of water and continue washing for at least 5 minutes. Following
 this, contact a doctor for a medical examination. If fluid adheres to any part of
 the body, wash it off using a large amount of water and contact a doctor for a
 medical examination.
- When using tools or other metal objects in the vicinity of the battery, take care to
 prevent them from coming into contact with the positive terminal. As the vehicle
 itself will conduct electricity, any such contact can result in a short-circuit and a
 highly dangerous electric shock.
- A vehicle battery generates extremely flammable hydrogen gas. For this reason, operations producing sparks or requiring the usage of an open flame must never be carried out near a vehicle battery. Failure to observe this precaution can result in explosion if the hydrogen gas ignites. Whenever wiping up battery fluid, a damp cloth should be used.

MARNING

- Always stop the engine whenever the battery is to be inspected.
- Dilute sulfuric acid is used as the battery fluid. Wear protective goggles when handling the battery. Special care must be taken to ensure that this fluid does not come into contact with skin, clothing, or the vehicle body.
- Battery fluid should never be filled beyond the upper level line. Failure to
 observe this precaution can result in battery fluid spillage and corrosion of
 battery terminals and other components. Any spilled battery fluid should be
 immediately washed away with water.
- Do not allow your face or head to come close to the battery except when absolutely necessary.
- When disconnecting cables, turn the starter switch to the "LOCK" position, wait
 at least 1 minute, and then disconnect the cables starting with the negative
 cable from the terminals. If the negative cable is disconnected within 1 minute,
 the engine control module may malfunction. When reconnecting them, the
 negative cable should be reconnected last.
- Be careful not to inhale the hydrogen gas that emits from the battery.

WARNING (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Recharge the battery in a well-ventilated area. Do not recharge the battery in an enclosed room, etc.
- Wash your hands after handling battery posts, terminals and related accessories.
- · Be sure to keep the battery away from children.

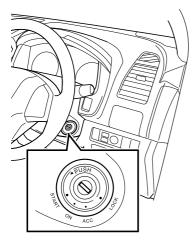


ADVICE

- Whenever battery fluid has been added, the battery should be recharged (by driving the vehicle). In winter months in particular, battery fluid can freeze and damage the battery case if you fail to recharge the battery.
- If the battery fluid level continues to drop at an unusually fast rate, have an inspection carried out immediately by the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Battery Handling Precautions

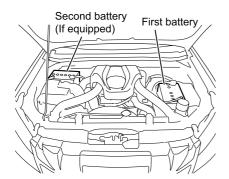
Keep the battery clean. If the battery is left in a dirty condition, contaminants can get mixed into the battery fluid, the battery plates can be damaged, short circuits can occur on the top surface of the battery and the battery's service life can be reduced.



When Performing Inspection or Maintenance

Before starting inspection and maintenance of the battery or other parts of the electrical system, turn the starter switch to the "LOCK" position, wait at least 1 minute, and then disconnect the negative cable from the negative terminal. If the negative cable is disconnected within 1 minute, the engine control module may malfunction.

There is a danger that electrical components could be damaged if inspection or maintenance is carried out if the battery remains connected.



Battery Installation Position

Depending on the vehicle model, there may be one battery (first battery) or two batteries (first and second battery).

Removing the Battery

When the battery is to be removed, turn the starter switch to the "LOCK" position, wait at least 1 minute, and then disconnect the cables starting with the negative cable from the terminals.



- If the battery cable remains connected to the negative terminal, any contact
 made by tools and the like between the positive terminal and the vehicle body
 could lead to a short-circuit and dangerous electrical shocks. The electrical
 system can also be damaged.
- · Do not tilt the battery.

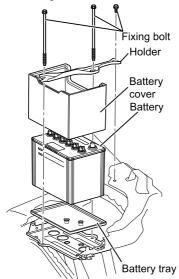
A CAUTION

 If the negative cable is disconnected from the negative terminal on the battery within 1 minute after turning the starter switch to the "LOCK" position, the engine control module may malfunction.

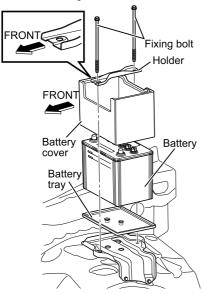
6-90

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

First battery



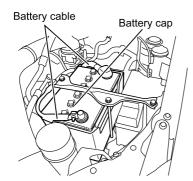
Second battery



- Turn the starter switch to the "LOCK" position, wait at least 1 minute, and then disconnect the negative cable from the negative terminal.
- 2. Disconnect the positive cable from the positive terminal.
- 3. Remove the fixing bolts and holder that secure the battery in place.
- 4. Remove the battery cover.

MARNING

- If the battery is removed together with the battery cover, the battery may become separated from the battery cover and fall. Be sure to remove the battery cover alone first, then remove the battery.
- 5. Remove the battery.



Charging the Battery

- Before charging the battery, remove it from the vehicle to a location with good ventilation and take off the battery caps. If, on the other hand, the battery is to be charged while still on the vehicle, be sure to first disconnect the battery cables.
- 2. Whenever a charger is being connected to or disconnected from a battery, ensure that it is turned off.
- Battery cables must always be disconnected when performing quick charging.
 Failure to observe this precaution can result in generator burnout.



• Do not use open flames in the vicinity of the battery when it is being charged. Hydrogen gas is generated by the battery during the charging process; accordingly, failure to observe this precaution can result in fire or explosion.

Installing the Battery

When connecting the battery cables, start with the positive terminal and then connect the negative terminal.



- Take care to avoid mixing up the positive and negative terminals when connecting battery cables. Incorrect connection to these terminals can result in flow of excessive current and burnout of the generator or vehicle wiring.
- After installing a new battery, the battery cover must be installed in its original position before the cables are connected.



ADVICE

When installing the battery in your vehicle, ensure that it is oriented correctly
and securely fastened without any looseness. If the battery is not installed
correctly, the battery case and battery plates can be damaged as a result of
vibrations during driving.

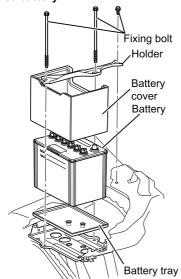
6-92 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE



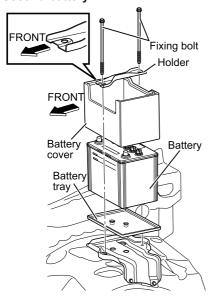
NOTE

- In models with a keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock), the map light and dome light may not illuminate if the battery terminal is connected with the door open. If this occurs, the lights can be illuminated by closing the doors once or turning the starter switch to "LOCK" position form the "ACC" or "ON" position.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) warning light may turn on when the battery cables are disconnected or the battery voltage is low. The ESC function turns off while the ESC warning light is on, but the ESC warning light will turn off by driving the vehicle normally for a while, then the ESC function will resume. If the ESC warning light remains on even after driving for a while, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

First battery



Second battery



- 1. Install the battery tray.
- Install the battery. Ensure that the battery is oriented correctly and placed so as to be seated correctly without any looseness.

MARNING

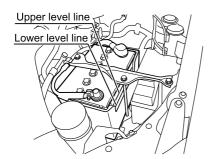
- Do not install the battery together with the battery cover. If the battery is installed together with the battery cover, the battery may become separated from the battery cover and fall.
- 3. Install the battery cover. Push the battery cover down until it touches the battery tray.
- 4. Install the holder and fixing bolts.
- 5. Connect the positive cable to the positive terminal.
- 6. Connect the negative cable to the negative terminal.

Using the Battery as a Direct Power Source

The battery should not be used as a direct source of 12 V power.

If your battery must be used as a direct power source, please consult with your Isuzu Dealer.

Checking the Battery Fluid Level



Daily Check

Confirm whether the level of fluid inside the battery case is within the specified range. The surface of the battery fluid should be between the upper level and lower level lines. If the surface of the fluid cannot easily be seen, rock the vehicle gently.

Filling Battery Fluid

If the battery fluid level is below the lower level line, remove the cap and add distilled water up to the upper level line. After refilling, firmly attach the cap.

MARNING

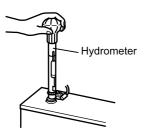
Battery fluid should never be filled beyond the upper level line. Failure to
observe this precaution can result in battery fluid spillage and corrosion of
battery terminals and other components. Any spilled battery fluid should be
immediately washed away with water.



ADVICE

- Whenever battery fluid has been added, the battery should be recharged (by driving the vehicle). In winter months in particular, battery fluid can freeze and damage the battery case if you fail to recharge the battery.
- If the battery fluid level continues to drop at an unusually fast rate, have an inspection carried out immediately by the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Checking the Specific Gravity of Battery Fluid



 Check the specific gravity of the battery fluid using a hydrometer. If the specific gravity is too low, the battery should be charged.

Specific gravity at a fluid temperature of 20°C (68°F)

1.27 - 1.29

Checking the Battery Terminals



- Check the terminals for looseness, cracks and corrosion. If there are cracks at the terminal, have inspection and replacement performed at an Isuzu Dealer.
- 2. If a terminal is found to be corroded and coated in white powder, wash this away with warm water and then wipe fully dry. Excessively corroded terminals should be polished using a wire brush or sandpaper.
- 3. When you have finished cleaning the terminals, apply a thin layer of grease and securely connect the battery cables, taking care to ensure that they are tight.

See "When the Battery Goes Flat" regarding steps to be taken should the battery be completely discharged.

When the Battery Goes Flat

→ Refer to page 7-20

6-96

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Refrigerant

The air conditioning system will not be able to cool the cab interior effectively if the refrigerant level is low. Accordingly, the refrigerant level must be topped up whenever necessary.

Please contact your Isuzu Dealer whenever refrigerant must be added.



ADVICE

- Operating the air conditioning while the refrigerant level is too low leads not only to poor cooling performance but also to air conditioning system damage.
- This vehicle uses the new refrigerant HFC134a (R134a) in the air conditioning system. No other type of refrigerant can be used. In order to protect the environment, care must be taken to ensure that refrigerant gas is never released into open air. When refrigerant must be replaced, therefore, please contact your Isuzu Dealer or other service facility equipped with a gas recovery installation system.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR MAINTENANCE

Exterior Maintenance	6-98
Interior Maintenance	6-101

Exterior Maintenance



Washing

If the vehicle is operated with foreign material adhering to the exterior, this material may react chemically with paint or plating, resulting in staining, discoloration, rusting or corrosion of components. Also, the material may become trapped within mechanical components, adversely affecting their functions or forming an aerodynamic resistance. In the following cases, therefore, the vehicle must be washed and all foreign matter removed.

- When soot, iron powder, dead bugs, bird droppings, pollen, tree sap or oily matter from coal tar and smoke has adhered to painted surfaces.
- When the vehicle has been driven in coastal areas.
- When the vehicle has been driven on roads where road chemicals have been applied.
- When a large amount of mud or dirt has adhered to the exterior.
- 1. Fully turn on the tap, and wash out the undercarriage and suspension.
- Close all openings and wash the cab and cargo body panels using a neutral detergent.
- 3. Clean wheels and tires using a brush and detergent.
- After washing away all remaining detergent, use a shammy or other clean cloth to fully remove all moisture and water droplets.

MARNING

 When cleaning the bottom of the vehicle or chassis, be careful so as to prevent burns and injuries. The area around the engine and exhaust pipe are extremely hot immediately after vehicle operation, so wait until the vehicle has cooled down before cleaning. Otherwise, you could be burned.

A CAUTION

- Do not apply water directly in order to clean the cab interior. Failure to observe this precaution can result in malfunction or breakdown of electronic control units and electrical components, or in rusting of the cab floor.
- Do not apply water from a high-pressure washer nozzle directly to the electric connectors. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to faulty operation of the electrical system.

⊗ ADVICE

- Do not use solvents, gasoline, kerosene, benzine, or thinner, etc., to clean the vehicle exterior.
- If an automatic car wash is used with vehicles having dark or metallic coating, the painted surfaces can be damaged by the brushes, lose their luster or be very noticeably scratched.
- · Do not direct a large amount of water at the air inlet openings.
- Do not apply water to the engine compartment or at electrical components.
 Failure to observe this precaution can lead to a poorly starting and operating engine and problems in the electrical system.
- Ensure that mirrors and the antenna are retracted before washing the vehicle.
- If an automatic car wash must be used, avoid a high-temperature, high-pressure type machine. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to heat deformation and breakage of plastic components, or to water leaks into the cab.
- When using an automatic car wash, ensure that a distance of at least 0.4 m (15.75 in) is maintained between the nozzle and the vehicle, and when washing door windows, that the spray is perpendicular to the surface of the glass.
- Ensure that all detergent is fully washed and wiped away. Particularly in the
 case of strong alkaline detergents (typically those for industrial uses), there is a
 danger that hairline cracks can develop in lighting-cluster lenses if the vehicle is
 operated without detergent being fully wiped away. Always read the detergent
 manufacturer's instructions carefully before use.

ADVICE (Continued)

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

ADVICE (Continued)

 Airborne dirt that adheres to plastic front bumpers as a result of rain, for example, can be difficult to remove.

In such a case, use a commercially-available cleaner to clean away the dirt, and then apply a wax for use with plastic components.

Vehicle Storage

In order to maintain your vehicle's attractive appearance as long as possible, special consideration must be given to its storage location.

If the vehicle is stored or kept for an extended period of time in any of the following locations, a chemical change may occur in the paintwork, resulting in staining, discoloration, rusting, and corrosion of components.

- Locations where a large amount of oily matter, soot, heavy smoke or metal powder can adhere to the vehicle.
- Areas around pharmaceutical plants and other facilities that discharge chemical matter.
- · Coastal areas
- Locations where a large amount of dead bugs, bird droppings or tree sap can adhere to the vehicle.

Waxing

Painted and chrome-plated surfaces should be waxed once or twice a month, or whenever water is being poorly repelled on the surfaces. Ensure that wax is not applied in direct sunlight, and that the temperature of the painted surface is no more than 40°C (104°F).

Always follow the instructions provided with your wax product.

A CAUTION

 Wax must not be applied to the windshield. Failure to observe this precaution can result in irregular reflection of light, impairing your view.

ADVICE

- Do not use wax containing abrasive material. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to scratching of painted surfaces or plastic components.
- The application of wax to rubber component surfaces can result in permanent whitening.



Windshield Care

If not fully cleaned by the windshield wipers, the windshield should be cleaned using Isuzu genuine glass cleaner.

Interior Maintenance

Remove dust and dirt from the interior of the cab using an automotive cleaner or vacuum cleaner, and gently wipe surfaces clean using a cloth wet with warm or cold water.



- When cleaning the interior of the cab, water should never be sprayed directly.
 Failure to observe this precaution can lead to vehicle malfunction and possibly to fire if water should enter the audio system or other electrical components located underneath the floor carpet.
- Do not use organic solvents such as petroleum ether and gasoline or abrasive cleaners to clean the seat belts.
 In addition, seat belt webbing should be neither bleached nor redyed. Failure to observe these precautions can lead to the performance or strength of the seat belts being impaired. In the case of a collision, therefore, the belts could be insufficiently effective, and serious life-threatening injuries could result. When cleaning, use warm water in which a small amount of neutral detergent has been dissolved to gently wipe the seat belts.
- Keep the seat belts in a clean, dry condition.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

$\overline{\mathbb{A}}$

CAUTION

- Do not use organic solvents such as mineral oil, benzine, thinner, or gasoline, nor acid or alkaline solvents or fatty acid ester. Failure to observe this precaution can result in discoloration, staining, or damage. It should be noted that certain types of cleaning products contain these compounds. Be sure to read cleaning product labels carefully.
- Do not let perfume, cosmetics or air fresheners (liquid, solid, gel or plate types) direct come into contact with or spill onto interior components such as the air conditioning or audio system. Compounds contained in these products can cause discoloration, staining, peeling of paint, or damage.
- Glass cleaners that contain these compounds must not be used to clean the inside of the windshield or window glass. To clean the glass, wipe using a cloth wet with warm or cold water.
- For models with a rear defogger, when cleaning the interior of the backlight glass, lightly wipe along the defogger wires using a wet cloth to avoid disconnecting the rear defogger. Use of glass cleaner, etc. may cause the defogger to become inoperative.



ADVICE

• Do not apply a silicon-based spray to electrical components such as the audio system or switches. It may cause faults with the points of contact.

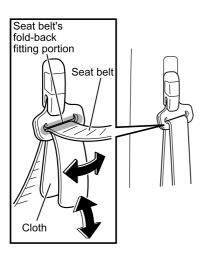
Seat Belt Care

A dirty seat belt can develop retracting problems, and for this reason, regular inspection and upkeep are required.



CAUTION

- Seat belt webbing can lose its strength when bleached or redyed, or when cleaned using gasoline, paint thinners or other volatile substances.
- Do not disassemble the seat belt mechanism in order to remove any foreign material or objects that may have entered the buckle. Instead, arrange for inspection and maintenance to be carried out by your Isuzu Dealer.



Cleaning a Seat Belt's Fold-back Fitting Portion

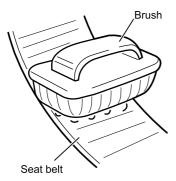
- Fold a piece of cotton cloth, absorbent gauze, or the like of approximately 50 mm (2 in) in width into a rectangle.
- Mix one part neutral detergent into approximately twenty parts warm water.
- Wet the cloth in the detergent mixture, pass it through the fold-back fitting portion of the belt, and slide it back and forth and laterally until dirt can no longer be seen.
- Remove the cloth, remove moisture from the fitting portion of the belt using a dry cloth, and then allow it to dry naturally out of direct sunlight.
- 5. Check to be sure the seat belt retracts and pulls out correctly.

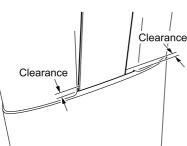


ADVICE

 Avoid using anything like a tool to pass the cloth through the foldback fitting portion or try to remove stubborn dirt. Using such an object can result in plastic parts or seat belt webbing damage.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE





Cleaning a Belt Webbing

- Fully extract the belt and examine for any difference in color between the front and back surfaces.
- Mix one part neutral detergent into approximately twenty parts warm water.
- Wet a nail brush or another similar brush having soft bristles (of nylon or the like) in warm water, and use this to clean away dirt.
- 4. Wipe the seat belt dry using a dry cloth, and then allow it to dry naturally out of direct sunlight.
- 5. Check to be sure the seat belt retracts and pulls out correctly.



ADVICE

- If the above-described upkeep operations do not improve the operation of the seat belt through the retractor, there is a possibility that the belt is making contact with the door pillar trim. In this case, arrange for inspection and maintenance to be carried out by your Isuzu Dealer.
- If the belt is not winding and unwinding correctly, or if inspection reveals problems such as loose mountings, metal parts deformation, webbing damage, fraying or discoloration, arrange for replacement to be carried out by your Isuzu Dealer.

Fabric Seat Covering and Carpet Care

Remove dirt and dust using a home-use electric vacuum cleaner.

Do not remove the carpet. Use standard household cleaning products and methods to remove stains from food, drink and the like.

Be sure to use neutral detergents or cleaning products indicated as higher alcohol based detergents.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

6-105

MAINTENANCE DATA

• Inspection and Maintenance

6-106

Inspection and Maintenance

For safe and economic driving, be sure to have your vehicle inspected and serviced regularly according to the schedule indicated in this chapter.

Maintenance Schedule

To drive your vehicle safely and at minimum cost, it is essential to have your vehicle regularly inspected and serviced at your Isuzu Dealer as per the specified maintenance schedule.

Contact your Isuzu Dealer for inspection that requires disassembly and/or special equipment.

Letters Used to Indicate Maintenance Service Types

- I: Inspect then clean, repair or replace as necessary
- A: Adjust
- R: Replace
- T: Tighten to the specified torque
- L: Lubricate



ADVICE

- When inspecting the items listed below, also inspect the routine inspection items as well.
- *: Your vehicle needs to be maintained more often if it is driven in severe conditions.

Maintenance Schedule for Severecondition Operations

→ Refer to page 6-110

Maintenance Schedule: TFR/S 86 (4JK1-TC Hi-Power)

- I: Inspect then clean, repair or replace as necessary A: Adjust R: Replace
- T: Tighten to the specified torque L: Lubricate

Service item	Service content	Service interval (Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first)	Reference page
* Engine oil	R	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	6-20
* Engine oil filter	R	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	6-25
Engine oil leakage and contamination	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-20
Engine idling speed and acceleration	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-19
Fan belt tension and damage	- 1	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-36
Exhaust system	- 1	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
All hoses and pipes in engine compartment for clog or damage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Valve clearance	- 1	Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) or 48 months	_
* Air cleaner element	I R	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) or 48 months	6-38
Fuel filter	R	Replace the fuel filter when the fuel filter warning light comes on	4-53 6-41
Pre fuel filter	R	Replace the fuel filter when the fuel filter warning light comes on	4-53 6-41
Fuel tank	- 1	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Fuel hoses and pipes for clog or damage	1	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Draining of water separator	Drain the fuel filter when the water separator warning light comes on		4-52 6-41
Engine coolant concentration	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Engine coolant	R	Every 24 months (when Isuzu recommended coolant is used)	6-30
Cooling system for water leakage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-33
Clutch fluid	I R	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) or 48 months	6-76
Clutch pedal travel and play	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
* [M/T] Manual transmission oil	I	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
* [M/T] Transfer case oil	I	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
[M/T] Manual transmission and transfer case oil leakage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_

^{*} Marks: Under severe driving conditions, additional maintenance is required. Refer to "Maintenance Schedule for Severe-condition Operations".



SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Service item	Service content	Service interval (Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first)	Reference page
Gear control mechanism for looseness	I	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
* [A/T] Automatic transmission fluid	ı	Every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 60 months	6-77
* [A/T] Transfer case oil	- 1	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
[A/T] Automatic transmission and transfer case oil leakage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Propeller shaft loose connections	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
* Propeller shaft universal joints and splines for wear	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
[4WD] Propeller shaft universal joints and sliding sleeve	L	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
* Differential gear oil (Front and rear)	R I R	Initial 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) or 48 months	_
Front and rear axle oil leakage	1	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Shift on the fly system gear oil	1	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Front axle shaft rubber boot for damage	1	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Axle case for distortion or damage	I	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Axle shafts for distortion or damage	I	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Power steering fluid	I R	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) or 48 months	6-79
Power steering oil leakage	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-79
* Steering system for looseness or damage	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Power steering hose	I R	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months Every 80,000 km (48,000 miles) or 96 months	_
Steering wheel play	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-78
Steering function	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Right and left turning radius	ı	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Wheel alignment	I	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Steering joint ball for oil leakage or damage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Steering joint ball rubber boot for damage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_

^{*} Marks: Under severe driving conditions, additional maintenance is required. Refer to "Maintenance Schedule for Severe-condition Operations".



SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Service item	Service content	Service interval (Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first)	Reference page
Brake fluid	I R	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) or 48 months	6-46
Brake system for fluid leakage	1	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Brake function	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
* Front disc brake pad and disc wear	- 1	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
* Rear brake lining and drum wear	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Brake pedal travel and play	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-48
Brake pipes and hoses for loose connections or damage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Parking brake function	- 1	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Parking brake lever travel	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-51
Parking brake cables for looseness or damage and guide for damage	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Ratchet for wear or damage	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Leaf/coil springs for damage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Suspension mount for looseness or damage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Shock absorbers for oil leakage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Shock absorbers mount for looseness	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Rubber bushes of suspension wear or damage	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Spring action for loss of balance due to weakening	ı	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 24 months	_
Suspension joint ball rubber boot for damage	1	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Wheel nuts	Т	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-75
Wheel disc for damage	I	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-55 6-71
Front hub bearing grease	R	Every 30,000 km (18,000 miles) or 36 months	_
Front and rear hub bearing for looseness	1	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Tire air pressure and damage	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	6-52 6-54
Tire rotation		Rotate as required	6-57
Other bolts and nuts on chassis and body	ı	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months	_
Air conditioning filter	R	Every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months	_

^{*} Marks: Under severe driving conditions, additional maintenance is required. Refer to "Maintenance Schedule for Severe-condition Operations".



SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Schedule for Severe-condition Operations

Driving condition

- A: Repeated short trips
- B: Driving on rough roads
- C: Driving on dusty roads
- D: Driving in extremely cold weather and/or on salted roads
- E: Towing trailer or climbing mountain frequently
- F: Continuous driving in low speed and/or with a low load
- G: Frequently turning the engine off during DPD regeneration

Service item	Service interval	Condition
Engine oil	Replace every 5,000 km (3,000 miles)	C, F, G, A+D
Engine oil filter	Replace every 5,000 km (3,000 miles)	C, F, G, A+D
Exhaust pipes and mounting	Inspect every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)	A, B, D
Air cleaner element	Inspect every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) Replace every 20,000 km (12,000 miles)	С
Steering system for looseness or damage	Inspect every 5,000 km (3,000 miles)	В
Universal joints and sleeves	Inspect for wear and lubricate every 5,000 km (3,000 miles)	B, C
Manual transmission oil	Replace every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) after replacing at initial 10,000 km (6,000 miles)	В
Automatic transmission fluid	Inspection every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) Replace every 80,000 km (48,000 miles)	B, E, A+D
Transfer case oil	Replace every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) after replacing at initial 10,000 km (6,000 miles)	В
Differential oil	Replace every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) after replacing at initial 10,000 km (6,000 miles)	В
Front brake pad and disc wear	Inspect every 5,000 km (3,000 miles)	A, B, C
Rear brake lining and drum wear	Inspect every 5,000 km (3,000 miles)	A, B, C

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Diesel Fuels

It is extremely important to select correct lubricants and diesel fuels so that your Isuzu vehicle demonstrates its full performance over the years.

Top up the lubricants in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule specified for your vehicle. Use the Isuzu genuine lubricants or those recommended in the list below. Also, do not use additives other than those specified. The lubricant change intervals specified in the Maintenance Schedule and the terms and conditions of the new vehicle warranty assume the use of the Isuzu genuine or Isuzu recommended lubricants listed below.

LUBRICATION		GRADE		FOR EVANDLE	
LUBRICATION	API	ACEA	JASO	FOR EXAMPLE	
* Diesel engine crankcase (Low ash oil)	CI-4 CJ-4	E6 E9	DH-2	BESCO CLEAN (5W-30) (ISUZU) BESCO CLEAN (10W-30) (ISUZU) BESCO CLEAN SUPER (10W-40) (ISUZU) Vanellus Max Drain Eco (10W-40) (BP) Vanellus Multi Fleet Eco (15W-40) (BP) Techtion Global ES (15W-40) (Castrol) Performance Harmony (15W-40) (Elf) Delvac XHP LE (10W-40) (ExxonMobil) Delvac MX ESP (15W-40) (ExxonMobil) Delvac 1300 Super (15W-40) (ExxonMobil) Rimula R6 LM (10W-40) (Shell) Rubia TIR 7900 (15W-40) (Total)	
Manual transmission (Model with AY6)	GL-5 MT1	_	_	Multigear S (75W-90) (Chevron/Texaco/Caltex) JWS2250C (75W-90) (ExxonMobil)	
Transfer case	CI-4	E7	DH-1	BESCO TRANSAXLE OIL (5W-30) (ISUZU) Delo 400 Multigrade (15W-40) (Chevron/Texaco/Caltex) Performance Victory (15W-40) (Elf) Delvac MX (15W-40) (ExxonMobil) Rimula R4X (15W-40) (Shell) Rubia TIR 7400 (15W-40) (Total)	
Automatic transmission				Mobil ATF 3309 (ExxonMobil)	
Front differential	GL-5 MT1	_	_	BESCO SHIFT ON THE FLY (75W-90) (ISUZU) Multigear S (75W-90) (Chevron/Texaco/Caltex) Mobil Delvac Synthetic Gear Oil (75W-90) (ExxonMobil)	
Rear differential	GL-5 MT1	_	_	BESCO SHIFT ON THE FLY (75W-90) (ISUZU) BESCO GEAR OIL SH (80W-90), (90), (140) (ISUZU) Syntrax Universal (80W-90) (Castrol) Thuban GL-5 EP (80W-90), (85W-140) (Chevron/Texaco/Caltex) Gearelf 5 (80W-90), (85W-140) (Elf) Mobil Delvac Synthetic Gear Oil (75W-90) (ExxonMobil) Mobilube S (80W-90) (ExxonMobil) Spirax S2 A IZ (80W-90) (Shell) Spirax S3 AX (80W-90) (Shell) Transmission XPM (80W-90) (Total) Transmission TM (80W-90), (85W-140) (Total)	

^{*:} We recommend you to use a low ash content engine oil that is suitably compatible with the DPD.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE



NOTE

• The factory filled SAE 5W-30 engine oil is optimal for fuel efficiency and low carbon dioxide (CO₂) emissions, as well as for low temperature starts.

Engine Oil and Gear Oil Viscosity Charts → Refer to page 6-114

LUBRICATION	GRADE
Power steering	BESCO ATF III (ISUZU) DEXRON® III or equivalent
Center bearing	BESCO L-2 GREASE (No.2), L-3 GREASE (No.3) (ISUZU)
Kingpins	NLGI #2 or #3 multi-purpose grease
Propeller shaft sliding yoke	BESCO ONE LUBER MO GREASE (No.2) (ISUZU)
Universal joint	NLGI #2 multi-purpose grease containing molybdenum disulfide

COOLANT	GRADE
Engine cooling system	GENERAL MOTORS ENGINEERING STANDARDS GM6277M (Ethylene glycol based non-silicate and non-borate coolant) or
	equivalent.



ADVICE

• Mix the coolant and water at an appropriate concentration.

Preparing Engine Coolant

→ Refer to page 6-31

FLUID	MAKE	BRAND	GRADE
Clutch and brake fluid	ISUZU AC Delco	BESCO BRAKE FLUID Supreme 11	DOT 3 (FMVSS 116 or SAE J1703)
reservoir	_	_	DOT 4 (FMVSS 116 or SAE J1704)

DIESEL FUEL / APPLICABLE STANDARD (Sulfur content below 10 ppm)			
Deutsche Industrie Normen (DIN)	Based on EN590 : 2009		
British Standards (BS)	Based on EN590 : 2009		



• Open the fuel tank filler cap slowly. If you open it quickly, the fuel tank pressure may cause fuel to spurt out.



CAUTION

- Be sure to use extra-low-sulfur diesel fuel (with sulfur content no higher than 10 ppm).
- If you supply the vehicle with poor-quality fuel, water-removal additive or other
 additive, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol-based fuel, it could harm the fuel filter,
 prevent proper movement of fuel-lubricated parts in the injectors and adversely
 affect engine components, possibly resulting in a breakdown. If you accidentally
 put the wrong fuel in the tank, drain it all out. Starting the engine with the wrong
 fuel in the tank could result in a fire and engine damage.



ADVICE

• Only use fuels listed above. Do not use other fuels as they may adversely affect the engine.

Refueling Using Fuels that Contain Biodiesel Fuel (Fatty Acid Methyl Esters (FAME))

Models for the European Market

- You can use standard type diesel fuels that meet EN590. A standard type diesel fuel means the fuel that contains biodiesel fuel (FAME) which meets EN14214.
- Using diesel fuels that do not meet EN590, or using fuels that contain FAME which does not meet EN14214 may, in the worst case, cause a serious engine failure.
- Do not leave the diesel fuel that contains FAME unused in the vehicle for a long period of time. FAME contents may block up the fuel system, causing a serious engine failure.
- The vehicle is covered under the vehicle warranty given if the fuel that meets EN590 is used. However, if the vehicle is left unused for a long period of time, the characteristics of the fuel may change, causing a vehicle failure. The vehicle warranty is not applicable in such cases.



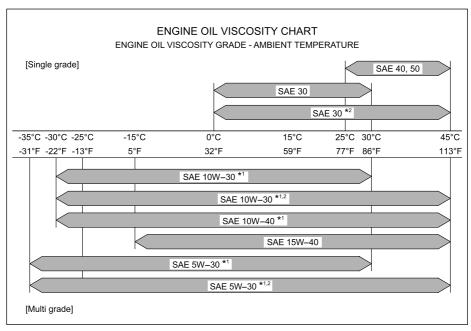
NOTE

• When changing from 0% FAME diesel to the fuel that contains FAME which meets EN590, there may be a negative impact on performance when pulling away and driving in general.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Engine Oil and Gear Oil Viscosity Charts

Select appropriate engine and gear oils in accordance with the tables below. It is also important to select the viscosity appropriate for the temperature at which your vehicle operates. Use the following tables for making correct selections.

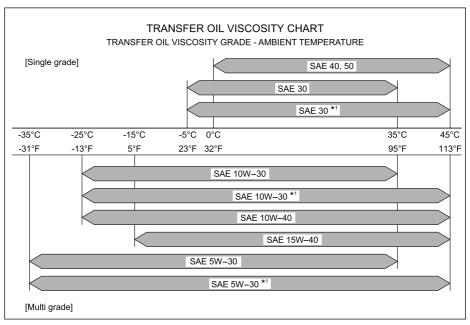


- *1: At ambient temperatures below -25°C (-13°F), this can only be used when starting aids (oil pan heater, block heater, etc.) are used.
- *2: Use is possible at ambient temperatures up to 45°C (113°F) only in the case of Isuzu genuine oil.

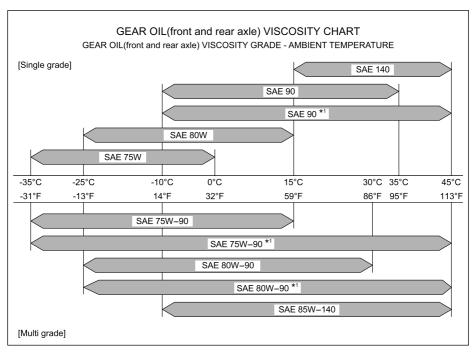


NOTE

- In extremely low temperatures, engine starts may be difficult when SAE 10W-30 or higher viscosity grade engine oils are used. Because of this, use of SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.
- Higher viscosity grade engine oils may be better for when the vehicle is driven at high speeds or when it is under extreme load conditions.



*1: Use is possible at ambient temperatures up to 45°C (113°F) only in the case of Isuzu genuine oil.



 \star 1: Use is possible at ambient temperatures up to 45°C (113°F) only in the case of Isuzu genuine oil.

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Troubleshooting	7-
When the Vehicle Breaks Down during Driving	7-
When the Tire Goes Flat	7-
When the Engine Stops While Driving	7-1
When the Engine Stalls and Cannot be Restarted	7-1
When the Brakes Do not Work	7-1
When the Battery Goes Flat	7-2
When the Fuel Runs Out	7-2
When the Generator Warning Light Comes On	7-2
When the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light Comes On	7-2
When the Warning Light Comes On	7-2
When the Engine Overheats	7-2
When the Bulb Does not Come On	7-2
Replacing the Fuses and Relays	7-4
When Driving on Bad Roads	7-5
• Towing	7-5

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Troubleshooting

Performing regular inspections and maintenance prevents damage. Be sure to perform inspections and maintenance at regular intervals. Also, quickly rectify any fault in the vehicle (even a small fault) to prevent it from becoming more serious.

If a symptom shown in the following table occurs, perform inspections and take corrective action in accordance with the table. If you are unable to perform a repair, the corrective action shown in the table does not eliminate a symptom or you cannot locate a fault, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



ADVICE

• Any item for which there is a \odot in the "Corrective action" column requires repairs and adjustments. Contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Symptom		Cause	Corrective action	Reference page
		Flat batteries	Recharge or replace	7-20
		Battery terminals detached, loose or corroded	After repairing corroded section, connect the terminals firmly	6-95
	Starter doesn't	Starter ground wire terminal detached, loose or corroded	After repairing corroded section, connect the terminals firmly	_
	turn over, or is weak	Engine oil viscosity too high	Change to oil with proper viscosity	6-114
		Starter or electrical system is faulty	0	_
Engine doesn't start		Selector lever is not in the "P" or "N" position (Automatic transmission vehicle)	Place selector lever in "P" or "N" position. (Automatic transmission vehicle)	4-83
	Starter turns over	No fuel	Make sure there are no fuel leaks, and then add fuel	
		Air in the fuel system	Bleed fuel system	7-23
		Fuel filter is clogged	0	_
		Fuel is frozen	Warm fuel pipe with hot water or wait until it gets warmer	
		Common rail system is faulty	0	_
		Preheating system is faulty	0	_

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Symptom	Cause	Corrective action	Reference page
Engine starts, but immediately stops	Fuel filter is clogged	0	_
	Air cleaner is clogged	Clean or replace element	6-38 6-40
	Common rail system is faulty	©	_
Unsteady engine speed	There is water or air in the fuel system	Drain water from fuel filter or bleed fuel system	6-42 7-23
	Fuel system is faulty	0	_
	Engine not sufficiently warmed up	Allow engine to warm up sufficiently	_
	Excessive engine oil	Correct oil level	6-20
White or black exhaust smoke	Air cleaner is clogged	Clean or replace element	6-38 6-40
	Fuel system is faulty	0	_
	DPD is faulty	0	_
	No or low engine coolant	Add engine coolant	6-30
Engine is overheating	Front of radiator is clogged with dirt	Wash clean with tap water	6-35
	Radiator cap not sufficiently tightened	Refill the engine coolant and make sure the radiator cap is firmly tightened.	6-30
	Fan belt loose	Adjust the tension or replace the belt	6-36
	Engine coolant dirty	0	_
	Fan clutch is faulty	0	_
	Radiator cap dirty or faulty	0	
Oil pressure is low	Improper engine oil viscosity	Change to oil with proper viscosity	6-114
	Engine oil level too low	Add engine oil	6-23
	Engine inner components are faulty	0	_
	Meter, indicator/warning lights or switches faulty	©	_



7-4 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Symptom	Cause	Corrective action	Reference page
Not enough engine	Parking brake not fully released	Make sure it is fully released	_
	Brake dragging	0	_
	Clutch slipping (Manual transmission model)	0	_
	Air cleaner is clogged	Clean or replace element	6-38 6-40
power	Fuel filter is clogged	0	_
	Engine control system faulty	©	_
	Common rail system faulty	0	_
	Engine faulty	0	_
	DPD clogged	0	_
	Drum-to-lining gap too large	©	_
Brakes not effective	Air in brake fluid	0	_
	Brake system failure	0	_
Uneven braking	Unbalanced air pressure in tires	Adjust to proper air pressure	6-52
	Tire unevenly worn	Replace tire	6-67
	Unbalanced drum-to-lining gap of the wheels	0	_
	Poor wheel alignment	0	_
	Loaded too far forward	Load properly	2-6
Steering wheel hard to turn	Power steering fluid level too low	Add fluid	6-79
	Insufficient air in front tires	Adjust to proper inflation pressure	6-52
Excessive play in the steering wheel	Wheel nuts loose	Tighten to the specified torque	6-75
	Unbalanced inflation pressure in the tires	Adjust to proper inflation pressure	6-52
	Unbalanced tires	©	_
	Excessive steering wheel play	0	_
Poor steering wheel return	Poor lubrication in the steering mechanisms	0	_
	Poor wheel alignment	0	_

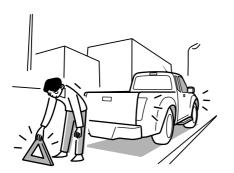
IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Symptom		Cause	Corrective action	Reference page
Clutch disengages poorly (Manual transmission model)		Insufficient clutch fluid	Add fluid	6-76
		Excessive clutch pedal free play	0	_
Loud or abnormal noises	From the transmission	Insufficient transmission oil	0	_
		Transmission inner components faulty	©	_
	From differential	Insufficient differential gear oil	©	_
		Differential inner components faulty	o	_
	From the suspension	Spring pins, shackles, or stoppers worn	0	_
	From the propeller shaft	Poor lubrication in each component	0	_
		Splines or bearings worn	0	
	From the transfer case	Insufficient transfer oil	0	
		Transfer inner components faulty	0	_



IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

When the Vehicle Breaks Down during Driving



- Operate the hazard warning flasher and pull the vehicle immediately over to a safe place that doesn't impede traffic (shoulder, verge). Place the triangle reflectors to alert other traffic to the presence of your vehicle.
- 2. Have the other passengers get out and wait in a safe place.
- 3. Walk to a safe place and take appropriate measures by using the closest telephone, etc.



[If there is a fuel leak]

 Leaking fuel from the vehicle is dangerous due to possible combustion or explosion. Stop the engine immediately.

When the Tire Goes Flat



When the tire gets flat while driving, avoid hard braking, hold on to the steering wheel firmly and stop the vehicle.

If a spare tire is equipped, change the tire. If the emergency flat tire repair kit is equipped, perform the repair using the emergency flat tire repair kit.

Perform changing and repair of a tire using the emergency flat tire repair kit on a flat space to prevent obstructing other vehicles or pedestrians.



 If you continue to drive on a flat tire, undue force will be applied to the wheel bolts, possibly causing the bolts to break and the wheel to come off.

Tools → Refer to page 6-7

Spare Tire → Refer to page 6-58

Handling the Jack → Refer to page 6-62

Changing Tires → Refer to page 6-67



7-8 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

How to Use the Emergency Flat Tire Repair Kit (4WD Crew Cab Model)

MARNING

- The sealant is toxic. Avoid swallowing. If you mistakenly swallow any of the sealant, drink as much water as you can and get medical attention immediately.
- Make sure to use and store the sealant out of the reach of children.
- If the sealant gets in your eyes, rinse it out immediately with a large amount
 of water for 15 minutes or longer. If you continue to feel irritation or other
 abnormality, seek medical attention.
- If the sealant gets on your skin, rinse it off using soap with a large amount of water. If any abnormality occurs, seek medical attention.
- When performing emergency repairs, stop the vehicle in a safe and level location.
- If the valve insert remover is used while air remains in the tire, the valve insert may fly out.
- If the sealant bottle is shaken while the filler hose is attached, the sealant may fly out.
- When performing emergency repairs, connect the filler hose firmly to the tire valve.
- When filling with sealant, be sure to connect the filler hose firmly to the tire valve to prevent the sealant from leaking.
- When the air compressor is running, heat is generated in parts and the air compressor becomes hot. Handle with care during and after use.
- After filling with sealant, drive the vehicle slowly and carefully. Be especially careful on curves and turns



- The emergency flat tire repair kit cannot be used in the following cases. Contact an Isuzu Dealer or roadside assistance service.
 - If there are cuts larger than approximately 4 mm piercing the tire tread.
 - If there are cuts on the sidewall of the tire.
 - If the tire pressure is remarkably low and the tire is damaged by driving at a reduced tire pressure.
 - If the tire bead is completely unseated outside of the rim.
 - If the rim is damaged.
- Small punctures in the tire tread caused by a nail or screw can be sealed with the emergency flat tire repair kit.
- · Do not remove nails or screws from the tire.



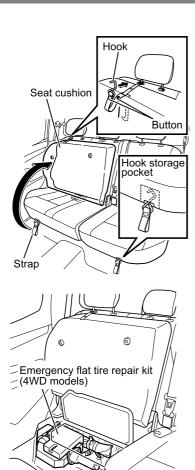
- Do not continue driving with a punctured tire, even for a short distance, as the tire and/or wheel may become damaged beyond repair.
- If a nail or screw becomes stuck in the tire tread, perform emergency repair without removing the nail or screw. If you remove the nail or screw first, you may be unable to perform emergency repair using the Emergency Flat Tire Repair Kit.
- · Do not place the valve insert on dirty ground.
- Do not remove the inner lid of the sealant bottle.
- Turn the valve insert remover with your hand. Using tools to turn the valve insert remover may cause damage.
- Do not use the air compressor continuously for more than 10 minutes, as the motor may overheat and become damaged.
- The air compressor is not water-resistant. When using in rainy conditions, protect the air compressor from water droplets.
- The air compressor uses DC 12 V power only. Do not use other voltages.
- Do not expose the air compressor to impact, as this may cause failure. Do not disassemble or modify the air compressor.
- Do not lubricate the air compressor. Applying lubrication oil to the air compressor may cause failure.
- Blowing dusty air into the air compressor may cause failure. Do not use the air compressor on sandy locations such as on sand, etc.
- If the air compressor becomes sluggish or excessively hot while running, it is overheating. If this occurs, switch it off and leave it for 30 minutes or more.

7-10 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY



NOTE

- One sealant bottle is only sufficient to perform emergency repair of one tire.
- If sealant adheres to clothing, it may be impossible to remove.
- The sealant is usable within an ambient temperature range of -30°C to 60°C (-22°F to 140°F).
- In low ambient temperatures, the sealant becomes viscous and difficult to pour. In such cases, leave the sealant inside the vehicle to warm up and make pouring easier.
- The expiration date of the sealant is 4 years after the date of manufacture. (The expiration date is indicated on the container.)
- Replace the sealant with new sealant before the expiration date. Request replacement from your Isuzu Dealer.
- · Consult your Isuzu Dealer when purchasing sealant.
- The air compressor makes a loud noise when running. This does not indicate a failure
- Do not use the air compressor for any purpose other than filling automobile tires with air.
- Use a soft cloth to wipe off any sealant adhering to the wheel. The wheel can be used after the sealant is wiped off.



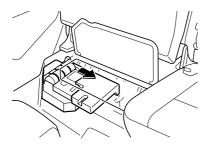
Storage Location

The emergency flat tire repair kit are positioned under the right rear seat. Pull the strap forward to raise the seat cushion. Remove the hook of the strap edge from the strap button and secure the hook to the headrest stay.

MARNING

- When raising the seat cushion, the hook of seat cushion strap must be secured to the headrest stay to keep the seat cushion locked safely in the storage position.
- When returning the seat cushion to its original position, hold the seat cushion and slowly lay it down.
 Finally, try to move the seat cushion to check that it is completely locked.
- After returning the seat cushion to its original position, do not forget to return the hook to the hook storage pocket.
- When returning the seat cushion to its original position, make sure the seat belt does not get trapped. In addition, make sure the seat belt lays on top of the seat cushion after returning the seat cushion to its original position.

7-12 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY



Loosen the jack release knob to remove the jack. Slide the cover of the emergency flat tire repair kit sideways, then pull out the emergency flat tire repair kit.



- Do not remove the cover except to repair a puncture.
- If the cover is lost or damaged, obtain or replace the cover. For obtaining or replacing the cover, consult your Isuzu Dealer. Do not use a damaged cover or operate without a cover, as the sealant bottle may become damaged and leak sealant.

Kit contents



Air compressor







Sealant bottle



Speed restriction label

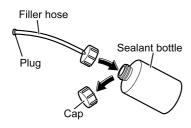


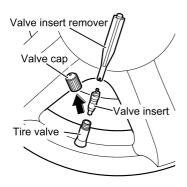
Filler horse

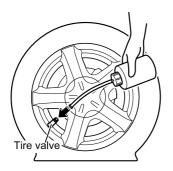


Extension hose (for draining sealant)









Repair

- Take out the sealant bottle and air compressor. Shake the sealant bottle well.
- Remove the cap of the sealant bottle, and screw the supplied filler hose onto the sealant bottle, thereby piercing the inner cap of the sealant bottle.



NOTE

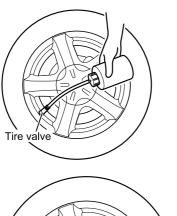
- Shake the sealant bottle well before screwing the filler hose onto the sealant bottle.
- Screw the filler hose without removing the inner cap of the sealant bottle.
- 3. Unscrew the valve cap from the tire valve. Remove the valve insert by using the valve insert remover that is supplied. Put the valve insert in a clean place for reuse.



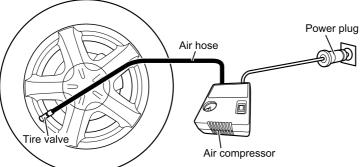
WARNING

- If air remains in the tire, the valve insert could shoot out. Be careful when removing the valve insert.
- 4. Remove the plug from the filler hose. Insert the filler hose into the tire valve.

7-14 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY



5. Hold the sealant bottle with the bottom upward and pump the sealant bottle to fill the entire contents of the sealant bottle into the tire. After filling the entire contents of the sealant bottle into the tire, pull off the filler hose. Firmly screw the valve insert into the tire valve. If the valve insert is dirty or lost, use the spare valve insert that is supplied.



6. Screw the air hose of the air compressor into the tire valve to connect them. Install the power plug to an accessory power outlet. Turn the starter switch to the "ACC" position and turn "ON" the air compressor power. Fill the tire to the specified air pressure.

Tire Size and Tire Air Pressure \rightarrow Refer to page 6-53



• Do not stand next to the tire when inflating it. It could burst.

A CAUTION

- Push the button of the air compressor to turn it ON/OFF.
- Do not operate the air compressor for longer than 25 minutes. Doing so could cause the air compressor to overheat.

If the specified level of the tire air pressure cannot be reached within 15 minutes, jack up the tire. Rotate the jacked up tire 3 times or more to spread the sealant throughout the entire tire. Then, inflate the tire again until the tire pressure reaches the specified level.



NOTE

- If the air pressure cannot reach the specified air pressure level, the tire may be severely damaged. In this case, the emergency flat tire repair kit cannot be used to repair the tire. Contact an Isuzu Dealer or roadside assistance service.
- If the tire gets overinflated, deflate the air by loosening the screw of the air hose halfway.
- 7. Inflate the tire until the air pressure in the tire reaches the specified air pressure level, and switch the air compressor switch "OFF". Next, remove the air hoes and power plug. Install the valve cap on the tire valve.
- Immediately drive the vehicle a short distance after inflating the tire to the specified air pressure. Drive carefully and do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 MPH).

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

After 10 minutes or 5 km (3 miles) of driving, check the tire pressure with the pressure gauge of the air compressor.

If the air pressure indicates more than **130 kPa** (1.3 kgf/cm² / **18 psi**), the emergency repair is completed. However, if the air pressure level is less than the specified air pressure, correct the tire pressure to the specified air pressure.

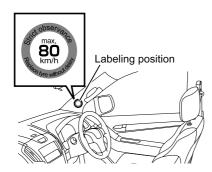
If the tire pressure has dropped below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm² / 18 psi), the emergency flat tire repair kit cannot be used to repair the tire. Do not drive the vehicle and contact an Isuzu Dealer or roadside assistance service.



- Be sure to check the tire pressure and to confirm the completion of the emergency repair.
- Affix the supplied speed restriction label in the driver's field of view, and drive carefully to the nearest Isuzu Dealer or a tire repair shop.

MARNING

 Do not affix the speed restriction label to the steering pad.
 Also do not affix the label to the warning and indicator lights, and to the speedometer.



A CAUTION

- Have the tire changed at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.
 - Contact a tire repair shop to fix the tire that was repaired using the emergency flat tire repair kit.
- The wheel can be reused after completely wiping sealant off with a cloth so that it does not rust, but the tire valve must be replaced with a new one.
- Give the used sealant bottle to an Isuzu Dealer for extraction of the sealant from the tire.

When the Engine Stops While Driving



As the brake booster will no longer operate, brake effectiveness will be reduced. The power steering system will not work so the steering wheel will be hard to turn. Stay calm and decrease vehicle speed by pressing the brake pedal. Then, promptly pull the vehicle over to a safe location and inspect its condition. If the engine does not start, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

MARNING

- Vehicle operations will change, so stop the vehicle in a safe place with the following in mind.
 - The power steering system will not work so the steering wheel will be hard to turn. It will require more strength than during normal operation.
 - As the brake booster will no longer be functional, brake effectiveness will be greatly reduced. Be sure to apply more pressure than usual to the brake pedal.



NOTE

 If the engine stopped because the vehicle ran out of fuel while driving, refueling alone will not be enough to restart the engine. Bleed the fuel system after refueling the vehicle.

When the Fuel Runs Out

→ Refer to page 7-22

When the Engine Stalls and Cannot be Restarted

Place the gearshift lever (manual transmission models) or the selector lever (automatic transmission models) in the "N" position and push the vehicle to a safe place.



CAUTION

• In case of emergency with manual transmission models, place the gearshift lever in "R (reverse)", "1 (1st gear)" or "2 (2nd gear)" if the starter turns over. Then, keep turning the starter switch with your foot off the clutch pedal to move the vehicle.

When the Brakes Do not Work



If the brakes unexpectedly stop working, reduce speed by quickly shifting gears down incrementally to 1st gear. Gradually pull the parking brake lever while firmly holding on to the steering wheel and stop the vehicle on the side of the road. After stopping the vehicle, immediately contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



CAUTION

- It is very dangerous to suddenly pull the parking brake lever all the way while moving at high speed. Reduce speed first by shifting down and then gradually pull the parking brake lever.
- Do not continue driving with the brakes in a non-working condition.

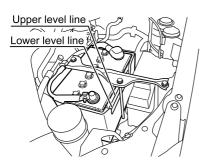
When the Battery Goes Flat

Use a jumper cable (sold separately) and the batteries of another vehicle to start the engine in this sequence.



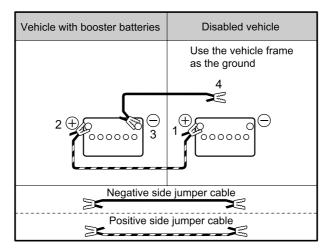
CAUTION

- For safety and the protection of the vehicle, do not push-start the vehicle.
- Make sure that the booster batteries in the vehicle providing the charge have the same voltage as the disabled vehicle.
- Never let the battery's positive and negative terminals to come into contact with one another.
- Never let the clips come into contact with one another when connecting the cables.
- · Ask the nearest Isuzu Dealer to recharge the battery.
- Do not disconnect a battery terminal with the engine running. It could cause a breakdown in the electrical system.



- 1. Check the battery fluid level in the disabled vehicle.
- 2. Use a vehicle that has a charged battery with the same voltage.

3. Connect the jumper cables in the numbered sequence in the drawing.



4. After connecting the cables, start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery. Slightly rev up the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

Starting the Engine

→ Refer to page 4-4

5. If the engine in the disabled vehicle starts, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence as they were connected.

MARNING

- Check the battery fluid level before connecting the jumper cables. Usage or charging of the battery when the battery fluid is below the lower level line can accelerate deterioration, and give rise to dangerous situations such as the generation of heat and may even cause an explosion. Perform the work after adding the battery fluid.
- A vehicle battery generates flammable gas that could explode. Be careful of the following to avoid creating sparks.
 - Do not connect one end of the jumper cable shown in step 4 in the drawing directly to the battery's negative terminal. Connect the jumper cable to a metal part of the engine that is away from the battery.
 - Do not let the cable connected to the positive terminal come in contact with the cable connected to the negative terminal or the body.
 - Keep flames away from the battery.
- Be careful not to become entangled in any belts when connecting and removing the cables.

7-22 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY



NOTE

• When it is difficult to start the engine in a cold location, after connecting the jumper cables, start the engine of the vehicle with the booster batteries. Wait a few minutes before starting the engine of the disabled vehicle.

When the Fuel Runs Out

Model without MID

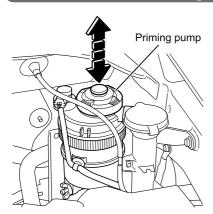


When the fuel runs out, air will enter the fuel system, so refueling alone will not be enough to restart the engine. Use the following methods to bleed the fuel system.

Model with MID



Bleeding the Fuel System



- Operate the priming pump up and down to perform air bleeding. Repeatedly operate the priming pump up and down until its operational force becomes strong.
- 2. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, start the engine.

Starting the Engine

→ Refer to page 4-4

- 3. After the engine has started, allow it to idle for 1 minute.
- 4. Slowly and fully depress the accelerator pedal to increase the engine r/min, then release your foot from the pedal once the tachometer pointer comes close to the red zone (Repeat this operation a few times).
- 5. If the engine could not be started, try again from step 1.



ADVICE

- Insufficient air bleeding can result in faulty engine operation. Be sure, therefore, to always carry out the procedure described in after starting the engine.
- Insufficient air bleeding may cause the malfunction indicator light (MIL) or SVS indicator light to illuminate, or improper engine performance.

When the Generator Warning Light Comes On



When this warning light comes on, the charging system may have failed. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, perform checks and take corrective action.

Generator Warning Light

→ Refer to page 4-50

Check and Corrective Action

- 1. Check to see if the fan belt is broken or loose.
- 2. If the fan belt is loose, adjust the tension.
- 3. If there is no abnormality in the fan belt, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Fan Belt and Air Conditioning Compressor Belt

→ Refer to page 6-36



 Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. The battery can be discharged.

When the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light Comes On



When this warning light comes on, the oil pressure is too low.

Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, stop the engine, perform checks and then take corrective action.

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light

→ Refer to page 4-46

Check and Corrective Action

- 1. Check the engine oil level.
- 2. If the engine oil level is too low, check for leaks and add oil.
- When the oil level is normal and there are no oil leaks, the oil filter may be clogged.
 - Replace the oil filter. Have the engine oil filter replacement performed at an Isuzu Dealer.
- When the oil level is normal and the oil filter is not clogged, but there are oil leaks, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Engine Oil → Refer to page 6-20



 Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. It could damage the engine.



NOTE

 In winter, when the engine oil temperature is low and the oil viscosity is high, the light might come on for a time. It will go out when the engine warms up.

When the Warning Light Comes On

If the Warning Light and Indicator Light come on, refer to chapter 4.

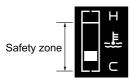
Warning and Indicator Lights

→ Refer to page 4-39

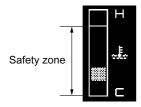
When the Engine Overheats

If engine power drops and the gauge on the engine coolant temperature gauge goes up above the upper limit of the safety zone and enters the "H" zone, the engine is overheating. The engine overheat warning light will come on. Either steam or boiling water will squirt out of the radiator. Take the following corrective actions immediately.

Model without MID



Model with MID



Engine overheat warning light



- Operate the hazard warning flasher and pull the vehicle immediately over to a safe place that doesn't impede traffic (shoulder, verge) and park it.
- 2. Lower the temperature of the engine for a while with the engine idling.



 If steam or abnormal noises are being emitted from within the engine compartment, immediately stop the engine and contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer. Should this happen, do not open the engine hood as you may be scalded by hot water that could possibly blow out.

(S

ADVICE

- Do not stop the engine immediately. Otherwise, the engine may seize.
- Turn off the air conditioner if it is running.
- Stop the engine if the engine coolant temperature gauge does not go down even when the engine is idled.
 Contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.
- When the gauge of the engine coolant temperature gauge returns to the middle of the safety zone, stop the engine.

MARNING

- Even when the engine has been stopped, the engine coolant in the radiator remains under pressure. Immediately removing the radiator cap could cause steam or hot water to blow out, and you could be scalded as a result. The engine coolant in the reserve tank may also be hot. Immediately removing the cap could cause hot water to blow out, and possibly scald you.
- When removing the radiator cap and reserve tank cap, use a thick cloth to cover the cap and turn it little by little.



4. Check the engine coolant level in the reserve tank and radiator after the engine has sufficiently cooled. If the level is insufficient, add engine coolant. Also, check to see if the fan belt is loose or has been damaged.



ADVICE

- Make sure that the gauge on the engine coolant temperature gauge is below
 "C" before adding engine coolant. Adding engine coolant when the engine is not sufficiently cool could cause a breakdown in the engine or damage it.
- When tap water only has been used for engine coolant in an emergency, adjust the engine coolant concentration as soon as possible.

Engine Coolant → Refer to page 6-30
Fan Belt and Air Conditioning
Compressor Belt

→ Refer to page 6-36

When the Bulb Does not Come On

- 1. Check each bulb for blowout.
- If a bulb has blown out, replace it. Always place the starter switch in the "LOCK" position and place all the other switches in the off position before replacing the blown bulbs.
- 3. If the bulb has not blown out, the fault may be in the wiring. Contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



CAUTION

- Using bulbs with a wattage other than that specified could cause the bulb or the wiring to become hot. This could result in the warping of the lens and case, and it could also lead to the outbreak of fire.
- Bulbs are hot immediately after they go out. When replacing the bulbs, avoid being burned by making sure they are fully cooled.
- Never drive the vehicle with the bulbs not working. This could result in an accident.
- Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas. Be careful when handling halogen bulbs as damaging or dropping them could cause an explosion.



ADVICE

 When one bulb of a pair of lights, such as a headlight blows out, the other bulb is approaching the end of its useful life. We recommend that both be changed at the same time.



NOTE

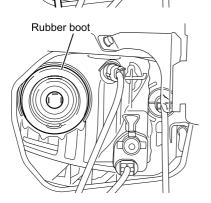
- Be sure to adjust the headlight aim to prevent other drivers from becoming blinded. Have the headlight aim adjusted at the nearest Isuzu Dealer.
- For the lights (lighting equipment) such as headlights, inside of the lens can
 mist up momentarily when driving in the rain or during the car wash. Also, the
 temperature difference between inside and outside of the lights can sometimes
 cause the water condensation inside the lens. This is not abnormal because this
 is the same phenomenon as the windshield or door glass fogs up when it rains.
 If it is demisted minutes after the light is turned on, things are normal.

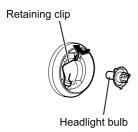
Bulb Wattage

Position	Lig	ghts		Bulb wattage
	Halogen headlight	Except projector type	High beam/ low beam	60/55 W
		Projector type	High beam	60 W
			Low beam	55 W
Front	Eag light	Model without daytime running light		51 W
	Fog light	Model with daytime running light		55 W
	Daytime running light			13 W
	Turn signal light			21 W (Amber)
	Clearance light			5 W
	Turn signal light	Front door mounted type		5 W
Side		Outside rearview mirror mounted type		LED
	Taillight and stop light	Bulb type		5/21 W
		LED type		LED
	Turn signal light	Standard type		21 W (Amber)
Rear	Turri signar lignt	Horizontal type		21 W
Real	Back up light		21 W	
	License plate light			5 W
	Rear fog light			21 W
	High mounted stop light			5 W
Interior	Map lights		5 W	
	Dome light			10 W

Contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer when replacing lights that aren't listed here.

Headlight connector





Replacing the Headlight Bulbs (Except Projector Type)

1. Open the engine hood and engage the support.

Engine Hood → Refer to page 6-10

2. Disconnect the connector from the bulb. Remove the connector by pushing the tabs.

3. Remove the rubber boot.

- 4. Release the bulb retaining clip. Remove the bulb.
- 5. Install a new bulb and secure it using the retaining clip.



ADVICE

 Do not touch the glass of the bulb with your hand. Soiling the glass will cause the bulb to blow out.

6. Attach a rubber boot. Connect the connector.



ADVICE

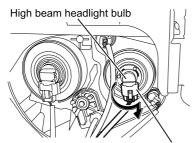
 When attaching the rubber boot, press in both the outside and inside circumference of it. Make sure that the rubber boot, the headlight assembly, and the bulb are securely installed without any raised section. If the rubber boot is not firmly in place, water could get inside the headlight and lead to a malfunction.

Replacing the High Beam Headlight Bulbs (Projector Type)

1. Open the engine hood and engage the support.

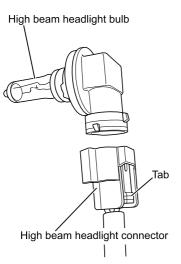
Engine Hood → Refer to page 6-10

2. Turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.



High beam headlight connector

7-32 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY



Disconnect the connector from the bulb. Remove the connector by pushing the tab.

4. Connect the connector to the new bulb.



ADVICE

- Do not touch the glass of the bulb with your hand. Soiling the glass will cause the bulb to blow out.
- 5. Insert the bulb and turn it clockwise to lock it securely.



ADVICE

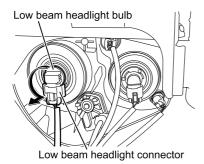
 If the socket is not locked securely, water could get inside the light and lead to a malfunction.

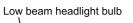
Replacing the Low Beam Headlight Bulbs (Projector Type)

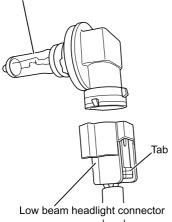
1. Open the engine hood and engage the support.

Engine Hood → Refer to page 6-10

2. Turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.







- 3. Disconnect the connector from the bulb. Remove the connector by pushing the tab.
- 4. Connect the connector to the new bulb.

(g)

ADVICE

- Do not touch the glass of the bulb with your hand. Soiling the glass will cause the bulb to blow out.
- 5. Insert the bulb and turn it clockwise to lock it securely.



ADVICE

 If the socket is not locked securely, water could get inside the light and lead to a malfunction.

Replacing the Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

$\boxed{\Lambda}$

CAUTION

- Do not replace a bulb with one other than the specified wattage. This will cause abnormal flashing, particularly for turn signal lights.
- 1. Open the engine hood and engage the support.

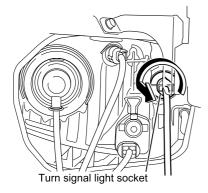
Engine Hood → Refer to page 6-10

2. Turn the socket counterclockwise to remove it.

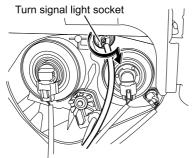
NOTE

 Pliers may be used if it is not possible to turn the socket by hand (models with projector type headlights).

Except Projector Type Headlights Models

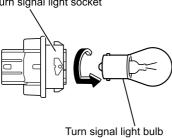


Projector Type Headlights Models



Except Projector Type Headlights Models

Turn signal light socket



Projector Type Headlights Models

Turn signal light bulb

Turn signal light socket

3. Pull out the bulb from the socket.

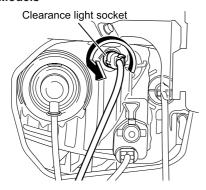
- 4. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- 5. Insert the socket and turn it clockwise to lock it securely.



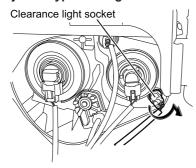
ADVICE

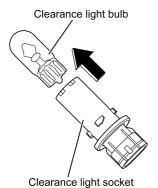
• If the socket is not locked securely, water could get inside the light and lead to a malfunction.

Except Projector Type Headlights Models



Projector Type Headlights Models





Replacing the Clearance Light Bulbs

1. Open the engine hood and engage the support.

Engine $Hood \rightarrow Refer to page 6-10$

2. Turn the socket counterclockwise to remove it.

3. Pull out the bulb from the socket.

- 4. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- 5. Insert the socket and turn it clockwise to lock it securely.

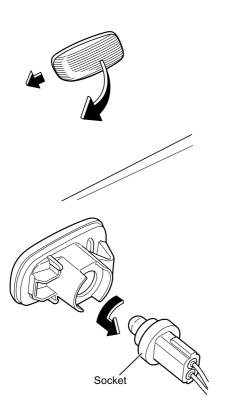


ADVICE

 If the socket is not locked securely, water could get inside the light and lead to a malfunction.



- While sliding the turn signal light (front door mounted type) toward the front of the vehicle, slide and then pull it to expose the rear part of the light. Disengage the clip on the side of the rear of the light from the door panel. When the clip has been removed, pull the light out while sliding it out toward the rear of the vehicle.
- 2. Loosen the socket by turning it counterclockwise.

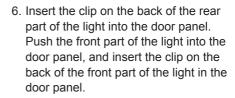


- 3. Pull out the bulb from the socket.
- 4. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- 5. Insert the socket and turn it clockwise to lock it securely.

7-38

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY





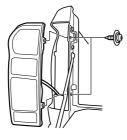


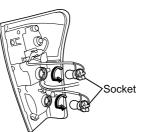
Replacing the Rear Combination Light Bulbs



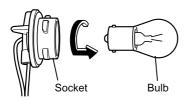
NOTE

- If the stop and tail light bulb is an LED specification, have the stop and tail light bulb replaced at an Isuzu Dealer.
- 1. Open the tailgate. Remove the 2 screws. Remove the rear combination lights.





2. Turn the socket of the replacing bulb counterclockwise to remove it.



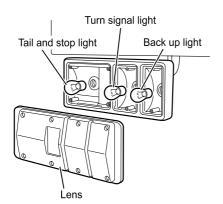
3. Pull out the bulb from the socket.

- 4. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- 5. Insert the socket and turn it clockwise to lock it securely.



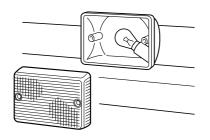
ADVICE

- If the socket is not locked securely, water could get inside the light and lead to a malfunction.
- Install the rear combination lights, and then tighten the 2 screws to affix them.



Replacing the Bulbs of Rear Turn Signal Lights, Taillights, Stop Lights, and Back Up Lights (Horizontal Type)

- 1. Loosen the screws and remove the lens.
- 2. Loosen the bulb by turning it counterclockwise while pressing on it.
- 3. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

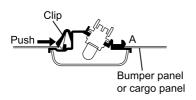


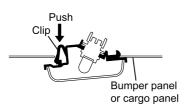
Replacing the Rear Fog Light Bulb

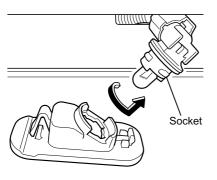
- 1. Remove the screws retaining the lens and remove the lens.
- Loosen the bulb by turning it counterclockwise while pressing on it.
- 3. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

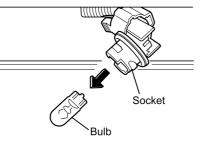
7-40

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY







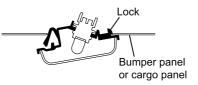


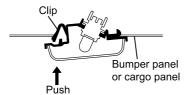
Replacing the License Plate Light Bulbs

- Push the clip on the back of the license plate light towards "A" to release the lock.
- 2. When the clip lock has been released, push the clip to remove the license plate light.
- 3. Loosen the socket by turning it counterclockwise.

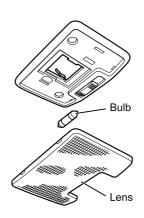
4. Pull out the bulb from the socket.

- 5. Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- 6. Insert the socket and turn it clockwise to lock it securely.



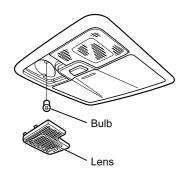


- 7. Insert the license plate light lock into the bumper panel or cargo panel.
- 8. Push the license plate light at the clip into the bumper panel or cargo panel to install the clip.



Replacing the Dome Light Bulb

- Use a flat head screwdriver or similar tool to remove the lens. Remove the bulb.
- 2. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.



Replacing the Map Light Bulbs (with Over Head Console)

- 1. Remove the lens and pull out the bulb.
- 2. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

7-42

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY



Replacing the Map Light Bulbs (without Over Head Console)

1. The light assembly can be removed easily by pulling down by hand.



2. Loosen the socket by turning it counterclockwise.



- 3. Pull out the bulb from the socket.
- 4. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

Have the Following Bulb Replacement Work Performed at an Isuzu Dealer

- Front fog lights
- Daytime running lights
- Turn signal lights (Outside rearview mirror mounted type)
- Taillights and stop lights (LED type)
- · High mounted stop light

Replacing the Fuses and Relays

When the lights won't come on or flash, or the equipment in the electrical system does not operate, check to see if a fuse has blown.



ADVICE

- It is not necessary to open or close the cover unless trouble is found.
- The fuse and relay box structure makes it difficult for water to enter. If you should spill water or a beverage on the cover, however, wipe it off before opening the cover.
- The area around the cover will get warm when the vehicle is being driven, but this is not abnormal.

The Location of Fuses and Relays

The fuses and relays are inside the cab and the engine compartment. When inspecting or replacing the fuses or relays in the cab, remove the small article storage pocket that is located on the lower driver side part of the instrument panel. When inspecting or replacing the fuses or relays in the engine compartment, open the cover of the fuse and relay box that is located on the front left side of the engine compartment.



NOTE

• The fuse layout is shown on the opposite side of the small article storage pocket.

Remove method



Install method



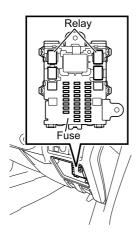
Removing the Small Article Storage Pocket

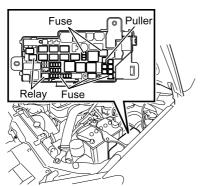
Pull the small article storage pocket towards you to open it. While in the open position, pull it up until it unlocks from the hinge to remove it.

To install the small article storage pocket, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

7-44

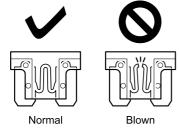
IN CASE OF EMERGENCY





Replacing Fuses

- Before replacing fuses, be sure to place the starter switch in the "LOCK" position and pull back on the parking brake lever.
- Place the fuse puller on the fuse and pull it out. (The fuse puller is stored in the fuse box inside the engine compartment.)



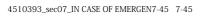
 If the fuse appears is as shown in the right-hand side of the diagram at left, the fuse is blown. Replace with a spare fuse. (Spare fuses are stored in the fuse box inside the engine compartment.)

MARNING

- Use fuses of the same amperage for replacement. Do not use any other fuses than those designated.
- Using fuses other than those specified could result in fire or damage to the equipment.
- If the new fuses blow right away, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

Replacing Relays

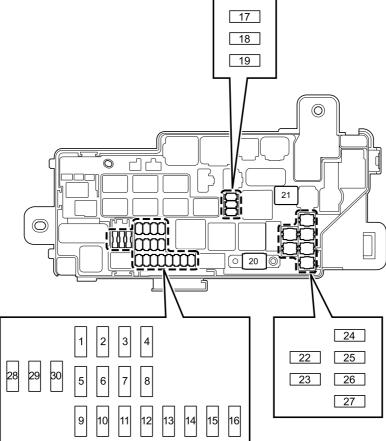
When replacing the relays, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



7-46 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Fuse and Relay Location

Fuse locations: engine compartment



7-47

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

No.	Description	Rating
1	H/LIGHT RH LO	10A
2	H/LIGHT LH LO	10A
3	PCV HEATER	10A
4	ENGINE	10A
5	RR FOG LIGHT	10A
6	TRAILER	20A
7	ESC	10A
8	FRT FOG LIGHT	15A
9	BLANK	_
10	STOP LIGHT	15A
11	HAZARD	15A
12	HORN	10A
13	ACG(S)	10A
14	TCM_B/DRM_B	10A
15	H/LIGHT LH HI	10A

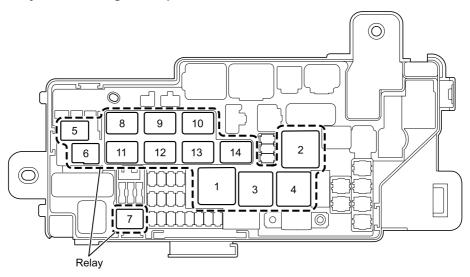
No.	Description	Rating
16	H/LIGHT RH HI	10A
17	TAIL LIGHT LH/ILLUMI	10A
18	TAIL LIGHT RH	10A
19	A/C	10A
20	MAIN	120A
21	IG-2	60A
22	GLOW	60A
23	BLOWER	30A
24	ABS_1/ESC_1	50A
25	ECM	40A
26	ABS_2/ESC_2	30A
27	IG-1	40A
28	SPARE	10A
29	SPARE	15A
30	SPARE	20A

Depending on the equipment installed, or on the vehicle destination or model, fuses may not be installed at the location where the fuse name is shown in the table.

7-48

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Relay locations: engine compartment

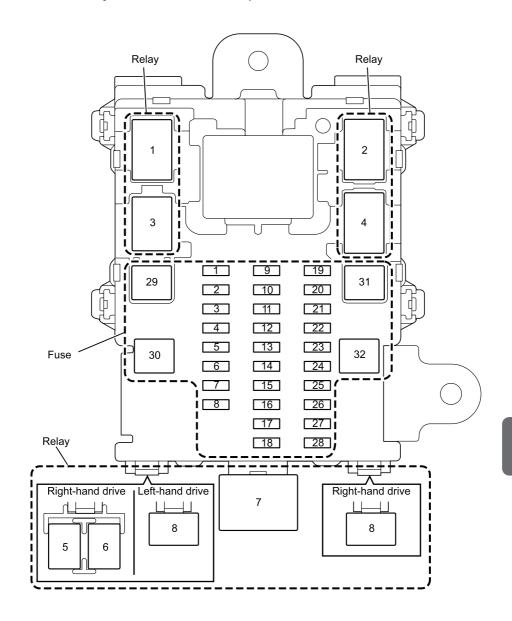


No.	Description
1	HEATER
2	ECM MAIN
3	GLOW
4	STARTER
5	DRL1
6	STARTER CUT
7	HEAD LIGHT DIMMER

No.	Description
8	HEAD LIGHT
9	TAIL LIGHT
10	FOG LIGHT
11	HORN
12	A/C COMPRESSOR
13	THERMO
14	REAR FOG LIGHT

Depending on the equipment installed, or on the vehicle destination or model, relays may not be installed at the location where the relay name is shown in the table.

Fuse and relay locations: instrumental panel



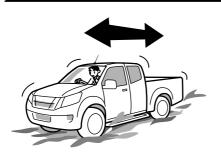
7-50 IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

No.	Relay name
1	ACC SOCKET
2	RR DEFOGGER
3	BLANK
4	POWER WINDOW
5	SUPER LOCK
6	BLANK
7	RR DEFOGGER TIMER
8	DRL2

No.	Fuse name	Rating
1	KEY INT LOCK	10A
2	CIGAR LIGHTER	15A
3	AUDIO	10A
4	ELEC (IG2)	10A
5	H/LAMP LEVELING	10A
6	TURN LIGHT	10A
7	TRAILER	10A
8	SEAT HEATER	15A
9	BLANK	_
10	BACK LIGHT	15A
11	ENGINE (IG)	10A
12	METER	10A
13	TCM	15A
14	4WD	10A
15	ABS	10A
16	FRT WIPER	20A
17	SRS	10A
18	DRL	10A
19	ELEC (IG1)	10A
20	ACC SOCKET	15A
21	DOOR LOCK	20A
22	BLANK	_
23	STARTER	10A
24	BCM	10A
25	AUDIO (+B)	15A
26	ROOM	10A
27	4WD (+B)	10A
28	METER (+B)	10A
29	BLANK	_
30	POWER SEAT	20A
31	RR DEFOGGER	20A
32	POWER WINDOW	30A

Depending on the equipment installed, or on the vehicle destination or model, fuses or relays may not be installed at the location where the fuse or relay name is shown in the table.

When Driving on Bad Roads



If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, pressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary will simply dig the vehicle deeper into the mud and make it harder to extricate. Either put stones, tree branches or blankets under the tires to gain traction or repeatedly drive forward and backward to use the vehicle's momentum to extricate it.



NOTE

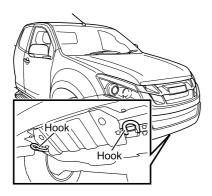
- On a muddy road with an automatic transmission model, by depressing the brake pedal you can make a standing start in the manual mode 2nd gear and move the selector lever to the "+" (upshift) position. This provides better traction and safer vehicle operation.
- When you want to free the vehicle from mud where the tires may slip slightly by increasing the engine speed, you can press the ESC OFF switch to disable just the traction control system (TCS).

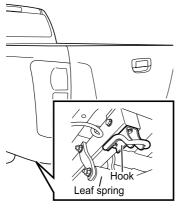
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

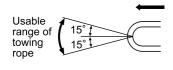
→ Refer to page 4-104

Towing

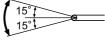
To move a disabled vehicle, it is best to rely on the nearest Isuzu Dealer or someone in the wrecker or tow vehicle business. If that is not possible, follow these procedures. When towing, use appropriate equipment and comply with local legal requirements. Do not try to start the engine by towing or pushing the vehicle.











\triangle

CAUTION

- Do not tow a vehicle at an angle of greater than 15°. This could exert too much stress on the vehicle and damage it.
- Attach a rope to the towing hook only. Attaching a rope to other part of the vehicle could damage it.
- Make sure there are no people near the towing rope and hook before towing a vehicle. If the rope snaps or the vehicle falls off the hook and is damaged, people nearby may be injured or objects may be damaged.
- The towing hook is for use to tow a vehicle with about the same weight as the towing vehicle on good roads.
- Follow the instructions of the equipment manufacturer.
- A separate safety chain must be used.
- Do not tow a vehicle that is attached to another vehicle.
- If the vehicle does not move even when towed, stop the towing procedure. Contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer or a towing service for assistance.

When Towed



 Before towing, make sure that the towing hook is in good condition and that the fixing bolts are tightened properly.

A CAUTION

- Whenever possible, tow a vehicle with the engine started.
 If the engine is not started:
 - The brakes will not be as effective:
 - The steering wheel will be hard to turn;
 - The steering wheel could lock, making it impossible to turn. This is extremely dangerous (particularly when the key is removed).

[Request a tow vehicle in case of one of the following conditions]

- When the vehicle will descend long hills. (The brakes could overheat and become ineffective.)
- · When the vehicle breaks down on a highway.

⊗ ADVICE

- Whenever possible, transport the vehicle with all wheels off the ground using a
 flatbed truck, etc. If you cannot avoid towing the vehicle with the front wheels/
 rear wheels/all wheels on the ground, tow at a speed of 30 km/h (19 MPH) or
 less and a towing distance within 80 km (50 miles).
- For 4WD vehicles, set the 4WD switch to the "2H" position and confirm that the 4WD indicator light has turned off. If the 4WD indicator light does not turn off, transport the vehicle with all four wheels off the ground using a flatbed truck, etc.
- If the manual transmission, automatic transmission, or differential is damaged, transport the vehicle with all four wheels off the ground using a flatbed truck, etc.

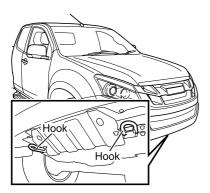


• Depending on the model, one or two front towing hooks will be equipped.

4WD Switch → Refer to page 4-113

7-54

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY



All Four Wheels On Ground

When it is possible to operate the steering wheel, the vehicle can be towed with all wheels on the ground.

However, the power steering will not be able to provide any power assist when the engine cannot be started.

- Firmly attach a rope to the front towing hook on the same side. The driver must be inside the cabin to control the steering wheels and brake. Place the starter switch in the "ACC" position.
- 2. For manual transmission vehicles, place the gearshift lever in the "N" position and release the parking brake. For automatic transmission vehicles, place the selector lever in the "N" position and release the parking brake. For 4WD vehicles, set the 4WD switch to the "2H" position and confirm that the 4WD indicator light has turned off.

4WD Switch → Refer to page 4-113

 During towing, carefully watch the stop lights of the towing vehicle in order to prevent the rope from becoming slack. Tow the vehicle gently, ensuring that there are no strong impacts or lateral forces applied to the vehicle.

Front Wheels Off the Ground

For manual transmission vehicles, place the gearshift lever in the "N" position and release the parking brake. For automatic transmission vehicles, place the selector lever in the "N" position and release the parking brake. For 4WD vehicles, set the 4WD switch to the "2H" position and confirm that the 4WD indicator light has turned off.

4WD Switch → Refer to page 4-113

Rear Wheels Off the Ground

- For manual transmission vehicles, place the gearshift lever in the "N" position. For automatic transmission vehicles, place the selector lever in the "N" position. For 4WD vehicles, set the 4WD switch to the "2H" position and confirm that the 4WD indicator light has turned off.
 - 4WD Switch → Refer to page 4-113
- 2. Secure the steering wheel in order to keep it in a straight position. Set the starter switch to the "ACC" position.

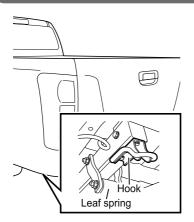
ADVICE

• The lock mechanism may become damaged by setting the starter switch to the "LOCK" position to secure the steering wheel.

7-56

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

When Towing



- 1. Firmly attach a rope to the front towing hook on the same side.
- 2. During towing, tow the vehicle gently ensure that there is no strong shock or lateral force applied to the vehicle.

ADVICE

 Do not tow a vehicle heavier than the towing vehicle. The traction strength has been set up to be smaller than the weight of the towing vehicle.



NOTE

 Depending on the model, a rear towing hook may not be equipped.

MAIN DATA

8

Main Data and Specifications	8-2
• Others	8-10
Trailer Towing	8-21

Main Data and Specifications

Engine

4JK1 Engine Model

Specifications		
Water-cooled, overhead camshaft, direct injection engine with an inter-cooled turbocharger		
Compression ratio	(to 1)	17.0
Displacement	cc (cu. in)	2,499 (152.5)
Firing order		1-3-4-2
Fuel injection timing (sta	atic) degree	Electronic control
Valve clearance (Between cam and roller)	mm (in)	Both intake and exhaust valves: 0.15 (0.006) in cold engine
Idling speed	r/min	675 - 725
Belt tension	mm (in)/Hz	Fan belt: 7.7 - 8.5 (0.30 - 0.33) / 160 - 174 * New belt: 5.4 - 6.6 (0.21 - 0.26) / 188 - 210 Air conditioning compressor belt: 16.5 - 19.1 (0.65 - 0.75) / 79 - 91 * New belt: 12.5 - 16.5 (0.49 - 0.65) / 92 - 112
Oil filter		Replaceable element type
Engine oil capacity [Reference value] liters (US ga	l./ Imp gal.)	When changing oil and filter: 2WD: 5.4 (1.43/ 1.19) 4WD: 5.9 (1.56/ 1.30)
Engine coolant capacity [Reference value] liters (US ga	l./ imp gal.)	Manual transmission model: 10.1 (2.67/ 2.22) Automatic transmission model: 10.0 (2.64/ 2.20)
Preheating system		Glow plugs

^{*:} The new belt values only apply when replacing with a new belt.

Transmission

AY6 Model (Manual Transmission)

Specifications		
Six-speed transmission (overdrive gear for 6	6th), synchromesh	for 1st to 6th and reverse
Gear ratio (to 1)	1st	5.232
	2nd	2.644
	3rd	1.605
	4th	1.219
	5th	1.000
	6th	0.728
	Reverse	4.525
Transmission oil capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)		1.8 (0.48/ 0.40)

TB-50LS Model (Automatic Transmission)

Specifications		
Five-speed automatic transmission (over	drive gear for 5th)	, lock-up clutch for 5th
Gear ratio (to 1)	1st	3.520
	2nd	2.042
	3rd	1.400
	4th	1.000
	5th	0.716
	Reverse	3.224
Transmission oil capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)		10.7 (2.83/ 2.35)

8-4 MAIN DATA

Transfer

T150 Model

Specifications		
Transfer type	Chain drive	
Transfer gear ratio (to 1)	1.000 (High range), 2.482 (Low range)	
Transfer oil capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)	1.3 (0.34/ 0.29)	

Gross Axle Weight (GAW) and Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) Ratings

Specifications		
GAW: Front	kg (lb)	2WD: 1,250 (2,756) 2WD High-Ride: 1,350 (2,977) 4WD: 1,350 (2,977)
GAW: Rear	kg (lb)	1,870 (4,123)
GVW	kg (lb)	2WD: 2,900 (6,395) 4WD: 3,000 (6,615) for Europe (left-hand drive models), Hong Kong, Israel, and Singapore 4WD: 3,050 (6,725) for Europe (right-hand drive models)

Service Specifications

TFR86 Model

	Engine
Model	4JK1-TC Hi-Power
Engine oil capacity	
Engine coolant capacity	Refer to page 8-2

Transmission	
Model	Manual transmission model: AY6 Automatic transmission model: TB-50LS
Transmission oil capacity	Refer to page 8-3

Rear axle	
Differential gear oil capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)	2.2 (0.58/ 0.48)

	Fuel
Fuel tank capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)	69 (18.2/ 15.2)

	5	Steering
Steering wheel free play	10 - 30 (0.39 - 1.18)	
Power steering fluid capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)		1.0 (0.26/ 0.22)

Wheel			
Wheel alignment	: Toe-in	mm (in)	0 (0)
	: Camber	(degree)	0°
	: Caster	(degree)	2WD: 3°35′, 2WD High-Ride: 3°20′
	: King pin	(degree)	12°30′

Service brakes		
Brake pedal free play	Refer to page 6-48	
Brake pedal height	Refer to page 6-48	
Clearance between the brake pedal and the floor	Refer to page 6-48	

Parking brake		
Lever effective stroke (Under pull force of approximately 294 N (30 kgf/ 66 lb))	6 - 9 notches	

Electrical system		
Battery type	(Volt-Amp.h.) × No. of units	80D26L (12 - 65), 95D31L (12 - 80) (M/T) 75D26L (12 - 65) × 2, (A/T) 80D26L (12 - 65) × 2
Starter	volt-kw	12 - 2.3
Generator	volt/amp.	12/90

8-8 MAIN DATA

TFS86 Model

Engine	
Model	4JK1-TC Hi-Power
Engine oil capacity	
Engine coolant capacity	Refer to page 8-2

Transmission		
Model	Manual transmission model: AY6 Automatic transmission model: TB-50LS	
Transmission oil capacity	Refer to page 8-3	
Transfer oil capacity	Refer to page 8-4	

R	Rear axle
Differential gear oil capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)	2.2 (0.58/ 0.48)

Front axle		
Differential gear oil capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)	1.24 (0.33/ 0.27)	

	Fuel
Fuel tank capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)	69 (18.2/ 15.2)

Steering		
Steering wheel free play	mm (in)	10 - 30 (0.39 - 1.18)
Power steering fluid capacity [Reference value] liters (US gal./Imp gal.)		1.0 (0.26/ 0.22)

Wheel			
Wheel alignment	: Toe-in	mm (in)	0 (0)
	: Camber	(degree)	0°
	: Caster	(degree)	3°20′
	: King pin	(degree)	12°30′

Service brakes		
Brake pedal free play	Refer to page 6-48	
Brake pedal height	Refer to page 6-48	
Clearance between the brake pedal and the floor	Refer to page 6-48	

Parking brake	
Lever effective stroke (Under pull force of approximately 294 N (30 kgf/ 66 lb))	6 - 9 notches

Electrical system		
Battery type	(Volt-Amp.h.) × No. of units	80D26L (12 - 65), 95D31L (12 - 80) (M/T) 75D26L (12 - 65) × 2, (A/T) 80D26L (12 - 65) × 2
Starter	volt-kw	12 - 2.3
Generator	volt/amp.	12/90

Others

Statement of Compliance with the Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC)

This vehicle's screw jack conforms to the basic requirements of the Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC) and related regulations.

Statement of Compliance

EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY



For



Screw Jack

Models: Type 2WD for Isuzu D-Max, Type 4WD/2WD Highride for Isuzu D-Max

Manufactured by

Aoyama Thai Co.,Ltd. 64/49 Mu4, Eastern Seaboard Industrial Estate, Pluakdaeng, Rayong 21140 Thailand

Means of Conformity

The Product is in conformity with EC law as approximated by the following directives: Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC based on Technical Documentation File No. 2190 Issue 1, Revision 1, November 2014

Standards used as guidance

Machinery Directive

ISO12100: 2010 Limited reference to EN 1494:2000/A1: 2008 Refer to complete listing in TF

Technical File compiled from manufacturers documentation and held in the EU, on behalf of the manufacturer by

TRaC Global Ltd 100 Frobisher Business Park, Leigh Sinton Road, Malvern, Worcestershire, WR14 1BX United Kingdom

Signature of Responsible Person:

Mr. Katsumi Buma

14-47

Date:

26th November 2014

MACHINE SERIAL No.

Certificate No.

TRA-016130-00A DofC Issue 2

Statement of Compliance with the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC)

This vehicle's immobilizer conforms to the basic requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC) and related regulations.

Statement of Compliance



Kolar Dagmar AQL RBG 43 Phone +49 (941) 790-6699 Fax +49 (941) 790-996699 dagmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer:

May 27, 2011

Continental Automotive GmbH

Address

Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg

Germany

Product type designation:

A2C53372320

Intended use:

Vehicle Immobilizer System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:

Applied standard(s): EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A1:2010

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:

Applied standard(s):

EN 301 489 -1: V1.8.1 (2008-04) EN 301 489 -3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:

Applied standard(s):

EN 300 330 -1: V1.7.1 (2010-02) EN 300 330 -2: V1.5.1 (2010-02)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH

Regensburg, 2011-05-27

Andreas Wolf

Executive Vice President **Body &Security**

Dr. Ulrich Schrey Director CF Software Body & Security

For Europe

This vehicle's keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) conforms to the basic requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC) and related regulations. Hereby, Panasonic Electronic Devices Co.,Ltd. declares that this keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) is in compliance with the essential requirements.

The declaration of conformity may be consulted at http://www.doc.panasonic.de

For the State of Israel

This vehicle's keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock) conforms to the basic requirements of the Ministry of Communications (MOC) and related regulations.

- Manufacturer: Panasonic Electronic Devices Co., Ltd.
- Model name: Keyless entry system (radio remote control units for door-lock)
- · Country of manufacture: Thailand
- Importer name and address: Universal Motors Israel Ltd.
 5 Faltin Naftali St.,Rishon Lezion, Israel, P.O.Box 17011 Zcode 75070
 - א. השימוש במכשיר היינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
- ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
- ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Guidelines for Installation of Aftermarket Radio Frequency Transmitting Equipment

Purpose

This installation guidelines give requirement and recommendations for the installation in vehicles of

- radio frequency (RF) transmitting equipment.
- · ancillary equipment associated with these.



NOTE

 These guidelines are intended to supplement, but not to be used in place of, detailed instructions for such installations which are the sole responsibility of the manufacturer of the involved radio telephone or land mobile radio.

General

- 1. Only the RF-transmitting equipment and ancillary equipment (microphone, converter, booster, etc.) with 'CE' mark or 'e' may be installed in vehicle.
- Installation of RF-transmitting equipment shall be performed by competent personal permitted by the country regulation. The vehicle and RF-transmitting equipment manufacturer's instruction manuals and installation notes shall be followed.



NOTE

- · Vehicle manufacturer's instructions take priority in case of conflict.
- Installation of RF-transmitting equipment to any part of the vehicle, other than an authorized connection or mounting location, may invalidate the vehicle warranty.
- If a problem is found and can not be rectified, and it is suspected that the RFtransmitting equipment is out of specification, the appropriate manufacturer, agent or supplier shall be consulted.
- Expenses incurred from any adverse effect of any such installation are not the responsibility of vehicle manufacturer.



8-14 MAIN DATA

- 3. The installation shall comply with national legal requirements for the installation and use of RF-transmitting equipment in vehicles.
- 4. Full consideration shall be given to the positioning of RF-transmitting equipment such that electromagnetic interference (EMI) and radio frequency interference (RFI) is minimized between the RF-transmitting equipment being installed and the vehicle electrical and electronic systems.
- Care shall be taken when planning the installation that any additional equipment used does not constitute a safety hazard and does not contravene safety regulations.
- 6. Care shall be taken to ensure that any microphone/handset lead is not such that the lead can interfere with the vehicle controls or driver.
- 7. Where a hand portable or transportable unit is installed in road vehicles, the correct car adapter kit specified for the product shall be used.

Installation

Care shall be taken in

- · choosing the antenna,
- · sitting it in a recommended location,
- · installing it correctly,
- ensuring that all connection in the antenna feeder are sealed to prevent dirt and water from entering the feeder and affecting its performance,
- ensuring that all connection are electrically tested after installation, and
- ensuring that a satisfactory VSWR reading is obtained.

Antenna

- For RF-transmitting equipments with output power levels above 100mW (peak), an external antenna is strongly recommended.
- The external antenna and feeder cable shall be impedance matched with a VSWR < 2.0.
- 3. The antenna should be a permanent-mount type located in the roof or the rear trunk lid. If a magnet-mount antenna is used, care should be taken to mount the antenna in the same location as a permanent-mount type.



NOTE

- Each vehicle model and body style reacts to radio frequency energy differently. When dealing with an unfamiliar vehicle, it is suggested that a magnetic-mount antenna be used to check the proposed antenna location for unwanted effects on the vehicle. An antenna location is a major factor in these effects.
- The best position for an antenna is on the metallic roof, preferably towards the center, but where possible with a distance of > λ/4 (λ = wavelength) from any opening, such as a sunroof or windows.

4. Care shall be taken when sitting an antenna next to an existing one or when mounting antennas with magnetic bases, as this could affect the accuracy or operation of the compass on vehicles so equipped.

[Radiation patterns and ground planes]

- 1. In order to create a symmetrical, non-directional radiation pattern, an antenna needs to be mounted vertically on a horizontal ground plane with ideally a radius of > λ /4 at the lowest frequency band used (see Table 1).
- 2. The antenna should not be located close to any electrically resonant structure.
- 3. Care shall be taken when sitting the antenna close to another, existing antenna. It is necessary to separate them by > $\lambda/4$ for transmit frequency f < 600 MHz and > λ for transmit frequency f > 600 MHz (see Table 1).

Table 1. Approximate frequency-to-wavelength conversion

Frequency f MHz	Wavelength λ cm	λ/4 cm
50	600	150
80	375	94
150	200	50
450	66	17
600	49.5	12
900	33	8
1800	16.5	4

[Ground-plane provision]

When the antenna installation is to be carried out on a non-metallic surface

- a ground-plane-independent antenna can be fitted directly to any surface (glassfiber etc.) or onto a mounting bracket which may be supplied by the manufacturer,
- a standard antenna can be used with a ground plane fitted to the underside of the panel, for example a metallic plate complying with dimensions Table 1.



8-16 MAIN DATA

[Antenna position at vehicle]

Installation and use of RF transmitters with antenna outside the vehicle is shown by Table 2.

Table 2. Installation and use of RF transmitters with antenna outside the vehicle

Fre	equency bands (MHz)	Max. output power (W)	Antenna position at vehicle	Specific conditions for installation and/or use
1.	1.8-30	50	4.5	Ham Radio
2.	50-54	50	1.2.3.4.5	Ham Radio
3.	142-176	50	1.2.3.4.5	Ham Radio / General Service Radio
4.	380-470	50	1.2.3.4.5	Ham Radio / General Service Radio
5.	870-915	5	1.2.3.4.5	General Service Radio / Mobile Telephone
6.	1200-1300	10	1.2.3.4.5	Ham Radio
7.	1710-1785	2	1.2.3.4.5	Mobile Telephone
8.	1885-2025	1	1.2.3.4.5	Mobile Telephone

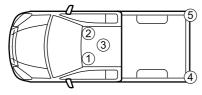


Figure 1. Drawing showing antenna installation points in the vehicle

Antenna location;

0: all location (vehicle exterior)

1: front left of roof

2: front right of roof

3: center of roof

4: left of bumper

5: right of bumper

[Case of "On-glass" antennas]

Glass mounted antennas should be kept as high as possible in the center of the rear window or windshield.



NOTE

• Care shall be taken to ensure that the glass is within the specified temperature range when fixing the antenna mount in order to obtain a good bond.

Antenna Cable

- 1. Use a high quality, one piece coaxial cable (at least 95% shield coverage) that is impedance matched for the RF-transmitting equipment (VSWR < 2.0).
- 2. Excess coaxial cable shall not be coiled, as this may affect the tuning of the antenna as well as producing electrical interference.
- 3. If possible, the antenna cable should be cut to the correct length.
- 4. The cable should be routed so as to avoid sharp bends.
- 5. Safety-sensitive electronic unit (e.g. airbag and ABS systems), circuits and harnesses shall not be used for parallel wiring.
- 6. If it is necessary to cross other wiring, cross at right angles.
- 7. If an extension feeder cable is required, suitable coaxial cable shall be used and correctly terminated with good quality, low-loss connectors.



NOTE

- Fit the correct antenna connectors at each end of the feeder cable to match the equipment using either crimp or soldered connectors as appropriate.
- 8. If the antenna cable provided is too short, wherever possible the cable should be replaced by a suitable feeder cable of correct length.



NOTE

- Extending the length of the feeder cable will result in additional losses, particularly at frequencies > 800 MHz.
- 9. Ensure that the feeder cable is not strained or distorted by, for example, excessive tightening of cable ties.
- When vehicle trim is replaced, make sure that the panels do not trap the feeder cable.
- 11. Additional care should be taken when installing a glass mount to the rear screen of a hatch-back type vehicle to allow opening and to prevent damage to the feeder cable.

8-18 MAIN DATA

RF-transmitting Equipment

[Mounting of RF-transmitting equipment]

- Location of a RF-transmitting equipment should be selected that provides a solid mounting point which does not interfere with the vehicle operator controls and provides adequate ventilation.
- 2. RF-transmitting equipment shall not be able to be damaged or its ventilation restricted. Special care should be taken to ensure that RF-transmitting equipment can not be damaged by ingress of water.
- 3. Access to vehicle equipment in the load storage area shall not be barred, e.g. by wheel jack, fire extinguishers or spare wheel.
- 4. The connections to the RF-transmitting equipment should be easily accessible in order that the equipment may be removed for operation in transportable mode, or for repairs and servicing.
- 5. It shall not hinder the operation of airbags or other safety equipment.



NOTE

 Great care should be taken not to mount any RF-transmitting equipment, microphones or any other item in the deployment path of a Supplemental Inflatable Restraint or "Air Bag."

[Routing of RF-transmitting equipment's cables]

- Where possible, all cables should pass inside or underneath trim and through moldings in such a way as to afford maximum protection. If necessary, use sleeving, a proprietary protector and/or cable ties where required.
- Select a route for the cable, ideally on the opposite side of the vehicle to the fuel pipe, clear of brake pipes, cables, controls, vehicle wiring and any hot components. Under no circumstances shall any cables be attached to the foregoing.
- 3. Cable shall be routed so that they avoid
 - · sharp edges,
 - continual bending,
 - · stress or strain,
 - · abrasion,
 - extreme temperature, and
 - becoming a hazard to the occupants of the car.

Power Supply for RF-transmitting Equipment [General]

 A dedicated supply cable should be used for the RF-transmitting equipment installation which should be as short as possible to the battery positive and negative connections. Do not connect directly to the battery pillars, but use the battery terminals provided.



NOTE

- Connections shall not be made to any electronic control unit feeds under any circumstances. For example, avoid using cigar lighter as power sources for a RF-transmitting equipment.
- It is also recommended that, unless a molded twin supply cable is used, the two supply lines be twisted together along their length in order to reduce radiated noise or induce noise.



NOTE

- The supply cable from the RF-transmitting equipment should approach the battery in such a way that, when terminated, the two wires can not be inadvertently reversed, e.g. one wire is shorter than the other.
- If ignition switch control is desired, the handset or control unit positive lead may be connected through an appropriate in-line fuse to an available accessory circuit or ignition circuit not powered during cranking.



8-20 MAIN DATA

[Supply cable and routing]

- 1. Heavy-duty cable of a low electrical resistance should be used on long cable runs to minimize voltage drop.
- The cable shall be of a higher current capacity than the protection fuse, and the correct fuse shall be fitted.
- 3. The cable should be as short as possible.
- 4. The cable shall be secured well clear of moving parts, (shock absorbers, steering, drive shaft, control pedals, etc.).
- 5. The cable shall be secured well clear of the engine, exhaust system or other hot items.
- 6. The supply cable run should, where possible, be separate from that of the incar entertainment equipment control cables, although they may pass through the same holes in the chassis and body for ease of fitting; suitable grommets should be fitted if additional holes are drilled.
- 7. The cable shall be supported, avoiding sharp bends, and shall not be subjected to strain.
- 8. The cable shall be sited away from ignition coil, the high voltage circuits of the ignition systems and electronic control units and, where possible, other vehicle wiring.

Statement of Compliance with ECE R13

Information required by European brake regulation ECE R13 is disclosed on the following website.

URL: http://www.isuzu.co.jp/world/index.html

Trailer Towing

The vehicle is designed for passenger and cargo transportation, however, when using the appropriate equipment, you can tow a trailer under certain conditions.

Towing a trailer has a significant influence on handling, performance, braking, durability and fuel consumption.

For your safety and that of others too, use equipment specifically designed for your vehicle. Improper equipment or installation can cause damage to your vehicle and possibly personal injury. Additional care and cautious driving habits are essential when towing a trailer.

Damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes are not covered by Isuzu warranties.

When a new vehicle has been driven or when a vehicle that has had powertrain parts changed (engine, transmission and differential) to new parts, it is recommend not to tow the vehicle until the driving distance reaches 800 km (497 miles).

When towing a trailer, the following gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus cargo load) shown in the table must not be exceeded.

2WD models

	Gross trailer weight
Trailer hitch kit	2,500 kg (5,513 lb)

4WD models

	Gross trailer weight
Trailer hitch kit	3,500 kg (7,718 lb) (models for the European market) 3,000 kg (6,615 lb) (models for the Hong Kong and Singapore markets) 2,500 kg (5,513 lb) (models for the Israel market)

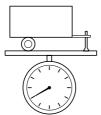
The trailer hitch kit is available from your Isuzu Dealer. The trailer hitch kit contains the trailer hitch, bracket and hardware.

Additional equipment for trailer brake systems will be required. The additional equipment can be purchased at a recreational vehicle dealer.

Follow the recommendations in this manual before towing a trailer. For further details, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.



Gross trailer weight (GTW)



MARNING

- The loading and weight limitations shown below must be followed for your continued driving satisfaction.
 - The gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus cargo load) must never exceed the designed towing capacity of the vehicle. The maximum weight limit for vehicles equipped with a trailer hitch kit is as follows:

as follows:

2WD model: 2,500 kg (5,513 lb)

4WD model: 3,500 kg (7,718 lb)

(models for the European market),
3,000 kg (6,615 lb) (models for
the Hong Kong and Singapore
markets), 2,500 kg (5,513 lb)

(models for the Israel market)

Exceeding the weight limits is
dangerous. It will cause damage
to your vehicle and possibly result
in personal injury.

 The gross combined weight (GCW) rating equals the combined weight including passengers and cargo of your vehicle plus the total trailer load. The following limitations apply.
 2WD model: 5,400 kg (11,907 lb)
 4WD model: 6,000 kg (13,230 lb) (models for the European, Hong Kong, and Singapore markets),
 5,500 kg (12,128 lb) (models for the Israel market)

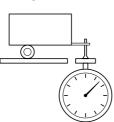
WARNING (Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- The gross vehicle weight (GVW) rating equals the combined weight of an unloaded vehicle, passengers, cargo, trailer hitch, trailer tongue load and optional equipment. This value is indicated on the vehicle identification number (VIN) plate attached to the left front end of the engine compartment.
- The gross axle weight (GAW) rating values are also indicated on the vehicle identification number (VIN) plate. The load on either the front or rear axles resulting from distribution of the gross vehicle weight on both axles must not exceed the values listed on the vehicle identification number (VIN) plate. Remember to account for additional equipment and the tongue load.
- Be sure not to allow the tongue load to exceed: 2WD model: 100 kg (221 lb)/4WD model: 245 kg (540 lb)

 Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and possible personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office that is equipped with scales.



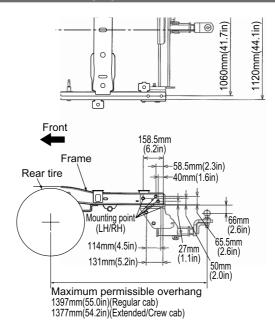


$-(\Lambda)$

CAUTION

Never exceed the weight limits indicated above.

Equipment



Trailer Hitch

The trailer hitch kit is available from your Isuzu Dealer. The kit includes all the necessary hardware and instructions for proper installation.

See the drawing for the mounting points of the coupling device and the maximum permissible overhang of the coupling device.

Check with your recreational vehicle dealer for additional required equipment.

Only a trained mechanic should install your vehicle towing equipment.

Do not use axle-mounted hitches or equipment not designed for your vehicle.

Do not modify the electrical systems of the vehicle to accommodate towing a trailer other than those specified in the instructions contained in the Isuzu trailer hitch kit. Improper modifications can affect vehicle durability.

Improper equipment or installation can cause damage to your vehicle and possible personal injury.

After installation of the Isuzu trailer hitch kit is complete, periodic inspections of the equipment are necessary to assure continued safe operation.

Safety Chain

Always use a safety chain that is suitable for your vehicle and trailer. Check with your trailer manufacturer regarding the required equipment. Cross the safety chain under the hitch and attach it to the trailer hitch connections.

The safety chain will prevent the trailer from dropping to the ground in the event that the hitch disengages. For proper use and installation, consult the trailer manufacturer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights and equipment should comply with local legal requirements. Check with your recreational vehicle dealer for the specific requirements. Use only equipment that is designed for your vehicle. Improper equipment or installation can cause damage to the electrical system of your vehicle and affect your vehicle warranty. Consult your Isuzu Dealer for installation.

Tires

Always check the condition of the tires of the vehicle and trailer before operation. Replace worn or damaged tires before operation.

Inflate tire pressure to the recommended cold tire pressure indicated on the tire pressure label on the driver's door opening frame and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

When the vehicle is towing a trailer and the GAW is 1,870 kg (4,123 lb) or more, the vehicle should be driven at 60 km/h (37 MPH) or under. For the vehicle equipped with 215/70R15C, 245/70R16, or 255/65R17 tires, their rear tire pressure should set as specified below:

215/70R15C \rightarrow **440 kPa** (4.40 kg/cm² / **64 psi**) 245/70R16 \rightarrow **290 kPa** (2.90 kg/cm² / **42 psi**) 255/65R17 \rightarrow **260 kPa** (2.60 kg/cm² / **38 psi**)

Trailer Brakes

Trailers with a gross weight of 750 kg (1,654 lb) or more require trailer brakes. If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to local legal requirements.



Never connect a trailer braking system to your vehicle braking system. Braking
efficiency and operation will be seriously affected.

Consult your trailer manufacturer and an Isuzu Dealer for proper installation and use of trailer brakes.



8-26 MAIN DATA

Equipment Check

Before operating your vehicle, check all safety equipment to ensure safe operation. Be sure your vehicle is properly serviced to avoid a mechanical malfunction.

Be sure trailer cargo is securely loaded. Check that your rear view mirrors conform to local legal requirements.

Perform an equipment check of all braking, lighting and safety equipment to ensure they are working properly.

Your safety depends on proper operation and installation of equipment. Never operate a vehicle with malfunctioning equipment.

Supplementary exterior rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic to the rear cannot be seen clearly with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

Maintenance

Towing a trailer will affect vehicle maintenance requirements due to the additional load. More frequent maintenance intervals will be required to assure continued satisfaction with the vehicle. Regarding the recommended maintenance and service, contact the nearest Isuzu Dealer.

A		D	
Accessory Socket	5-32	Daily Checks (Preoperational Checks	s) 6-14
Air Cleaner	6-38	Dashboard Tray	5-37
Air Outlets	5-2	Diesel Particulate Defuser (DPD)	
Antenna	5-45	2-73	3, 4-120
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	4-100	Discarded Parts, Oils and Other Liqu	ids 6-6
Anti-theft System	3-12	Driving	2-23
Ashtray	5-33	_	
Automatic Air Conditioner	5-15	<u>E</u>	
Automatic Transmission Fluid (Automatransmission Model)	atic 6-77	Electronic Braking force Distribution ((EBD) 4-103
Automatic Transmission Model	2-42	Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	4-104
_		Engine Conditions	6-18
В		Engine Coolant	6-30
Before Driving	2-2	Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	4-14
Bottle Holder and Small Article Storage	 je	Engine Hood	6-10
Pocket (Front and Rear Doors)	5-43	Engine Oil	6-20
Brakes	6-46	Exterior (PICTORIAL INDEX)	0-13
С		Exterior Maintenance	6-98
Carrying Children	2-21	F	
Cautions for Driving in Cold Regions	2-58	Fan Belt and Air Conditioning Compre	essor
Cautions for Driving in Hot Regions	2-57	Belt	6-36
Center Console Box	5-39	Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Model 2-46	6, 4-112
Changing Tires	6-67	Front Fog Light Switch	4-69
Checking Components that Showed Abnormalities during Previous Operat	ion	Front Seat Belt with Pretensioner and Airbag System 2-7	I SRS 77, 3-67
	6-16	Fuel Filter	6-41
Child Restraint System (CRS)	3-55	Fuel Gauge	4-15
Child-proof Door Locks (Crew Cab Mo	odel) 3-22	Fuel Tank Filler Cap	3-33
Cigarette Lighter	5-30	G	
Clock Display	4-16	Gearshift Lever	4-82
Clutch (Manual Transmission Model)	6-76	Getting In and Out of the Vehicle	3-26
Coat Hook	5-44	Glove Compartment	5-36
Combination Light Control Switch	4-66	Grip	5-43
Cruise Control	4-95		

4510393_sec09_INDEX.indd 9-1 2015/01/16 9:27:30

5-40

5-41

Cup Holder

Pocket

Cup Holder and Small Article Storage

9-2

INDEX

L	
Г	

Handling the Battery	6-87
Handling the Jack	6-62
Handling the Radiator and Intercooler	6-35
Hazard Warning Flasher Switch	4-70
Headlight Leveling Switch	4-68
Headlights and Turn Signal Lights	6-86
Heated Seat Switch	4-76
Heater/Manual Air Conditioner	5-4
Horn Button	4-73
How to Read the Instruments (Instrume Layout)	ents 4-10

Ī

Illumination Control Switch	4-75
Illumination of Center Display	4-19
Inspection and Maintenance	6-106
Interior (PICTORIAL INDEX)	0-6
Interior Lights	5-26
Interior Maintenance	6-101
Isuzu Genuine Oils and Grease	6-6

K

Key	3-2
Key with Immobilizer Transponder Chip	3-4
Keyless Entry System (Radio Remote	
Control Units for Door-lock)	3-7

M

Main Data and Specifications	8-2
Manually Operated Windows	3-32
Mirrors	3-46
Model with Automatic Transmission	4-85
Multi-Information Display (MID)	4-20

0

Odometer and Trip Meter	4-11
Off-road Driving	2-41
Opening and Closing Doors	3-15
Others	8-10
Overhead Console	5-28

P

Parking Brake	6-51
Parking Brake Lever	4-81
Pedals	4-80
Power Steering Fluid	6-79
Power Windows	3-27
Precautions for Checking and Ad	ljustments 6-4
Preventing Breakdowns	2-66

R

Rear Fog Light Switch	4-69
Rear Window Defogger Switch	4-77
Refrigerant	6-96
Remote Control Mirror Switch	4-73
Replacing the Fuses and Relays	7-43
Retractable Power Mirror Switch	4-74

S	
Seat Belts	3-48
Seats	3-36
Selector Lever	4-83
Small Article Storage Pocket	5-34
Small Article Storage Pocket (Driver's	5-38
Small Article Storage Pocket (Passer Side)	ger's 5-35
Small Article Storage Pocket (Upper S Dashboard)	Side of 5-37
Spare Tire	6-58
Speed Limit Device	2-76
Speedometer	4-11
Starter Switch	4-64
Starting the Engine	4-4
Staying Safe	2-62
Steering Wheel	6-78
Steering Wheel Remote Control	5-47
Stopping and Parking	2-49
Stopping the Engine	4-7
Sun Visor	5-29
Т	
Tachometer	4-13
Tailgate	3-23
Ticket Holder	5-29
Tilt Steering	3-45
Tire Rotation	6-57
Tools	6-7
Towing	7-52
Trailer Towing	8-21
Troubleshooting	7-2
Turbocharger	2-82

U

Using Tire Chains

Vanity Mirror	5-30
Vehicle Data Collection	2-82
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and Engine Number	l 1-2
W	
Warm-up System	4-6
Warning and Indicator Lights	4-39
Warning and Indicator Lights Layout	4-17
Warning Buzzer	4-62
Warning/Caution Labels in Your Vehicle	
	0-2
Warning/Indicator Light Index	0-14
Wheels and Tires	6-5
When Driving on Bad Roads	7-5
When the Battery Goes Flat	7-20
When the Brakes Do not Work	7-19
When the Bulb Does not Come On	7-28
When the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Comes On	Ligh 7-25
When the Engine Overheats	7-26
When the Engine Stalls and Cannot be Restarted	7-19
When the Engine Stops While Driving	7-18
When the Fuel Runs Out	7-22
When the Generator Warning Light Con On	nes 7-24
When the Tire Goes Flat	7-7
When the Vehicle Breaks Down during Driving	7-6
When the Warning Light Comes On	7-2
When to Visit Your Isuzu Dealer	2-69
Windshield Washer Fluid	6-82
Windshield Wiper and Windshield Wash Switch	ner 4-7
Windshield Wiper Blades	6-83

2-72

MEMO

МЕМО

MEMO

МЕМО

MEMO